



KONGSBERG

Installation manual

# Seapath<sup>®</sup> 385 series

GNSS aided Inertial Navigation System





Company shared



KONGSBERG

***Seapath 385***  
***GNSS aided Inertial Navigation System***  
***Installation Manual***

110-0060204/B

May 2024 © Kongsberg Discovery AS

## Document history

Document number: 110-0060204 / Revision B		
Rev. A	February 2024	First issue.
Rev. B	May 2024	Updated accuracy values for roll and pitch. New wiring drawing. Updated table "Wiring for cable between Processing Unit and MGC Junction Box".

## Document information

- Product: Seapath 385
- Document: Installation Manual
- Document part number: 110-0060204
- Revision: B

## Copyright

*The information contained in this document remains the sole property of Kongsberg Discovery AS. No part of this document may be copied or reproduced in any form or by any means, and the information contained within it is not to be communicated to a third party, without the prior written consent of Kongsberg Discovery AS.*

## Warning

*The equipment to which this manual applies must only be used for the purpose for which it was designed. Improper use or maintenance may cause damage to the equipment and/or injury to personnel. You must be familiar with the contents of the appropriate manuals before attempting to operate or work on the equipment.*

*Kongsberg Discovery disclaims any responsibility for damage or injury caused by improper installation, use or maintenance of the equipment.*

## Disclaimer

*Kongsberg Discovery AS endeavours to ensure that all information in this document is correct and fairly stated, but does not accept liability for any errors or omissions.*

## Support information

If you require maintenance or repair, contact Kongsberg Discovery's support organisation. You can contact us using the following address: [support.seatex@kd.kongsberg.com](mailto:support.seatex@kd.kongsberg.com). If you need information about our other products, visit <http://www.kongsberg.com/discovery>.



## Table of contents

<b>ABOUT THIS MANUAL</b> .....	<b>9</b>
<b>SEAPATH 385</b> .....	<b>10</b>
System description.....	10
System diagram.....	13
Scope of supply.....	14
Main system units .....	15
Processing Unit description.....	15
HMI Unit description .....	15
GNSS antenna description.....	16
Product restrictions .....	17
Restrictions in guarantee .....	17
Restrictions in export.....	17
Restrictions in use .....	18
Health and safety.....	18
Using Seapath as NTP server.....	18
Network security.....	19
Support information .....	20
<b>PREPARATIONS</b> .....	<b>21</b>
Mechanical drawings .....	21
Necessary tools and equipment.....	21
Location of hardware units .....	22
Processing Unit and HMI Unit location.....	22
GNSS antenna location .....	22
Display location.....	24
Installing GNSS/DGNSS antennas, recommended practice.....	24
Antenna arrangements for various vessel types.....	28
Installing antenna cables, recommendations.....	29
Terminating coaxial cables .....	31
About coaxial cable termination .....	31
Terminating coaxial cables with stripping tool .....	32
Terminating coaxial cables without stripping tool .....	35
Lightning protection .....	40
Rack requirements .....	41
<b>INSTALLING THE GNSS ANTENNAS</b> .....	<b>43</b>
Mounting the GNSS antennas as stand-alone units.....	43
Mounting the GNSS antennas on antenna bracket .....	46
<b>INSTALLING THE SEAPATH UNITS</b> .....	<b>51</b>

System units pre-installed in a rack .....	51
Installing the rack.....	52
Installing the system units in a rack.....	52
<b>SURVEYING SENSORS ON VESSELS .....</b>	<b>54</b>
About sensor survey.....	54
Vessel coordinate system .....	55
Surveying the MGC Sensor Unit.....	56
Surveying the MRU .....	58
Surveying the GNSS antenna.....	60
Surveying the external gyro compass .....	62
Determining the system coordinates.....	62
Survey accuracy values.....	63
<b>CABLE LAYOUT AND INTERCONNECTIONS.....</b>	<b>65</b>
Cabling for the rack units.....	65
Connecting the Seapath with MGC COMPASS.....	68
Terminating the Processing Unit to MGC COMPASS junction box cable .....	68
Connecting the Seapath with MRU or MGC.....	73
Terminating the Processing Unit to MGC/MRU junction box cable .....	73
Wiring diagram .....	77
Power diagram .....	79
<b>SETTING TO WORK.....</b>	<b>80</b>
Setting to work summary .....	80
Turning on the Seapath system .....	81
LED indicators Processing Unit.....	82
LED indicators HMI Unit.....	83
How the configuration of the system works .....	84
Entering the system configuration.....	84
NAV Engine Configuration description.....	84
Operator software configuration description.....	85
Changing system modes .....	86
Communication interface description .....	87
Using the Serial interface .....	89
Using the Ethernet interface .....	90
Required system configuration .....	91
Setting vessel dimensions and reference points .....	91
Entering antenna location parameters .....	94
Setting MGC location and mounting angles .....	99
Using Mounting Wizard to determine MGC mounting angles .....	101
Setting MRU location and mounting angles .....	103
Using Mounting Wizard to determine MRU mounting angles .....	105

Selecting heave filter options .....	107
Setting monitoring points .....	108
Setting up input to and from the MGC.....	112
Setting up input to and from the MRU.....	113
Setting up the Telegram out interface.....	113
Additional system configuration.....	116
Entering vessel identification parameters.....	116
Importing vessel shape from file .....	117
Selecting SBAS satellites .....	119
Enabling Fugro high precision services .....	120
Selecting heading input format from a gyro compass.....	121
Setting up the DGNSS correction link parameters.....	123
Enabling and/or disabling use of GNSS link.....	124
Adding extra serial ports .....	125
Changing the Processing Unit IP address.....	127
Changing the HMI Unit IP address .....	128
Operator software configuration .....	129
Selecting the position of views in the display .....	129
Selecting the appearance of the Sky view .....	130
Adjusting the Integrity view.....	132
Adjusting the Compass view .....	133
Adjusting UTM presentation.....	134
Selecting the Seapath HMI software data source.....	134
Selecting reception of alarm messages.....	135
Creating a backup of the configuration and software installation.....	136
Restoring the configuration backup .....	137
Seapath operator software on external computer.....	139
Installing the Seapath operator software on external computer .....	139
Removing the Seapath operator software from external computer.....	140
Starting the Seapath operator software on external computer.....	140
Stopping the Seapath operator software .....	140
<b>SYSTEM BACKUP AND RESTORE .....</b>	<b>141</b>
Processing Unit procedures.....	141
Preparing a USB flash drive for backup and restore purposes .....	141
Backing up the Processing Unit image to a USB flash drive .....	142
Restoring Processing Unit image from backup flash drive .....	143
HMI Unit procedures .....	144
Preparing a USB flash drive for backup and restore purposes .....	144
Creating a backup of the HMI Unit on external USB device.....	145
Creating a backup of the HMI Unit on internal hard disk.....	147

Restoring image from external USB device.....	148
Restoring image from internal hard disk.....	149
<b>DRAWINGS.....</b>	<b>150</b>
About the drawings.....	150
Processing Unit dimensions.....	151
HMI Unit dimensions.....	153
GNSS antenna dimensions.....	154
<b>TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.....</b>	<b>155</b>
Performance specifications.....	155
Interface specifications.....	158
Weights and outline dimensions.....	158
Power specifications.....	159
Environmental specifications.....	160
Frequency specifications.....	161
Data output specifications.....	161
Data input specifications.....	162
Datum specifications.....	162
Cable specifications.....	162
Manufacturer’s conformity declaration.....	164
NMEA telegram output options.....	165
<b>INTERFACE DESCRIPTIONS.....</b>	<b>167</b>
Processing Unit interfaces.....	167
Front interfaces Processing Unit.....	168
Rear interfaces Processing Unit.....	168
RS-422 A and B signal definition.....	169
COM 1 and COM 2.....	170
Rear panel ports.....	170
Ethernet connection.....	174
HMI Unit interfaces.....	175
Front interfaces HMI Unit.....	175
Rear interfaces HMI Unit.....	175
<b>TELEGRAM SPECIFICATIONS.....</b>	<b>177</b>
NMEA DDC.....	178
NMEA DTM.....	179
NMEA GBS.....	179
NMEA GGA.....	180
NMEA GLL.....	181
NMEA GNS.....	182
NMEA GRS.....	183

NMEA GSA.....	183
NMEA GST.....	184
NMEA GSV.....	184
NMEA HDT.....	185
NMEA RMC.....	186
NMEA ROT.....	187
NMEA VBW.....	187
NMEA THS.....	188
NMEA VER.....	189
NMEA VTG.....	189
NMEA ZDA.....	190
PSXN20.....	191
PSXN21.....	192
PSXN22.....	192
PSXN23.....	193
PSXN24.....	193
Seapath Binary 26.....	194
Simrad EM 3000.....	196
KM Binary datagram format.....	197
Calibration format 7.....	199
Echo sounder format 9.....	200
Echo sounder format 18, TSS1.....	201
RDI ADCP.....	201
1PPS, NMEA ZDA format 13.....	202
1PPS, Trimble format 14.....	203
PFreeHeave.....	203
RTCM format 80.....	204
Cyclic redundancy check (CRC) algorithm.....	205
<b>FUNCTIONS AND DIALOG BOXES.....</b>	<b>207</b>
NAV Engine Configuration.....	207
Vessel Geometry page.....	208
Vessel Description page.....	209
Sensors GNSS Geometry page.....	210
Sensors MGC Geometry page.....	212
Sensors MGC Geometry - Mounting Wizard.....	213
Sensors MRU Geometry page.....	216
Sensors MRU Geometry - Mounting Wizard.....	217
Sensors MGC Heave config page.....	220
Sensors DGNSS SBAS page.....	221
Monitoring points Geometry page.....	223

Communication interface - Input/Output .....	224
Network page .....	235
Operator software configuration .....	236
View page .....	236
Sky view page .....	237
Position Integrity page.....	239
Compass page.....	240
UTM page.....	241
Data source page .....	242
Alarms page.....	243
<b>EQUIPMENT HANDLING.....</b>	<b>245</b>
Taking delivery .....	245
Unpacking and handling .....	245
Storage .....	246
Disposal .....	246
<b>FREE AND OPEN SOURCE SOFTWARE.....</b>	<b>247</b>
General information .....	247
GNU general public license, version 2 .....	248
GNU general public license, version 3 .....	252
GNU lesser general public license, version 2.1 .....	259
GNU lesser general public license, version 3 .....	265
BSD license.....	267
GNU C library license .....	268
GCC license .....	270
ISC license .....	271
OpenSSL license.....	272
OpenSSH license .....	274
TinyLogin license .....	277
X11 license.....	278



# About this manual

## **Purpose of manual**

The purpose of this publication is to provide the descriptions and procedures required to install and configure the Seapath 385 product.

## **MGC and MRU components**

This publication does not include the installation of the Motion Gyro Compass (MGC) and the Motion Reference Unit (MRU). Refer to the *MGC Installation Manual* and the *MRU Installation Manual* for information about these items.

## **Target audience**

The publication is intended for technical personnel such as skilled shipyard and factory workers, electricians, qualified engineers, and naval architects.

## **License information**

An export license is required for the export of the Inertial Measurement Units MGC and MRU.

## **Registered trademarks**

Seapath® is a registered trademark of Kongsberg Discovery AS in Norway and the People's Republic of China. MGC® is a registered trademark in Norway and Europe. Windows® is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.

## **Subscriptions**

If you want to use the Seastar™ high performance position services from Fugro Norway AS, this requires a subscription. For a subscription, contact Seastar™ GNSS support.

- <https://fsp.support/seastar/index.php?tab=contacts>

## **Maintenance purposes**

This publication is also intended as reference material for the maintenance personnel. Keep this publication for later use.

# Seapath 385

## Topics

[System description, page 10](#)

[System diagram, page 13](#)

[Scope of supply, page 14](#)

[Main system units, page 15](#)

[Product restrictions, page 17](#)

[Health and safety, page 18](#)

[Using Seapath as NTP server, page 18](#)

[Network security, page 19](#)

[Support information, page 20](#)

## System description

The Seapath 385 is developed specifically for hydrographic surveying where high precision heading, position, velocity, roll, pitch, heave and timing are critical measurements. The product combines state-of-the-art inertial technology and processing algorithms with multi-frequency GPS, GLONASS, Galileo and Beidou satellite signals.

The Seapath software includes Automatic Online Calibration (AOC) that significantly improves the roll and pitch accuracy. With the AOC functionality recalibration of the IMU is now longer required.

The Seapath 385 series is delivered in the following product range:

### **Seapath with MRU (Motion Reference Unit)**

- Seapath 385-3 with MRU 3 to 0.010° roll and pitch accuracy
- Seapath 385-5 with MRU 5 to 0.008° roll and pitch accuracy
- Seapath 385-5+ with MRU 5+ to 0.005° roll and pitch accuracy

---

**Note**


---

*The MRU 3 model part of Seapath 385-3 has to be mounted in a fixed direction relative to the vessel and that is with the connector pointing up or down. Else the performance of the Seapath 385-3 will be degraded.*

---

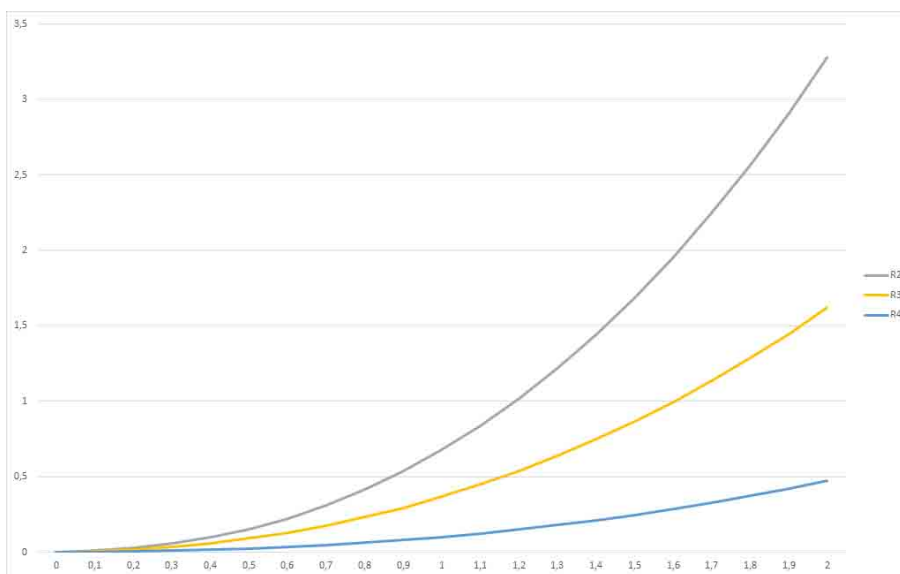
**Seapath with MGC (Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass)**

- Seapath 385-R2 with MGC R2 to 0.008° roll and pitch accuracy
- Seapath 385-R3 with MGC R3 to 0.007° roll and pitch accuracy
- Seapath 385-R4 with MGC R4 to 0.005° roll and pitch accuracy

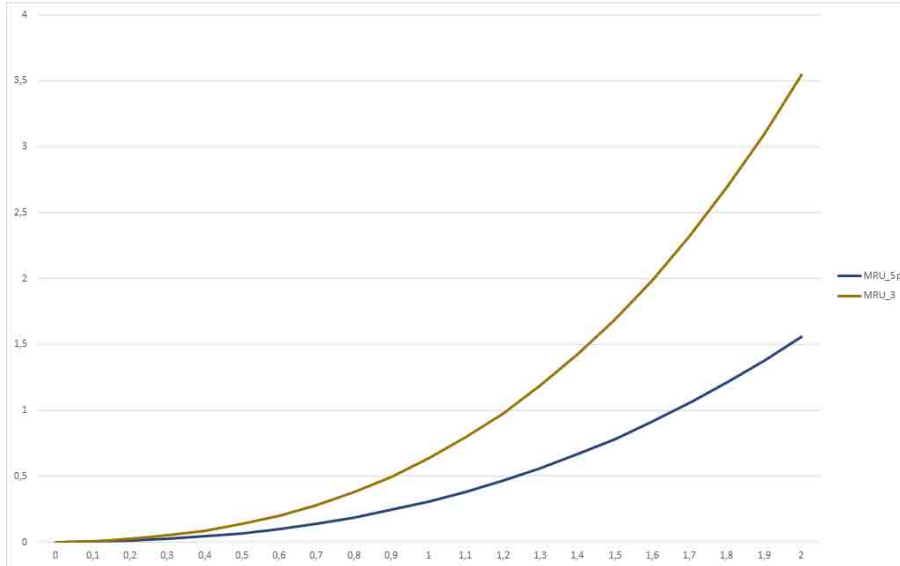
The advanced Seapath navigation algorithms integrate the RTK GNSS data with the inertial sensor data. This gives the Seapath 385 unique advantages compared to stand alone RTK products. The Seapath product's accurate roll, pitch and heading measurements allow the RTK antenna position to be referenced to any point on the vessel where accurate position and velocity are required. All the data from Seapath have the same time stamp and the output is in real-time. Subdecimetre position accuracy can be achieved through download of satellite orbit and clock data from internet and by post processing of satellite and IMU (Inertial Measurement Unit) data. The Seapath is robust against GNSS dropouts by using the inertial sensor for dead reckoning navigation in order to provide position, velocity and also heading measurements when GNSS is not available.

The Seapath 385 software has improved algorithms for position drift after GNSS dropout. The plots show typical position drifts.

*Figure 1 Typical position drift in meters after GNSS dropout in minutes for MGC R2, R3 and R4*



*Figure 2 Typical position drift in meters after GNSS dropout in minutes for MRU 3, 5 and 5+*



The product has a total of 16 configurable RS-232/422 serial lines and Ethernet ports for output of motion data and NMEA messages to the multibeam and survey computer. Input of DGNSS corrections of various quality and sources are input on a configurable RS-232/422 serial line or Ethernet.

For surveys where RTK position accuracy is not required in real-time, the Seapath has the possibility to log raw satellite data for post processing. Centimetre position accuracy can be achieved through download of satellite orbit and clock data from the internet and by post processing the satellite data.

By utilising standard DGNSS, Fugro Seastar<sup>®</sup> XP2/G2/G4/G4+, VERIPOS Ultra/Ultra<sup>2</sup>, C-NavC<sup>1</sup>, C-NavC<sup>2</sup> and RTK corrections, this system is a unique solution for hydrographic surveying and dredging work which demand the most comprehensive, most accurate surveying data available.

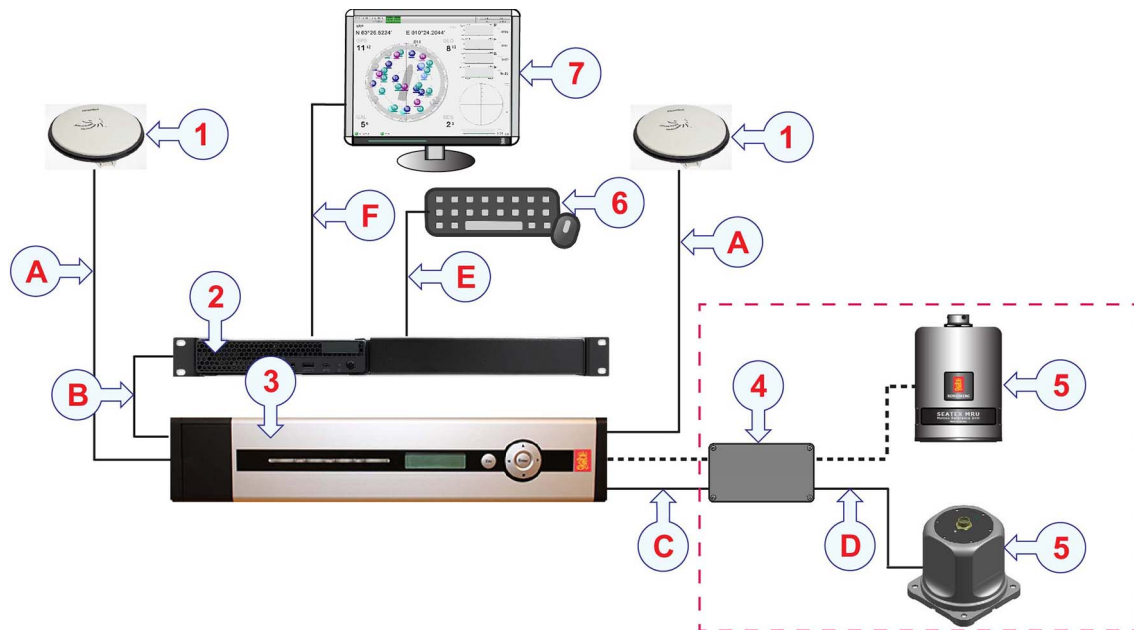
The combination of GNSS signals and inertial data enables much better performance than each of the signals alone, with high output data rate (up to 200 Hz), zero delay on output data, data available in up to eight different monitoring points and a total of eight configurable serial lines and five configurable Ethernet LANs.

This Seapath product is a two-module solution with a Processing Unit and an HMI Unit connected via Ethernet. The Processing Unit runs all critical computations independent of the user interface on the HMI Unit to ensure continuous and reliable operation. The HMI Unit present the vessel motion in a simple and easy-to-understand format to ensure that the decision making based on the available data is as efficient as possible.

## System diagram

The system diagram identifies the main components of a Seapath system.

The Inertial Measurement Unit connected to the Processing Unit can either be a Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass (MGC) or a Motion Reference Unit (MRU). The IMU components in the red square are not a part of a standard delivery.



### Units

- |   |                         |   |   |
|---|-------------------------|---|---|
| 1 | <i>GNSS antennas</i>    | 5 | <i>Inertial Measurement Unit (MGC or MRU) (Not part of standard delivery)</i> |
| 2 | <i>HMI Unit</i>         | 6 | <i>Keyboard and mouse (Not part of standard delivery)</i>                     |
| 3 | <i>Processing Unit</i>  | 7 | <i>Display (Not part of standard delivery)</i>                                |
| 4 | <i>IMU Junction Box</i> |   |   |

### Cables

- |   |  |   |  |
|---|--|---|--|
| A | <i>Antenna cables</i>                            | D | <i>IMU cable (Attached to IMU junction box)</i>                      |
| B | <i>Ethernet cable</i>                            | E | <i>Keyboard/mouse cable</i>  |
| C | <i>Processing Unit to IMU junction box cable</i> | F | <i>HDMI cable/Display Port cable (Not part of standard delivery)</i> |

## Scope of supply

The Seapath system comprises the Processing Unit, the HMI Unit with operational software, GNSS antennas and user documentation. The basic items are included in the delivery. Additional optional items can be purchased from Kongsberg Discovery AS.

### Basic items

- 1 ea Processing Unit (2U)
- 1 ea HMI Unit (1U)
- 2 ea GNSS antenna
- 2 ea GNSS antenna mounting kit
- 2 ea Interconnection cables  
One for Processing Unit end of coax cable. One for antenna end of coax cable.
- 1 ea Inertial Measurement Unit  
MGC or MRU (a part of this delivery or an existing unit)
- 1 ea Ethernet switch kit (8-port)
- 2 ea End-user documentation

### Additional required items

The following additional items are required for installation and/or operation. They can be ordered from Kongsberg Discovery AS or purchased locally.

- 1 ea 19" rack for mounting of the rack components  
Minimum 4U space is required if rack-mountable keyboard/mouse is used
- 1 ea Keyboard and mouse
- 1 ea Display  
Recommended resolution 1280 x 1024. Minimum resolution 1024 x 768.
- 2 ea GNSS antenna cables

### Additional optional items

The following additional optional items can be used together with the Seapath 385.

- 1 ea Inertial Measurement Unit  
MGC or MRU (a part of this delivery or an existing unit)
- 1 ea DGNSS Receiver
- 1 ea Antenna bracket of 2.5 or 4 metres baseline length



## Main system units

### Topics

[Processing Unit description, page 15](#)

[HMI Unit description, page 15](#)

[GNSS antenna description, page 16](#)

### Processing Unit description

The Processing Unit runs the processing software. The unit receives GNSS signals from the external antenna. The signals are processed and the calculated position and velocity data are sent to external equipment.

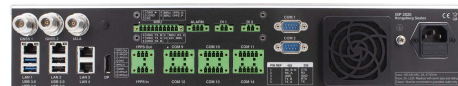


The unit has interfaces to an IMU and other external equipment.

The unit is a 2U unit designed to fit standard 19-inch racks. It is typically installed on the bridge or in the instrument room. The unit comprises the following main parts.

- Compact flash card.
- Hard disk.
- Serial I/O board, Ethernet and computer main board.
- GNSS receiver(s)
- Power supply.

The power on/off switch, local area network (LAN) port and USB connection are located behind the lid to the left on the front panel. Push lid on left side to open. These ports are individually galvanically isolated. The rear panel of the unit contains communication interface ports for interfacing to external equipment.



### Related topics

[Processing Unit interfaces, page 167](#)

### HMI Unit description

The HMI Unit holds the operator software which is used for configuration of the system and performance monitoring. You can have several HMI Units connected to one Processing Unit.



The unit is a 1U unit designed to fit standard 19-inch racks. It is typically installed on the bridge or in the instrument room.

The front panel of the unit contains a configurable USB port and the on/off button.



The rear panel of the unit contains a power inlet, a Display Port, four USB ports, one HDMI port and five Ethernet ports.

### Related topics

[HMI Unit interfaces, page 175](#)

## GNSS antenna description

The GNSS antenna receives signals from GPS, GLONASS, BeiDou and Galileo systems. It supports all GNSS constellations and frequencies. The antenna has L-Band signal reception. The multi-point antenna feed provides stable phase centre and enhanced multipath rejection. It is able to track low elevation satellites.



The antenna is enclosed in a durable, waterproof housing. It meets MIL-STD-810G specifications for vibration and salt fog.

The internal thread is 5/8 x 11 (standard marine mount). The GNSS antenna has a type TNC connector.

Power is supplied on the coaxial cable from the Processing Unit.

- **Manufacturer:** NovAtel
- **Manufacturer's website:** <http://www.novatel.com/>

# Product restrictions

## Topics

[Restrictions in guarantee, page 17](#)

[Restrictions in export, page 17](#)

[Restrictions in use, page 18](#)

## Restrictions in guarantee

Changes or modifications to the product not explicitly approved by Kongsberg Discovery AS will void the guarantee.

The liability of Kongsberg Discovery AS is limited to repair of this product only under the given terms and conditions stated in the sales documents. Consequential damages such as customer's loss of profit or damage to other systems traceable back to this product's malfunctions, are excluded.

The warranty does not cover malfunctions of the product resulting from the following conditions.

- The Processing Unit, HMI Unit or the Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) housing has been opened by the customer in an attempt to carry out repair work.
- The IMU is not shipped in the original transportation box.
- The IMU has been exposed to extreme shock and vibrations.
- Incorrect power connection.
- Short-circuiting of antenna cables during operation of the system.

## Restrictions in export

Export of these Inertial Measurement Units (IMU) requires an export license.

- MGC R2/R3/R4
- MRU 5+/5

## Important

---

Notice to customer/importer/end user.

The inertial sensor specified here is shipped from Norway in accordance with the Ministry of Foreign Affairs' Official Notification on Export Control and U.S. Export Administration Regulations (EAR).

The inertial sensor will be subject to restrictions from your national export control authorities if resold, transferred or otherwise disposed from your country.

Resale, transfer or otherwise disposal of the inertial sensor to countries, persons or entities under UN, US, EU or Norwegian embargo/sanctions, is prohibited.

Any valid and approved export license granted to Kongsberg Discovery AS from the Norwegian Ministry of Foreign Affairs or the U.S. Government, is not an authorization for you to resell, transfer or other disposal of the inertial sensor.

---

## Restrictions in use

The system requires certain conditions in order to operate.

The Seapath function is based on GNSS signals and requires free sight to the sky. A minimum of four visible satellites. A position dilution of precision (PDOP) value less than six. Otherwise normal conditions.

It is designed for use on-board marine surface operated vehicles with a linear acceleration less than  $\pm 45 \text{ m/s}^2$  ( $\pm 4.5 \text{ g}$ ). And an angular rate range less than  $\pm 75^\circ/\text{s}$ .

Specifications are valid without multipath, without shadowing of antennas and for typical survey operations.

## Health and safety

Operation or troubleshooting of this equipment will not imply any risk for high voltages, explosions or exposure to gas. The equipment complies with IEC 61010-1/EN 61010-1 standards regarding product safety (low voltage).

## Using Seapath as NTP server

The Seapath can be used as an NTP (Network Time Protocol) server for clock synchronization of connected computer systems.

An accuracy better than one millisecond can be achieved in local area networks under ideal conditions.

In order to use the Seapath as the NTP server, the NTP clients have to be configured with the Seapath IP address as the server. How this is done depends on the client software in use. Nothing in the Seapath has to be configured. The NTP server on the Seapath runs in standard mode with the PPS (pulse-per-second) as reference.

## Network security

If the Seapath 385 product is connected to a local area network, data security is important.

Equipment manufactured by Kongsberg Discovery is often connected to a local area network (LAN). When you connect a computer to a local area network you will always expose the data on that computer. All the other computers connected to the same network may be able to access your data. Several threats are imminent:

- Remote computers can read your data.
- Remote computers can change your data.
- Remote computers can change the behavior of your computer, for example by installing unwanted software.

Usually, two parameters are used to define the threat level:

- 1 The likelihood that any remote computer will do any of the above.
- 2 The damage inflicted if a remote computer succeeds doing any of the above.

Kongsberg Discovery has no information about your complete system installation. Products provided by Kongsberg Discovery are always regarded as stand-alone offline systems. They are regarded as stand-alone even though they may be connected to a local area network for sensor interfaces or data distribution.

### Note

---

*No network safety applications are installed on Kongsberg Discovery computers. The computer is not protected against viruses, malware or unauthorized access by external users.*

---

Securing the Seapath 385 system has no meaning unless you have established a policy that secures all the computers on the network. This policy must include physical access by trained and trusted users. The customer or end user of the Seapath 385 system is responsible for defining and implementing a security policy and providing the relevant network security applications.

### Note

---

*Kongsberg Discovery will not accept any responsibility for errors or damages caused by unauthorized use of or access to the Seapath 385 system.*

---

## Support information

If you need technical support for your product you must contact a Kongsberg Discovery office. A list of all our offices is available on our website.

- **Company name:** Kongsberg Discovery AS
- **Address:** Havnegata 9, N-7010 Trondheim, Norway
- **Telephone:** +47 33 03 41 00
- **Telephone, global 24h support:**
  - Europe, the Middle East and Africa: +47 33 03 24 07
  - Asia Pacific: +65 97 11 24 07
  - Americas: +15 04 303 5244
- **E-mail address:** support.seatex@kd.kongsberg.com
- **Website:** <http://www.kongsberg.com/discovery>

### **KM-Support App**

Kongsberg Discovery support is also available in the KM-Support App. Our support application is available for free in the App Store and Google Play.



# Preparations

## Topics

[Mechanical drawings, page 21](#)

[Necessary tools and equipment, page 21](#)

[Location of hardware units, page 22](#)

[Installing GNSS/DGNSS antennas, recommended practice, page 24](#)

[Antenna arrangements for various vessel types, page 28](#)

[Installing antenna cables, recommendations, page 29](#)

[Terminating coaxial cables, page 31](#)

[Lightning protection, page 40](#)

[Rack requirements, page 41](#)

## Mechanical drawings

Outline dimension drawings are included in this manual.

Unless otherwise specified, all measurements are in millimetres. The drawings are not to scale.

## Related topics

[Drawings, page 150](#)

## Necessary tools and equipment

We assume that you are equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic and electromechanical tasks. This includes different screwdriver types, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper, etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment.

Unless otherwise stated, all mounting hardware (such as bolts, nuts, washers, screws etc.) referred to in this document is to be supplied by the customer or the shipyard.

## Location of hardware units

### Topics

[Processing Unit and HMI Unit location, page 22](#)

[GNSS antenna location, page 22](#)

[Display location, page 24](#)

### Processing Unit and HMI Unit location

Consider these factors when installing the unit.

- The unit is designed for indoor installation. The best location is typically in the instrument room or on the bridge.
- The unit fits on rails in a 19-inch rack or console.
- The unit has an internal fan and requires free airflow from the rear and out to the sides. It is recommended that ventilation or air conditioning is provided in order to keep the ambient operating temperature at around 20 °C.
- Avoid placing the unit in locations with heavy vibrations, strong electronic fields (close to transformers) and/or excessive heat.
- Keep the area around the unit free from dust and static electricity.
- All connections to the unit are at the rear of the unit. Available space for cable connections and servicing must be provided.

### Related topics

[Processing Unit dimensions, page 151](#)

[HMI Unit dimensions, page 153](#)

[Installing the Seapath units, page 51](#)

### GNSS antenna location

Before mounting the antenna, select a location for best possible performance.

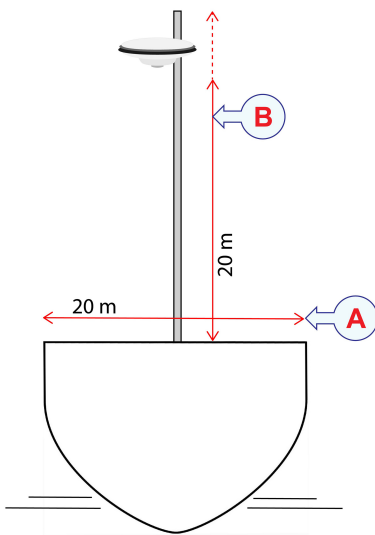
Consider these factors when installing the antenna.

- The antenna should have an unobstructed line-of-sight to the sky.
- Mount the antenna as high as possible.

- Mount the antenna in a location protected from direct illumination of radar beams and other transmitting antennas.

Seapath is more sensitive to blocking and reflections (multipath) of GNSS signals than GNSS sensors which only use pseudo-range data. This is because Seapath also uses carrier phase measurements for heading determination, and both GNSS antennas need to see at least four common satellites at the same time.

- Mount the antenna away from areas which experience high vibrations, excessive heat, electrical interference and strong magnetic fields.
- Mount the antenna as far as possible away from reflective objects and water bodies.
- In order to reduce problems due to multipath effects, the antennas have to be mounted above the nearest deck at a height which is equal to the width of this deck, or higher.



- A** Width of deck  
**B** Height of antenna must be equal to width of deck or higher

- Mount the antenna bracket in such a way that the torsion movement relative to the vessel's hull is kept at an absolute minimum.

#### Note

*If the antenna bracket supplied by Kongsberg Discovery is not used, it is important that the antennas are rigidly mounted so that the distance between the antennas does not change due to vibrations or accidental dislocation.*

- The antenna baseline length is recommended in the range 2.5 to 4.0 metres, but the length can be selected freely (no limitation in length). Maximum heading accuracy is achieved at 4.0 metres baseline.

### **Related topics**

[GNSS antenna dimensions, page 154](#)

[Mounting the GNSS antennas as stand-alone units, page 43](#)

[Mounting the GNSS antennas on antenna bracket, page 46](#)

[Installing GNSS/DGNSS antennas, recommended practice, page 24](#)

[Antenna arrangements for various vessel types, page 28](#)

[Installing antenna cables, recommendations, page 29](#)

## **Display location**

Consider these factors when installing the display.

- The best location is typically on a table in the instrument room or on the bridge. A location on the ceiling is also possible.
- Place the display close to the HMI Unit in order to reduce the length of the Display Port/HDMI cable.
- It is recommended that the area around the display is kept free from dust and static electricity.
- For best readability, the display must be protected from glare and have the correct height and angle.

The display is not a standard part of the delivery. This is a commercial item that can be purchased locally.

## **Installing GNSS/DGNSS antennas, recommended practice**

GNSS and DGNSS antennas are critical for operation and their location on the vessel must have high priority. Antenna location, separation and cable quality should be considered, as incorrect or inadequate installation can lead to poor positioning performance or complete loss of position. If the antenna is installed in a poor location, it can suffer from masking, multipath or interference from other radio sources which can affect the position performance.

### **Antenna location and separation**

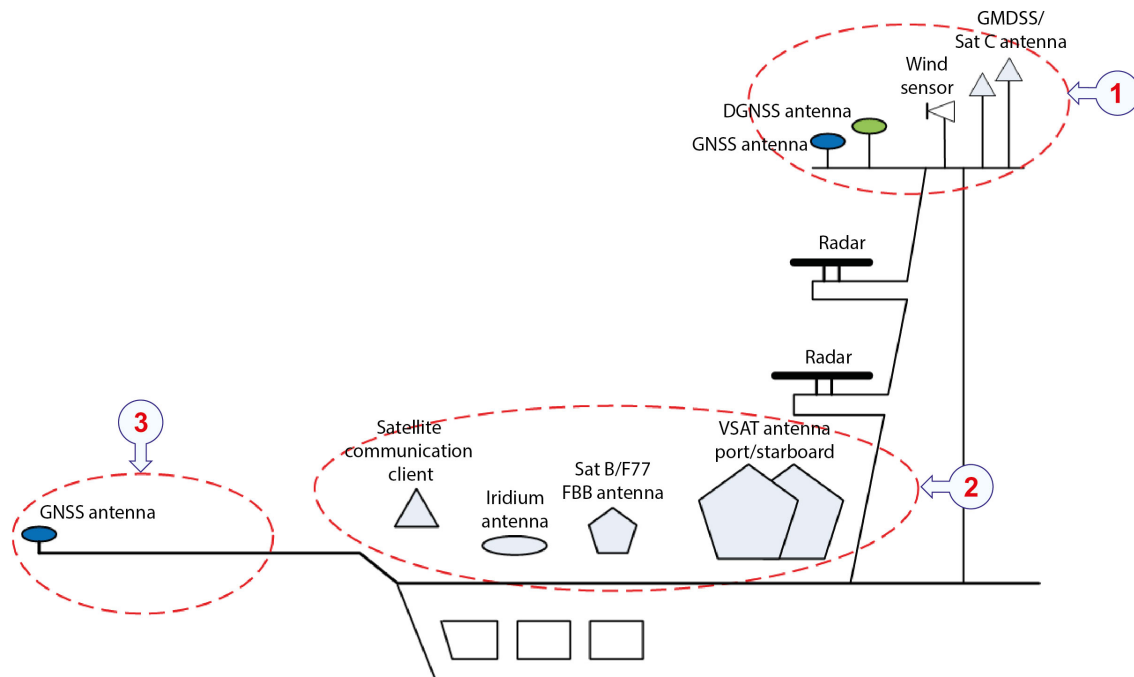
GNSS and DGNSS antennas should be separated both horizontally and vertically to reduce the risk of in-band interference, lightning strike and mechanical damage. If space is limited, DGNSS antennas should get the better location.

Antenna separation can be problematic for vessels with limited space in the main mast. A possible solution can be to locate GNSS/DGNSS antennas on the port and starboard sides of the instrument mast. A helideck location is also an option for GNSS antennas.

For drilling units the top of the derrick is also a possible location for GNSS/DGNSS antennas.

Operation in arctic areas require special attention for DGNSS antennas and the antenna location must be customized for each vessel. Depending on the operation, it might be required to double or triple the number of DGNSS antennas to avoid heading dependency due to local shading and roll and/or pitch.

A general antenna arrangement including satellite communication is illustrated.



### Antenna locations

- 1 *Protected area*
- 2 *Open area (risk of interference)*
- 3 *Helideck*

### Masking

The GNSS antenna should have an unobstructed line of sight to the sky. The signals from the satellite propagate by line-of-sight, which means that if the antenna cannot see the satellite, the reception will be severely impaired, if it occurs at all.

Potential obstructions are other masts and antennas, cranes, rigs and fixed platforms, buildings in ports, high cliffs or hills close to shore. The impact of this can be anything from degraded performance to a complete loss of positioning.

Crowded mast

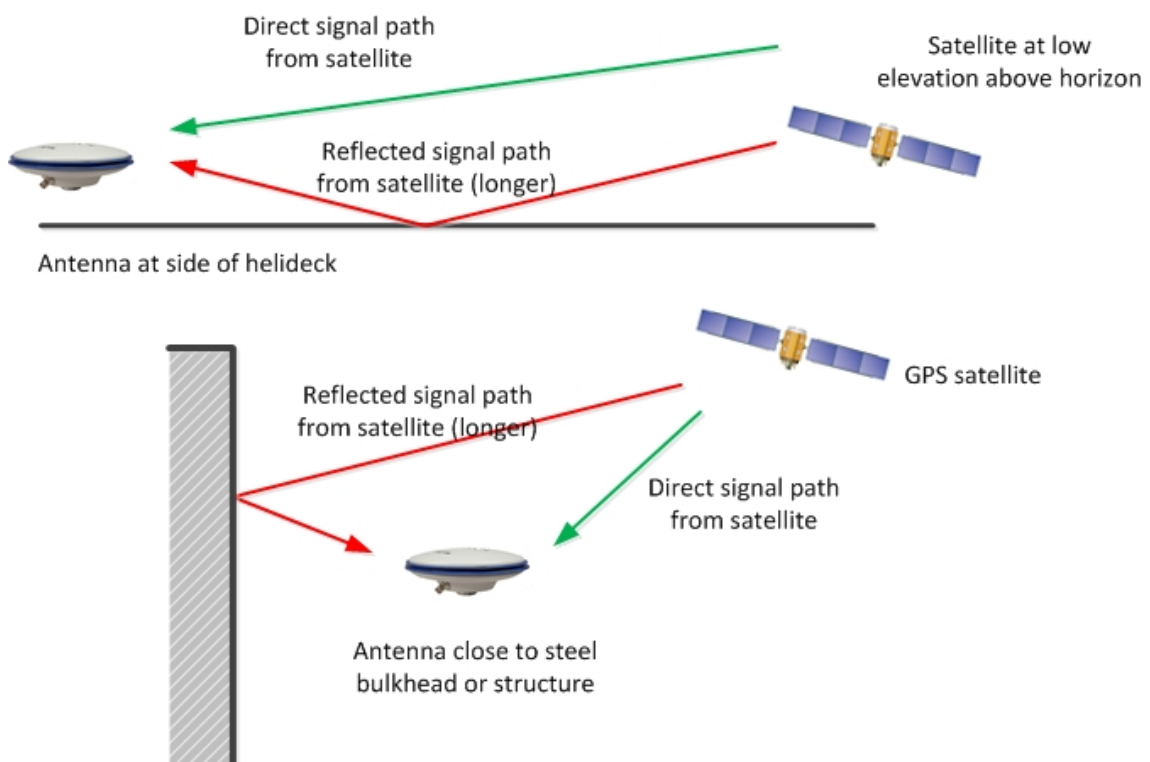


Good antenna location



### Multipath

Inappropriate location of the antenna can result in the antenna receiving reflections of the incoming signal as well as the signal itself (multipath). The reflected multipath signal takes a longer path than the direct signal, introducing an error into the position calculation.



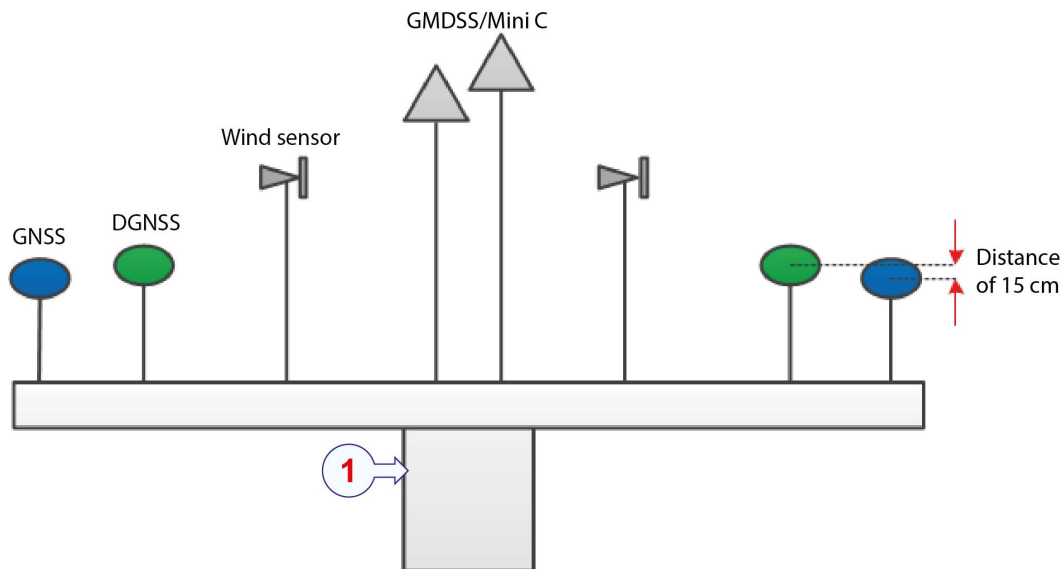
### Interference from other radiating sources

Interference can be caused by close proximity to other radiating sources. Installing GNSS antennas in close proximity to satellite communication systems operating in or



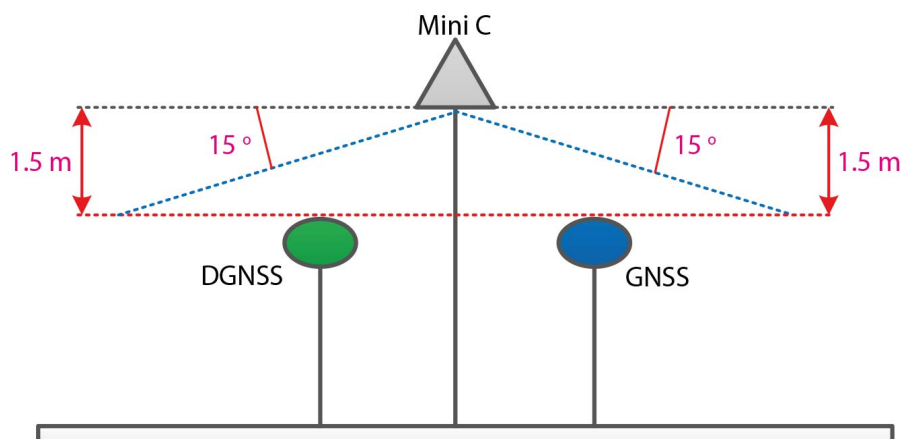
nearby GPS/GLONASS frequency bands (1.2 to 1.6 GHz) should be avoided (i.e. Sat C, Iridium). Ideally the antenna should be situated at a minimum of 3 metres from other radiating sources. As this is not always practically possible, a compromise location must be sought.

A typical antenna distribution is illustrated.



- *Radar mast/instrument mast*

GNSS/DGNSS antennas must not be placed within the Mini C antenna beam (15 degrees below the Mini C antenna's horizontal plane). The vertical separation should be at least 1.5 metres.



During installation, comprehensive tests should be carried out for potential interference by conducting transmissions from each RF source for extended periods, individually and simultaneously.

### Related topics

[GNSS antenna location, page 22](#)

[Mounting the GNSS antennas as stand-alone units, page 43](#)

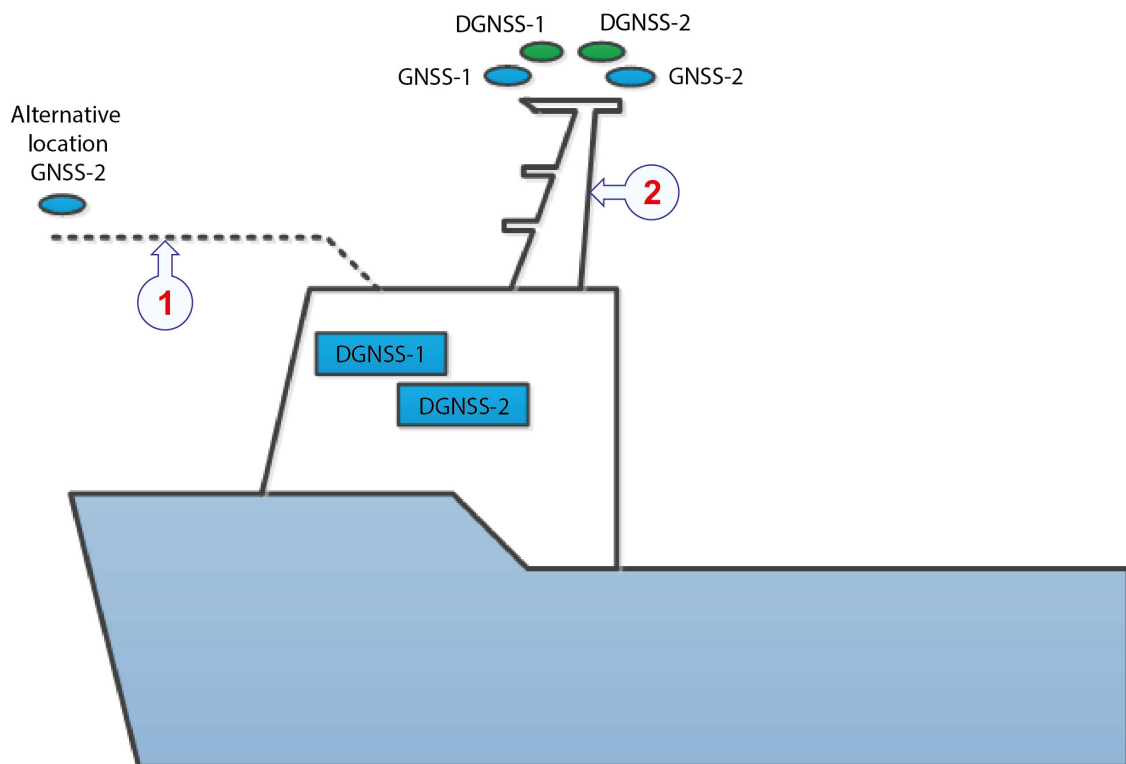
[Mounting the GNSS antennas on antenna bracket, page 46](#)

[Technical specifications, page 155](#)

## Antenna arrangements for various vessel types

The illustrations show typical antenna arrangements for various types of vessels.

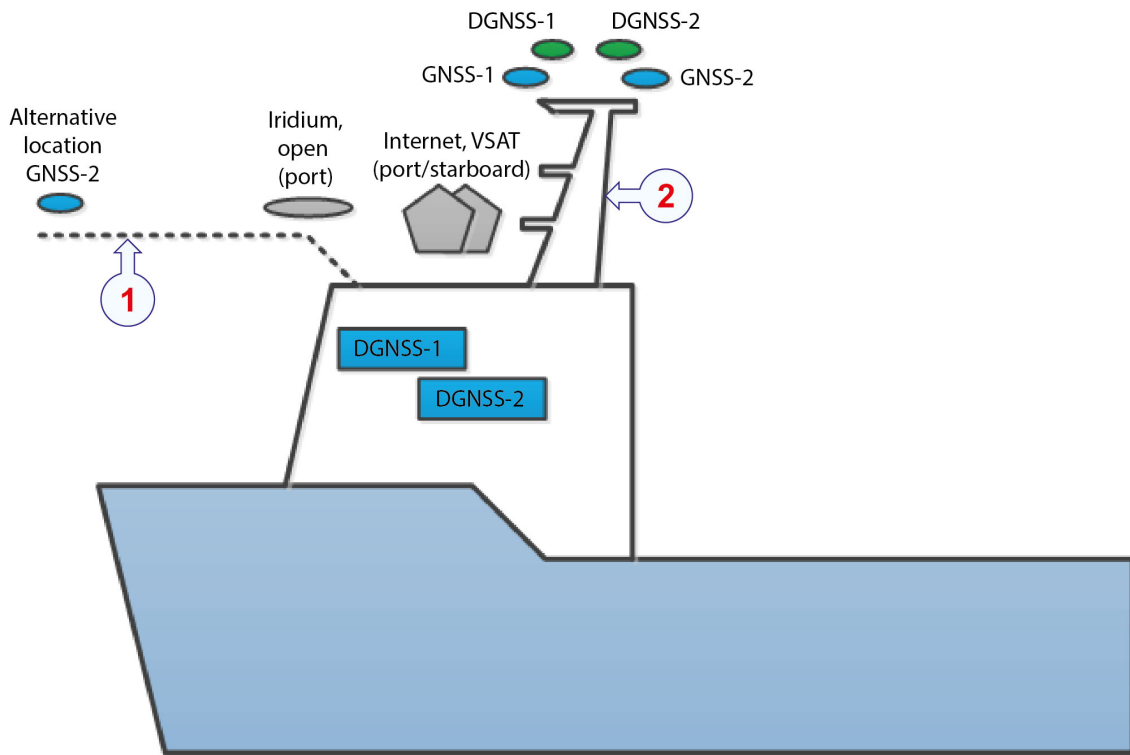
### Survey vessel arrangement



### Antenna locations

- 1 *Helideck*
- 2 *Radar mast*

### Arctic/ice breaker arrangement



#### Antenna locations

- 1 *Helideck*
- 2 *Radar mast*

#### Related topics

[GNSS antenna location, page 22](#)

[Mounting the GNSS antennas as stand-alone units, page 43](#)

[Mounting the GNSS antennas on antenna bracket, page 46](#)

## Installing antenna cables, recommendations

Correct handling, installation and connection of the antenna cable(s) are vital for optimum system performance.

As the signals involved are basically weak radio frequency (RF) signals, it is important to consider which type of cable to use and how best to install and connect the antenna cables.

Attenuation of GNSS signals should be considered when selecting the cable type, as signal loss will determine the maximum length of the cable. The number of connectors which will attenuate the radio signal must be taken into account. Other components, such as lightning protectors, should also be considered.

Note that a too powerful radio signal may cause saturation of the receiving circuitry in shorter cable runs. Then it may be necessary to use signal attenuators or cables with higher attenuation levels.

The maximum length for each of the antenna coaxial cables is 100 metres for the cable type normally delivered with the system (½" Superflex).

As far as practically possible, antenna cables should be kept separate from other cables which may cause electrical interference. Such as power cables and radio transmitter cables.

Outdoor cable connections should be sealed with self-amalgamating tape or similar to keep out water. Make sure that all cable connectors are properly fastened.

Do not twist cables or force cables into sharp bends. This may damage the cables and cause system failure.

Avoid high temperature exposure for the cables. Make sure that the cable runs are not close to hot working areas or touching hot surfaces.

Secure the cables with clamps if you have long cable runs. It is recommended to label the cables for identification purposes.

After installation, make sure that any excess cable is looped and clamped or tied safely away from any control cables, fuel lines, hydraulic lines or moving parts. It is recommended to form loops with a cable bend radius of at least 150 mm.

### **Related topics**

[GNSS antenna location, page 22](#)

[Mounting the GNSS antennas as stand-alone units, page 43](#)

[Mounting the GNSS antennas on antenna bracket, page 46](#)

[Terminating coaxial cables, page 31](#)

[Cable specifications, page 162](#)

## Terminating coaxial cables

### Topics

[About coaxial cable termination , page 31](#)

[Terminating coaxial cables with stripping tool, page 32](#)

[Terminating coaxial cables without stripping tool, page 35](#)

### About coaxial cable termination

If you do not have a coaxial cable with a connector attached, you must attach the connector to the cable yourself.

You can strip the coaxial cable with or without the use of a stripping tool. A stripping tool is a commercial item and can be purchased in any hardware store.

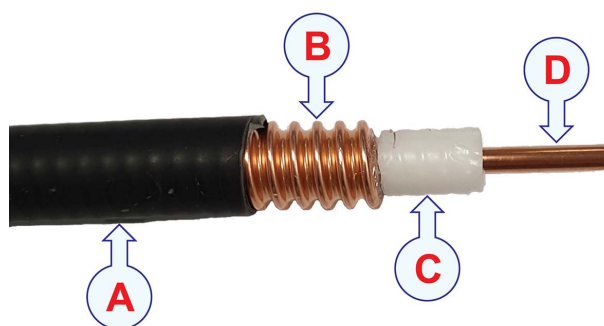
### Connector definitions



- A** *Connector head*
- B** *Cable entry*
- C** *Back nut*

### Cable definitions

This is a superflexible RFF ½" coaxial cable.

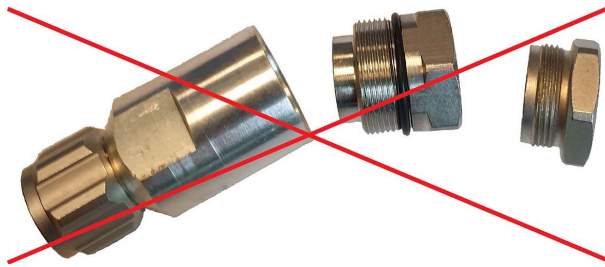


- A** *Cable jacket*
- B** *Outer conductor*
- C** *Dielectric insulation*
- D** *Inner conductor*

You must NOT separate the connector.



The connector is OK.



The connector is NOT OK.

## Terminating coaxial cables with stripping tool

If you do not have a coaxial cable with a connector attached, you must attach the connector to the cable yourself.

### Prerequisites

The following specific items are required for this task:



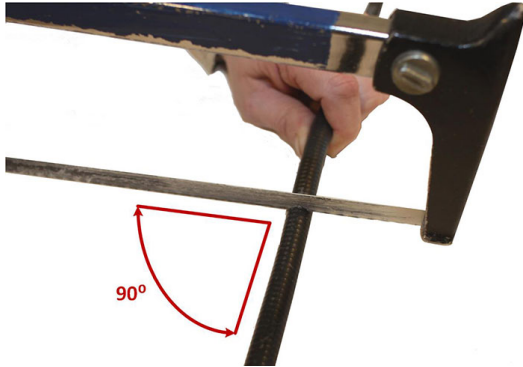
- 1 Metal-cutting saw
- 2 Spanners, 21 mm, 22 mm
- 3 Utility knife
- 4 Abrasive paper
- 5 Stripping tool

### Context

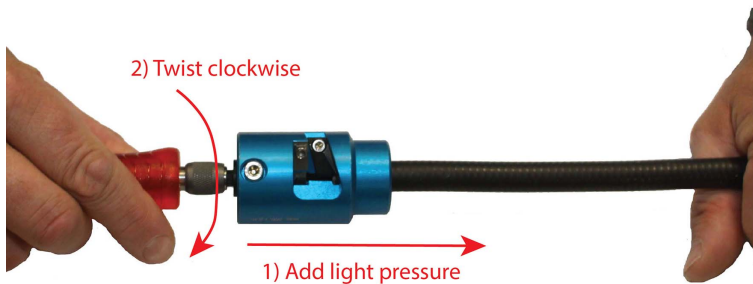
This procedure applies to a superflexible RFF ½" coaxial cable.

## Procedure

- 1 Cut the cable off square, perpendicular to the cable axis.



- 2 Strip the cable.
  - a Hold the cable and place the stripping tool on the end of the cable.
  - b With a light pressure, press the stripping tool onto the cable while twisting the stripping tool clockwise.



- c Pull back the cable.  
The cable should now look like this.



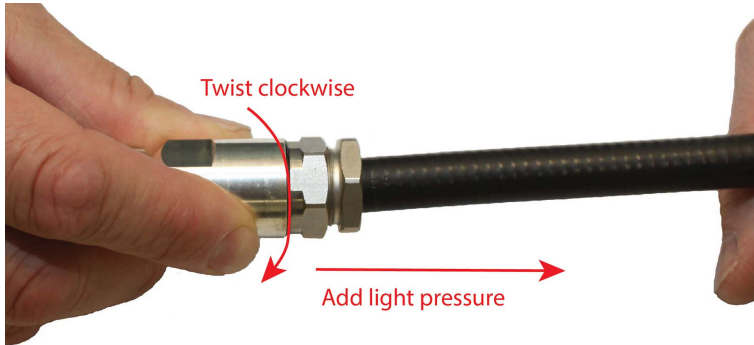
Make sure that the cut looks clean and smooth, so that when you screw the connector onto the cable end, the outer conductor will not be damaged.

- 3 Carefully clean the inner conductor. Use the abrasive paper.



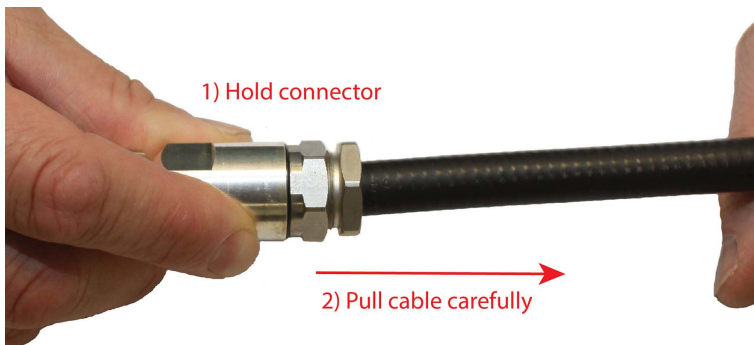
4 Mount the connector.

- a Push the connector onto the prepared cable end until it stops.
- b Screw the connector onto the cable until it stops. Do not use excessive force.



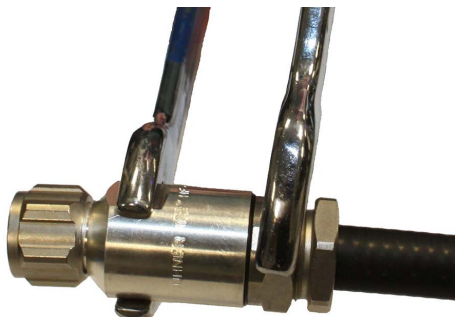
5 Check the connector seat.

- a Pull the cable while holding the connector. The cable should not be pulled out of the connector.



6 Tighten the connector cable entry.

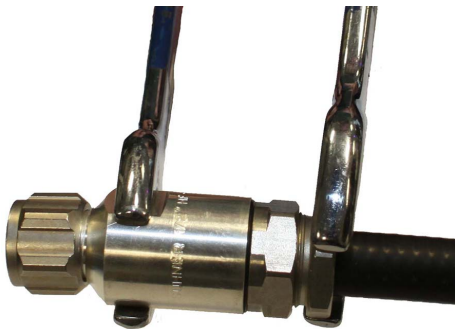
- a Use the spanners to hold the connector head and the cable entry.
- b Tighten with a torque of approximately 25 Nm. Rotate the cable entry only.



7 Tighten the back nut.

- a Use the spanners to tighten the back nut of the connector until it stops.





- 8 Fasten the mated connector pair. Tighten with a torque of approximately 3 Nm.



- 9 Apply water protection.
- Cover both connectors with self-vulcanising tape.
  - Apply a layer of electrical tape on top to protect against ultraviolet (UV) radiation. UV rays will harden the self-vulcanising tape and reduce the water protection.
  - You can also use heat shrink or cold shrink tube to waterproof the connector.



## Terminating coaxial cables without stripping tool

If you do not have a coaxial cable with a connector attached, you must attach the connector to the cable yourself.

### Prerequisites

The following specific items are required for this task:



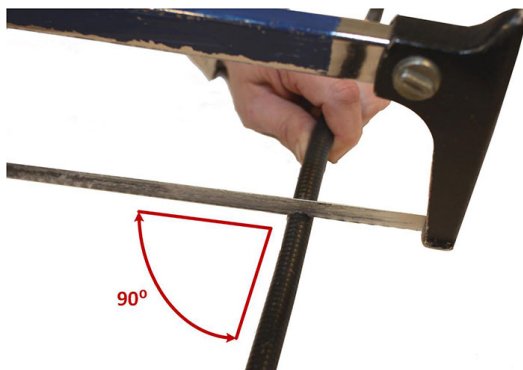
- 1 Metal-cutting saw
- 2 Spanners, 21 mm, 22 mm
- 3 Utility knife
- 4 Abrasive paper
- 5 File tool
- 6 Measurement tool

### Context

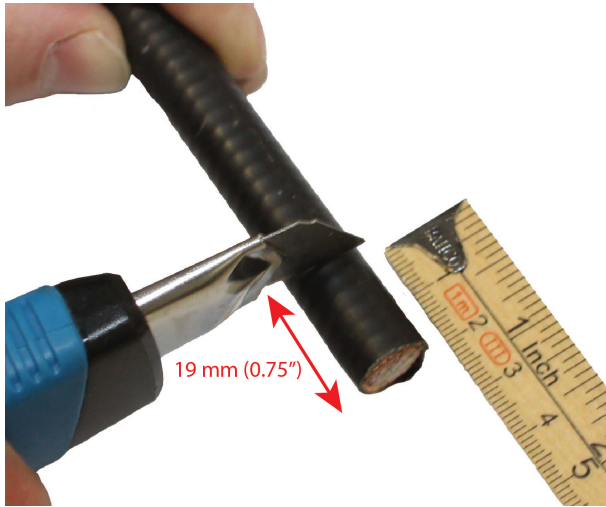
This procedure applies to a superflexible RFF ½" coaxial cable.

### Procedure

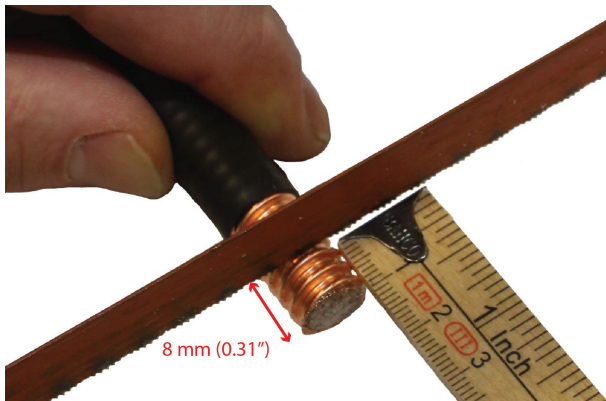
- 1 Cut the cable off square, perpendicular to the cable axis.



- 2 Strip the cable.
  - a Cut back the cable jacket 19 mm (0.75") from the cable end. Be careful so you do NOT damage the inner conductor.



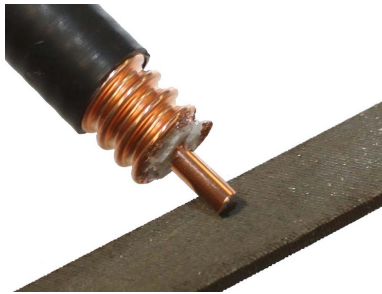
- b Cut back the outer conductor 8 mm (0.31") from the cable end.



- c Remove the dielectric insulation..



- d Chamfer the inner conductor by using the file.



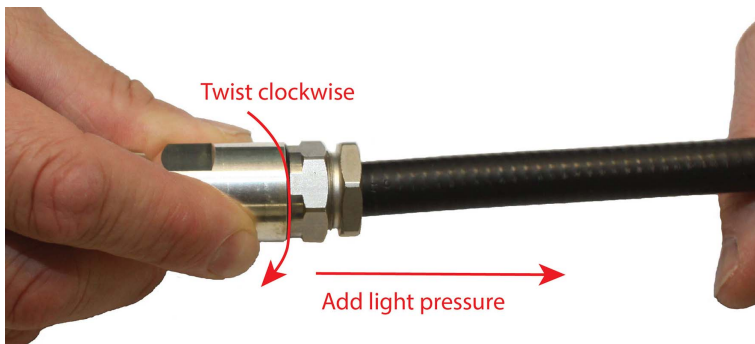
- 3 Carefully clean the inner conductor. Use the abrasive paper. The cable should now look like this.



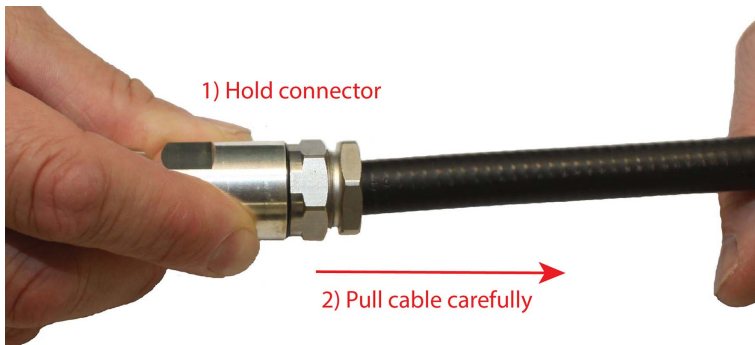
Make sure that the cut looks clean and smooth, so that when you screw the connector onto the cable end, the outer conductor will not be damaged.



- 4 Mount the connector.
  - a Push the connector onto the prepared cable end until it stops.
  - b Screw the connector onto the cable until it stops. Do not use excessive force.



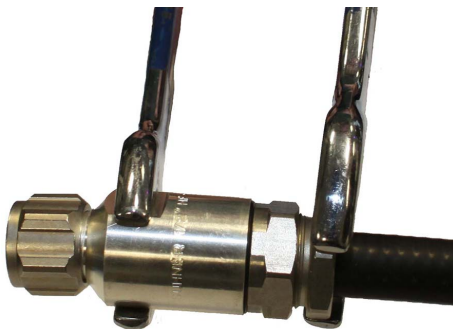
- 5 Check the connector seat.
  - a Pull the cable while holding the connector. The cable should not be pulled out of the connector.



- 6 Tighten the connector cable entry.
  - a Use the spanners to hold the connector head and the cable entry. Rotate the cable entry only.
  - b Tighten with a torque of approximately 25 Nm.



- 7 Tighten the back nut.
  - a Use the spanners to tighten the back nut of the connector until it stops.



- 8 Fasten the mated connector pair. Tighten with a torque of approximately 3 Nm.



- 9 Apply water protection.
  - a Cover both connectors with self-vulcanising tape.

- b Apply a layer of electrical tape on top to protect against ultraviolet (UV) radiation. UV rays will harden the self-vulcanising tape and reduce the water protection.
- c You can also use heat shrink or cold shrink tube to waterproof the connector.



## Lightning protection

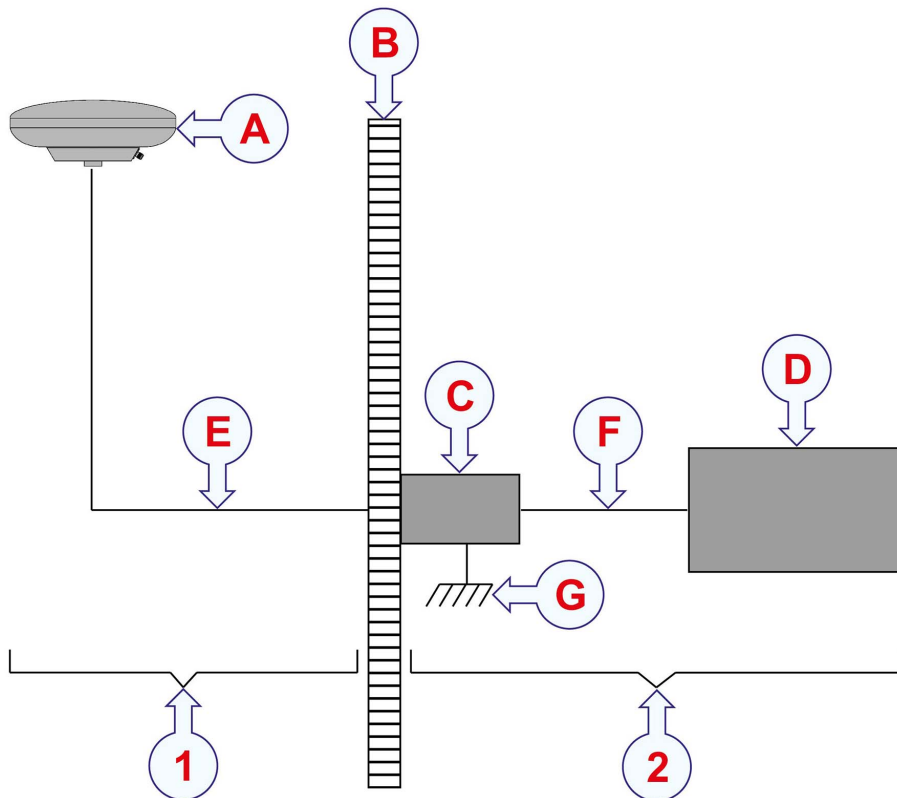
We recommend that you use lightning protection to protect the equipment in case of a stroke of lightning.

The strike of lightning onto a vessel can seriously harm equipment on-board. The heavy current can be conducted through cables and equipment. Lightning protection equipment may protect against over voltages from a strike of lightning by reducing the voltage or by breaking the electrical circuit. However, installation of lightning protection equipment does not guarantee that the equipment in the other end is safe from damage by lightning strokes.

The placement of the lightning arrester is dependent on its design and weather proofing (IP rate). In this example the arrester is placed indoors.

A possible installation is illustrated.

Please contact Kongsberg Discovery AS for recommendations regarding such equipment.



- |          |   |          |                            |
|----------|---|----------|----------------------------|
| <b>A</b> | <i>Antenna</i>                              | <b>1</b> | <i>Outdoor environment</i> |
| <b>B</b> | <i>Ship structure</i>                       | <b>2</b> | <i>Indoor environment</i>  |
| <b>C</b> | <i>Lightning protector</i>                  |          |                            |
| <b>D</b> | <i>Processing Unit/Demodulator/Receiver</i> |          |                            |
| <b>E</b> | <i>Coaxial cable</i>                        |          |                            |
| <b>F</b> | <i>Coaxial cable</i>                        |          |                            |
| <b>G</b> | <i>Earth strap to ship structure</i>        |          |                            |

### Related topics

[Support information, page 20](#)

## Rack requirements

This product can be delivered with or without a rack. If the product is delivered with a rack, the rack components are pre-installed in the rack. If the product is delivered without a rack, the rack units must be installed in a rack which is already in place on site. This applies to the Processing Unit and the HMI Unit.

Consider the following to determine whether your rack is suitable for the installation.

- The rack must be securely mounted to the floor.
- The rack must be a standard 19-inch rack.
- The Processing Unit will need at least 450 mm installation depth. If an optional monitor drawer is to be installed, the depth of the rack must be 600 mm.
- The rack should have air inlet on top and bottom or ventilation splits on the sides. The rack unit has ventilation of the sides. Forced ventilation may be required if the rack contains several electronic modules.
- The rack must be mounted in such a way that the minimum cable bends are not exceeded.
- The rack must be connected to a grounded outlet.

### **Related topics**

[Installing the Seapath units, page 51](#)

[Processing Unit dimensions, page 151](#)

[HMI Unit dimensions, page 153](#)

[Installing the rack, page 52](#)

[Installing the system units in a rack, page 52](#)



# Installing the GNSS antennas

## Topics

[Mounting the GNSS antennas as stand-alone units, page 43](#)

[Mounting the GNSS antennas on antenna bracket, page 46](#)

## Mounting the GNSS antennas as stand-alone units

The GNSS antenna receives signals from GPS, GLONASS, BeiDou and Galileo systems.

### Prerequisites

- A 1" open-end wrench.
- Coaxial cable with a male N-connector.

Check the antenna cable for short-circuiting before attaching the cable to the antenna and the Processing Unit. For example with a multimeter.

### Context

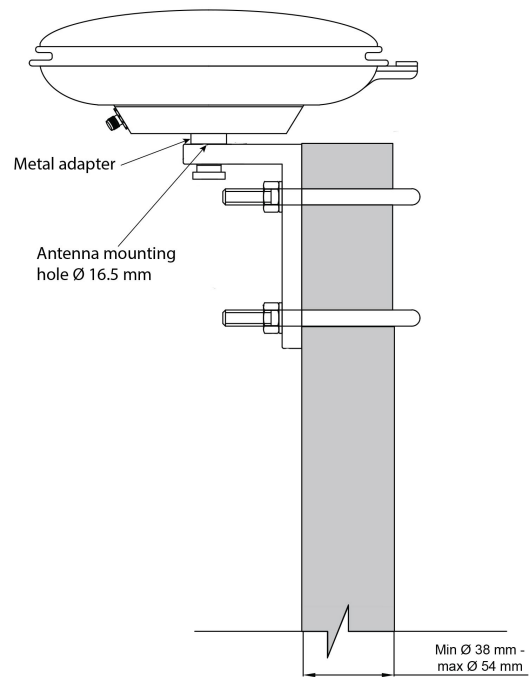
The antenna is delivered with a mounting kit. The antenna mounting bracket is designed for mounting on both horizontal and vertical pipes. Maximum diameter for the pipe is 54 mm. Minimum diameter for the pipe is 38 mm.

The cable recommended for the antenna is a 1/2" superflexible cable. Interconnection cables are included in the delivery.

The antenna cable must be as straight as possible. Do not crush or crimp the cable with tie-downs, as this will affect the electrical properties of the cable.

The GNSS receiver(s) provides the necessary power through the antenna RF connector.

The cable(s) should be labelled for identification purposes.

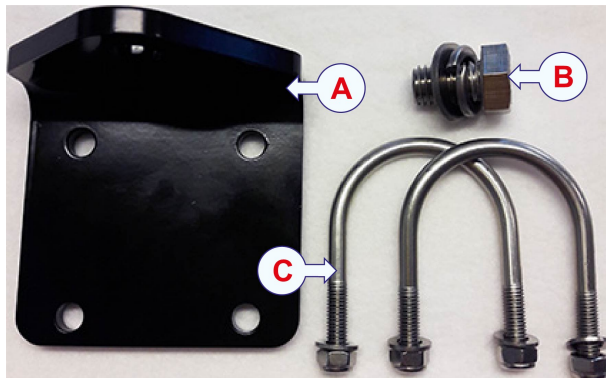


### Important

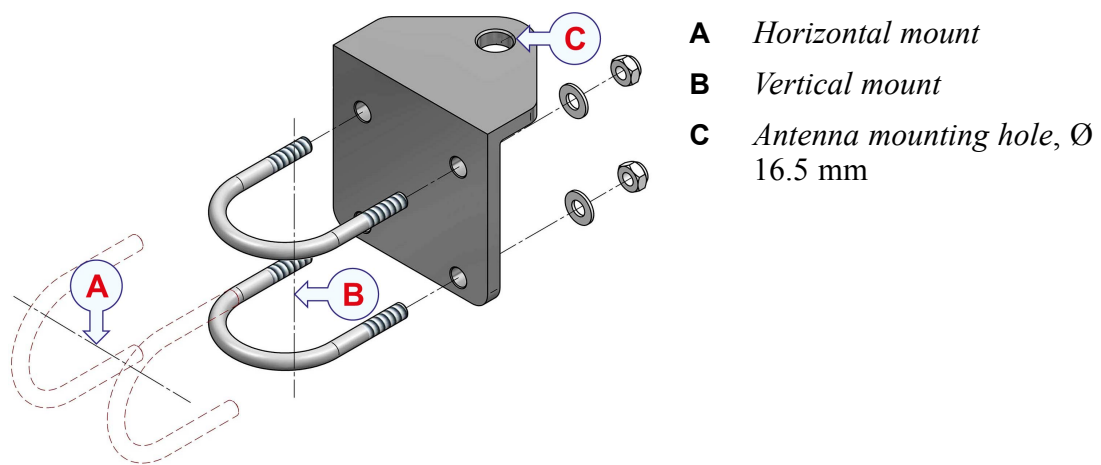
---

If you do not mount the antenna to the mounting bracket immediately during bracket installation, remember to keep the bolt and washers for later use.

---



- A** Antenna mounting bracket
- B** Bolt with washers
- C** U-bolts, Washers



---

**Note**

*The metal adapter at the bottom of the antenna is fixed in place. Do not attempt to remove it.*

---

**Caution**

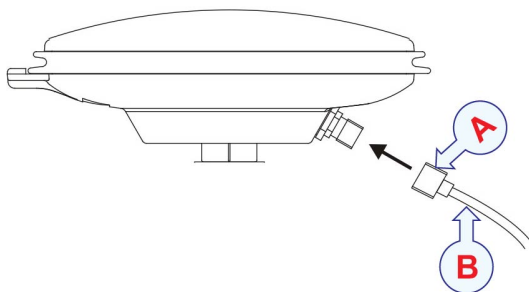
*If the antenna cable is attached to the Processing Unit, do not attach the antenna cable to the antenna with the unit powered on. If the antenna cable is short-circuited with power on, the GNSS receiver within the unit can be damaged.*

---

**Procedure**

- 1 Attach the antenna mounting bracket to a pipe or similar using the U-bolts.
- 2 Enter the bolt with the washers through the hole at the top of the mounting bracket.
- 3 Screw the antenna to the bolt.
- 4 Remove the dust cap from the antenna connector.

- 5 Attach the antenna interconnection cable to the antenna. Attach the ½" superflexible cable to the other end of the interconnection cable.



- A Connector
- B Coaxial cable

- 6 Wrap outdoor cable connections with waterproof self-vulcanising and UV resistant tape. An alternate way of waterproofing is to use heat shrink hose with glue. The hose should cover the whole connector and part of the cable.
- 7 Dependent on the cable installation, secure the cable to the mast every one to three metres with clamps or bands (non-metal).
- 8 Route the connector at the other end of the antenna cable to the Processing Unit. A short interconnection cable is often needed in order to secure cable runs into the rack.

### Related topics

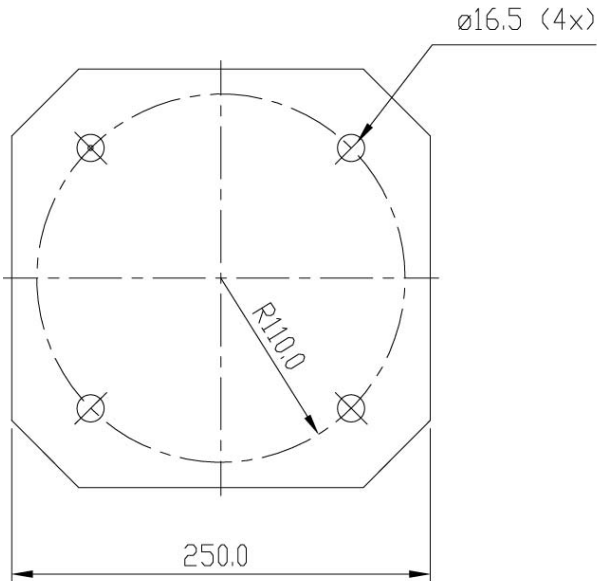
- [GNSS antenna location, page 22](#)
- [Installing GNSS/DGNSS antennas, recommended practice, page 24](#)
- [Antenna arrangements for various vessel types, page 28](#)
- [Installing antenna cables, recommendations, page 29](#)
- [GNSS antenna dimensions, page 154](#)
- [Terminating coaxial cables, page 31](#)
- [Cabling for the rack units, page 65](#)

## Mounting the GNSS antennas on antenna bracket

The GNSS antenna receives signals from GPS, GLONASS, BeiDou and Galileo systems.

### Prerequisites

Make a holder for the antenna bracket. The holder must be properly fastened to the mast in the preferred orientation, horizontal or vertical. The holder is not a part of the Seapath delivery.



- A 1" open-end wrench.
- Coaxial cable with a male N-connector.

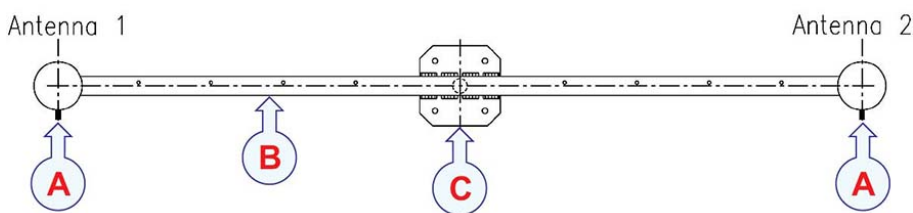
Check the antenna cable for short-circuiting before attaching the cable to the antenna and the Processing Unit. For example with a multimeter.

### Context

#### Antenna orientation

Depending on the antenna type, the labelling on the antenna housing, either text or arrows, or the connector location, is used to determine the mounting direction.

The illustration shows the antennas oriented with the connectors pointing in the same direction. The antennas are not marked, and are interchangeable, but here they are labelled Antenna 1 and Antenna 2 for reference.



- A** *Antennas with connector pointing in the same direction*
- B** *Antenna bracket*
- C** *Antenna holder*

The normal orientation of the antenna bracket is along ship with Antenna 1 located aft. It can be mounted in any orientation, provided it is approximately horizontal.

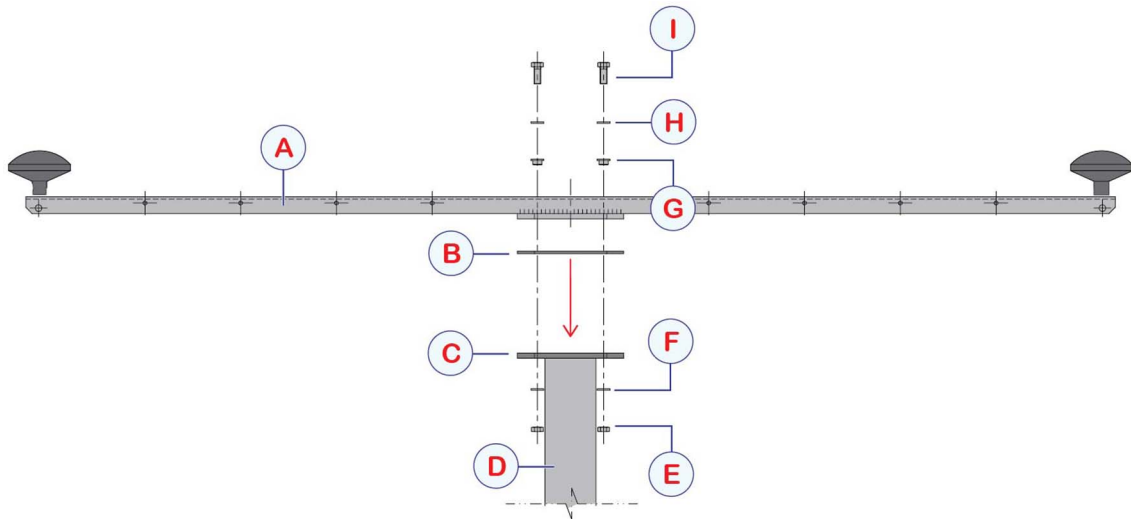
**Important**

---

Both antennas have to be oriented in the same direction when mounted on the antenna bracket. If not, the system will have a degraded heading performance.

---

**Antenna installation components**



- |          |   |          |                                 |
|----------|---|----------|---------------------------------|
| <b>A</b> | <i>Antenna bracket</i>                      | <b>E</b> | <i>4 nuts M6</i>                |
| <b>B</b> | <i>Thermoplastic insulation plate (PET)</i> | <b>F</b> | <i>4 washers</i>                |
| <b>C</b> | <i>Antenna holder</i>                       | <b>G</b> | <i>4 thermoplastic bushings</i> |
| <b>D</b> | <i>Mast</i>                                 | <b>H</b> | <i>4 washers</i>                |
|          |   | <b>I</b> | <i>4 screws M6</i>              |

**Cables**

The cable recommended for the antenna is a 1/2" superflexible cable. Interconnection cables are included in the delivery.

The antenna cable must be as straight as possible. Do not crush or crimp the cable with tie-downs, as this will affect the electrical properties of the cable.

The cable(s) should be labelled for identification purposes.

**Caution**

---

*If the antenna cable is attached to the Processing Unit, do not attach the antenna cable to the antenna with the unit powered on. If the antenna cable is short-circuited with power on, the GNSS receiver within the unit can be damaged.*

---

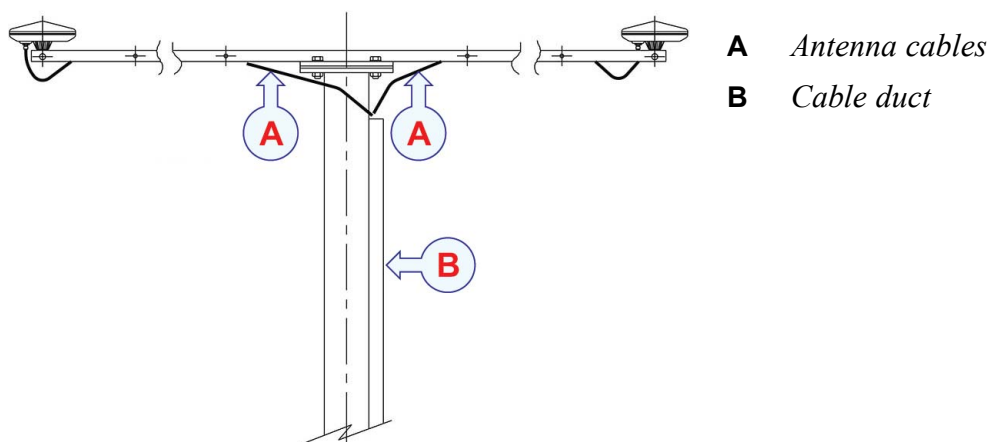
The GNSS receiver(s) provides the necessary power through the antenna RF connector.

**Note**

*The metal adapter at the bottom of the antenna is fixed in place. Do not attempt to remove it.*

**Procedure**

- 1 Find a suitable location for the antenna holder.
- 2 Bring the antenna bracket, the two antennas and the antenna cables as close as possible to the location of the antenna holder.
- 3 Mount the antennas to the antenna bracket while the bracket and antennas are still down on deck. Both antennas must be oriented in the same direction.
- 4 Fasten the antennas to the bracket with screws and locking washers.
- 5 Connect the antenna cables to both antennas.  
Use the interconnection cables between the antenna and the superflex cable.
- 6 Seal the connection between the antenna and the antenna cable against water penetration by using waterproof self-vulcanising tape.
- 7 Strap the antenna cables inside the antenna bracket.
- 8 Place the delivered insulation plate between the antenna holder and the antenna bracket.
- 9 Lift the antenna bracket with the antennas to the preferred direction on the holder.
- 10 Place the four bushings in the mounting holes before you enter the screws.  
This is to ensure galvanic isolation of the antenna bracket from the mast and to prevent corrosion.
- 11 Secure the nuts with washers or by using self-locking nuts.
- 12 Run the cables inside a cable duct or secure the cables to the mast with cable ties.



- 13 Attach the interconnection cables to the superflex cable and connect the cables to the connectors at the rear of the Processing Unit.

**Related topics**

[GNSS antenna location, page 22](#)

[Installing GNSS/DGNSS antennas, recommended practice, page 24](#)

[Antenna arrangements for various vessel types, page 28](#)

[Installing antenna cables, recommendations, page 29](#)

[GNSS antenna dimensions, page 154](#)

[Terminating coaxial cables, page 31](#)

[Cabling for the rack units, page 65](#)



# Installing the Seapath units

## Topics

[System units pre-installed in a rack, page 51](#)

[Installing the rack, page 52](#)

[Installing the system units in a rack, page 52](#)

## System units pre-installed in a rack

The Seapath system can be delivered with or without a rack. If the product is delivered with a rack, the rack units are pre-installed in the rack.

The rack units in this system are:

- Processing Unit
- HMI Unit

With pre-installed units you must mount the rack in a suitable location and carry out the cabling for the system.

## Related topics

[Installing the rack, page 52](#)

[Cabling for the rack units, page 65](#)

## Installing the rack

If your system is delivered with the rack units pre-installed, you must mount the rack in a suitable location.

### Context

Make sure that there is a minimum distance of 20 mm free space behind the rack due to air outlet at the rear of the rack. Also make sure that there is enough space behind the rack for cable connections.

Make sure that all cables are long enough to accommodate service from the front. The cables should be long enough to make it possible to pull each unit to the front of the rack for disconnection of cables.

The front of the cabinet must be available during normal operation.

### Procedure

- 1 Place the rack in a suitable location in an indoor environment. In the instrument room or on the bridge.
- 2 Fasten the rack to the floor with bolts or similar mounting equipment. Make sure that the rack is securely fastened.

### Related topics

[Rack requirements, page 41](#)

[System units pre-installed in a rack, page 51](#)

[Cabling for the rack units, page 65](#)

## Installing the system units in a rack

If your system is delivered without a rack, the Processing Unit and the HMI Unit shall be mounted in a 19-inch rack or cabinet. In addition you must carry out the cabling and interface configuration.

### Context

Important \_\_\_\_\_

If you have a rack-mountable keyboard in your system, make sure that you have enough space in the rack for the keyboard.

A rack-mountable keyboard and mouse will require 1U space in the rack.

\_\_\_\_\_

The cable strain relief bracket allows for flexibility in the cables without putting stress on the vulnerable points on the cable.

**Note**

---

*The Processing Unit has a plastic film on top, and it may have one underneath, to protect the unit from transportation scratches. Remove this film before operation as the plastic film will reduce the heat transfer from the unit and thus cause an increase in the temperature inside the unit.*

---

**Procedure**

- 1 Find a suitable location for the Processing Unit and the HMI Unit.  
Typically on the bridge or in the instrument room.
- 2 Remove any plastic film from the Processing Unit.
- 3 Place the units on rails or shelves in a 19-inch rack.  
This is to make sure that the units are supported at the rear. Minimum 10 cm free space is needed behind the units for connection of cables.
- 4 Fasten each unit with four screws in the front.

**Result**

You are now ready to connect the necessary cables to the Processing Unit and the HMI Unit.

**Related topics**

- [Rack requirements, page 41](#)
- [Processing Unit dimensions, page 151](#)
- [HMI Unit dimensions, page 153](#)
- [Cabling for the rack units, page 65](#)
- [Interface descriptions, page 167](#)

# Surveying sensors on vessels

## Topics

[About sensor survey, page 54](#)

[Vessel coordinate system, page 55](#)

[Surveying the MGC Sensor Unit, page 56](#)

[Surveying the MRU, page 58](#)

[Surveying the GNSS antenna, page 60](#)

[Surveying the external gyro compass, page 62](#)

[Determining the system coordinates, page 62](#)

[Survey accuracy values, page 63](#)

## About sensor survey

In order to achieve the specified accuracy of the Seapath system, the different sensor parts of the system have to be surveyed. The position (coordinates) and/or orientation (mounting angles) of each sensor shall be referred to the vessel coordinate system.

The sensors which are used in this system are:

- The MGC or MRU (position and orientation)
- The GNSS antenna (position and orientation, alternatively two positions)
- The external gyro compass (orientation)

For information and drawings of the MGC or MRU, refer to their respective installation manuals.

**Related topics**

[Entering antenna location parameters, page 94](#)

[Setting MGC location and mounting angles, page 99](#)

[Setting MRU location and mounting angles, page 103](#)

## Vessel coordinate system

The vessel coordinate system is established in order to define the relative physical locations and orientations of systems and sensors. It is a Cartesian coordinate system using three axes: X, Y and Z. X is positive forwards, Y is positive toward starboard and Z is positive downwards.

The coordinate system must be well defined. It is usually established by surveying and documenting coordinates of several points on the vessel. The X axis is in the longitudinal direction of the vessel. The Y axis is in the transverse direction of the vessel. The Z axis is perpendicular to the X and Y axes.

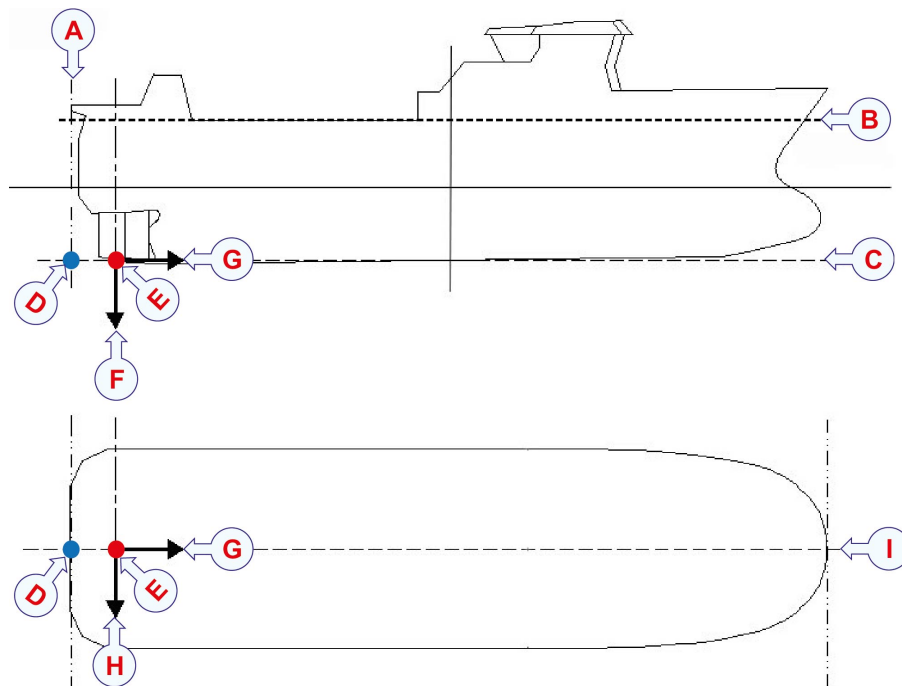
The X and Y axes constitute the reference plane on the vessel. This can be a best-fit plane on the main deck or a best-fit plane through the draught marks on the hull.

When establishing the vessel coordinate system, the origin can be freely chosen. Typical choices for origin are frame 0 at keel level, the vessel's centre of gravity (CG) or the location of the Inertial Measurement Unit. But any convenient point can be used.

In addition to the coordinate system it is useful to have an approximate X, Y and Z offset from the common reference point (CRP) to origin. The common reference point (CRP) is defined to be the intersection between stern, centre line and keel.

The chosen conventions must be made clear to all parties involved. Both to the survey personnel performing the survey and to the users of the survey results. Any deviation from the defined coordinate system should be well described in both text and drawings to avoid common misunderstandings.

The illustration shows the definition of origin on the vessel and positive X, Y and Z axes directions.



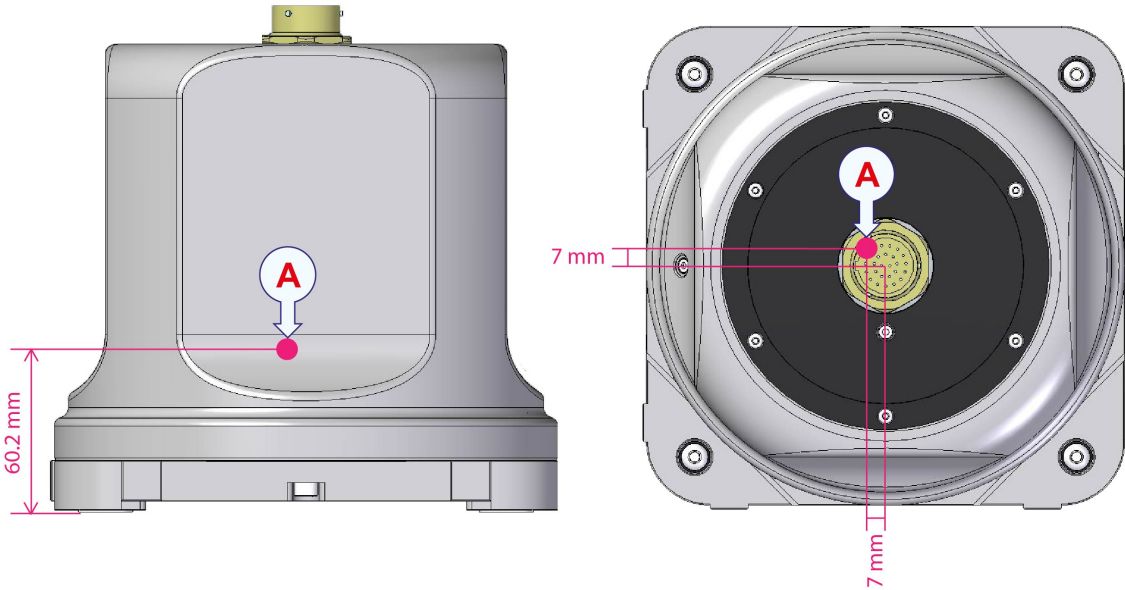
- |          |                                     |          |                         |
|----------|-------------------------------------|----------|-------------------------|
| <b>A</b> | <i>Stern</i>                        | <b>F</b> | <i>+Z axis</i>          |
| <b>B</b> | <i>Main deck</i>                    | <b>G</b> | <i>+X axis</i>          |
| <b>C</b> | <i>Keel</i>                         | <b>H</b> | <i>+Y axis</i>          |
| <b>D</b> | <i>CRP (common reference point)</i> | <b>I</b> | <i>CL (centre line)</i> |
| <b>E</b> | <i>Origin</i>                       |          |                         |

## Surveying the MGC Sensor Unit

For the MGC (Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass) the following should be surveyed.

- The position (X, Y, Z) of the sensor point on the MGC.
- The mounting angles in roll, pitch and yaw (heading).

**Sensor point for the MGC**

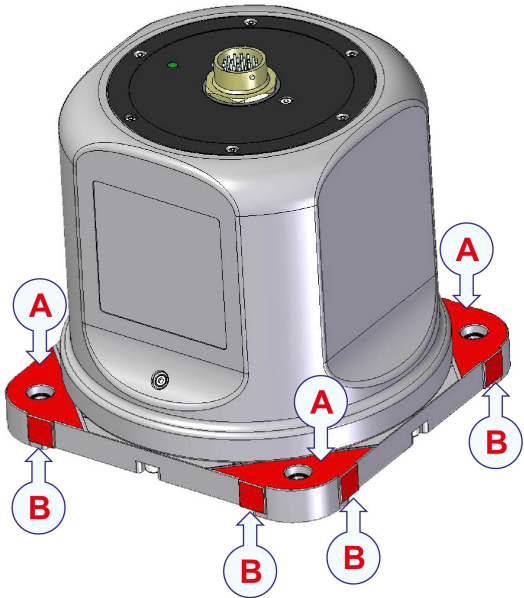


**A** *Sensor point on MGC*

**MGC alignment surfaces**

The MGC bottom plate designed with alignment surfaces where you can place prisms for surveying the offset angles in roll, pitch and heading by use of a theodolite.

The illustration shows the alignment surfaces for roll and pitch alignment and heading alignment.

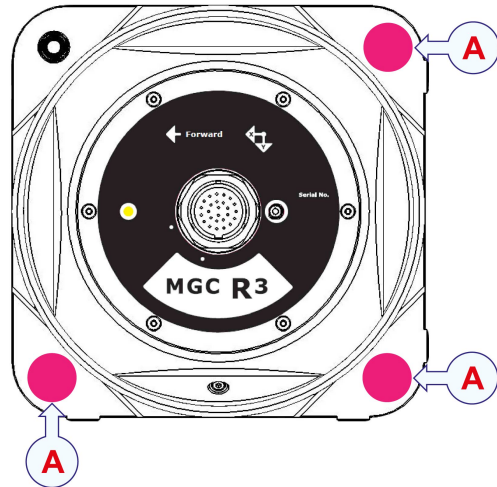


**A** *Alignment surface for roll and pitch*

**B** *Alignment surface for heading*

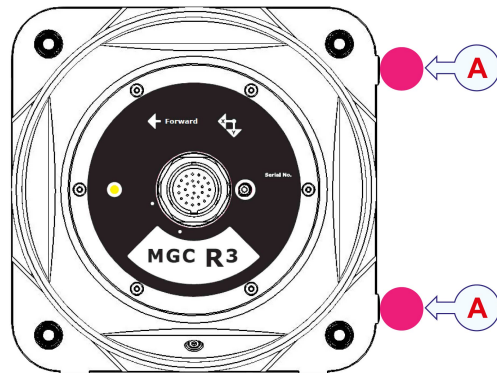
For the roll and pitch alignments, space for prisms is made in three corners of the MGC bottom plate. The surface on these locations is prepared specially to make it flat and aligned (parallel) with the sensors inside the unit.

**A** *Space for prism*



For the heading alignment two sides of the bottom plate has two protruding squared surfaces. Place the prisms against these surfaces when measuring the heading of the MGC towards the vessel axis.

**A** *Space for prism*



**Related topics**

[Survey accuracy values, page 63](#)

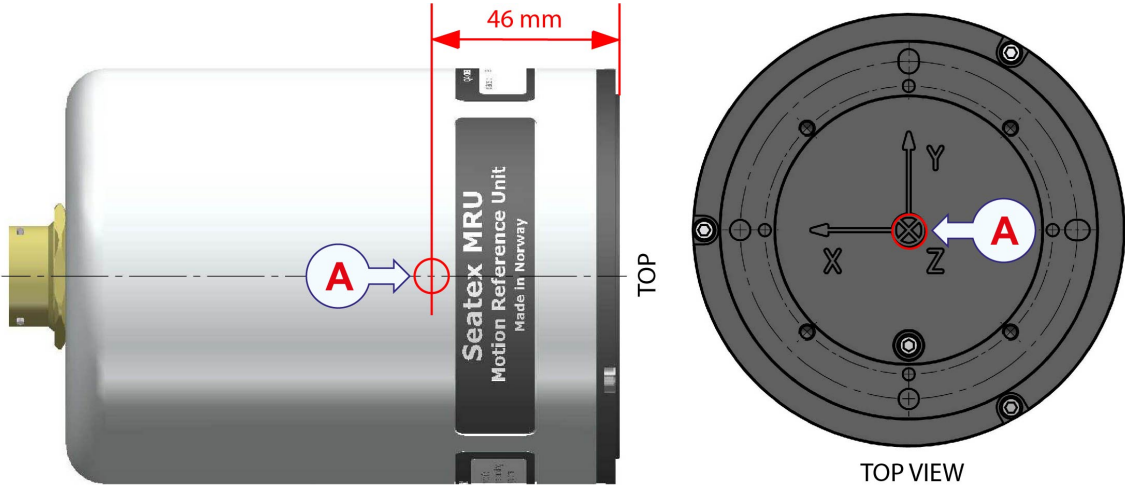
## Surveying the MRU

For the MRU (Motion Reference Unit) the following should be surveyed.

- The position (X, Y, Z) of the sensor point on the MRU.
- The mounting angles in roll, pitch and yaw (heading).

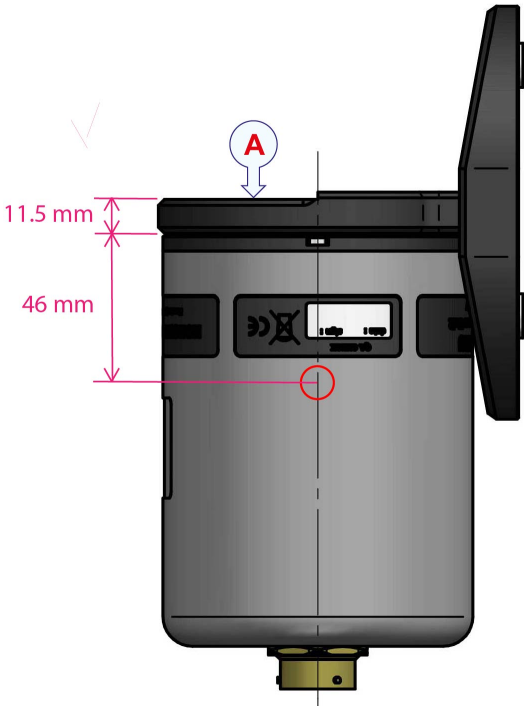


**Sensor point and position for the MRU**



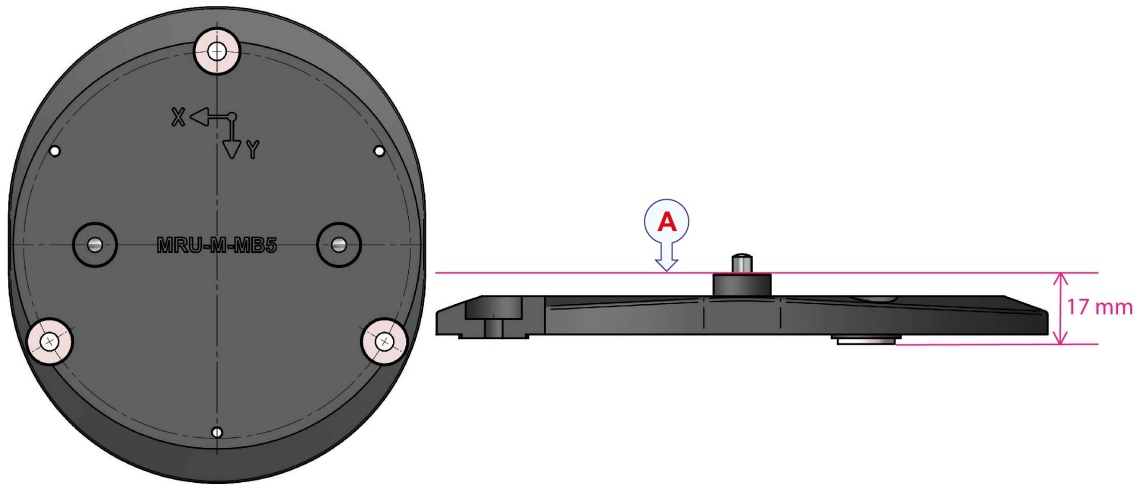
**A** Sensor point and position (0, 0, 0) for all MRU units

**Thickness of MRU wall mounting bracket from alignment surface**



**A** Sensor plane on wall mounting bracket

### Thickness of MRU floor mounting bracket over the deck



**A** Sensor plane on floor mounting bracket

#### Note

---

*The mounting bracket allows for easy replacement with another MRU without affecting the orientation calibration. This is due to the precision of the dowel pins within the bracket. Therefore, when an MRU is replaced with another unit, there is no need for a re-survey of the position and angle if the mounting bracket is in the same location.*

---

#### Related topics

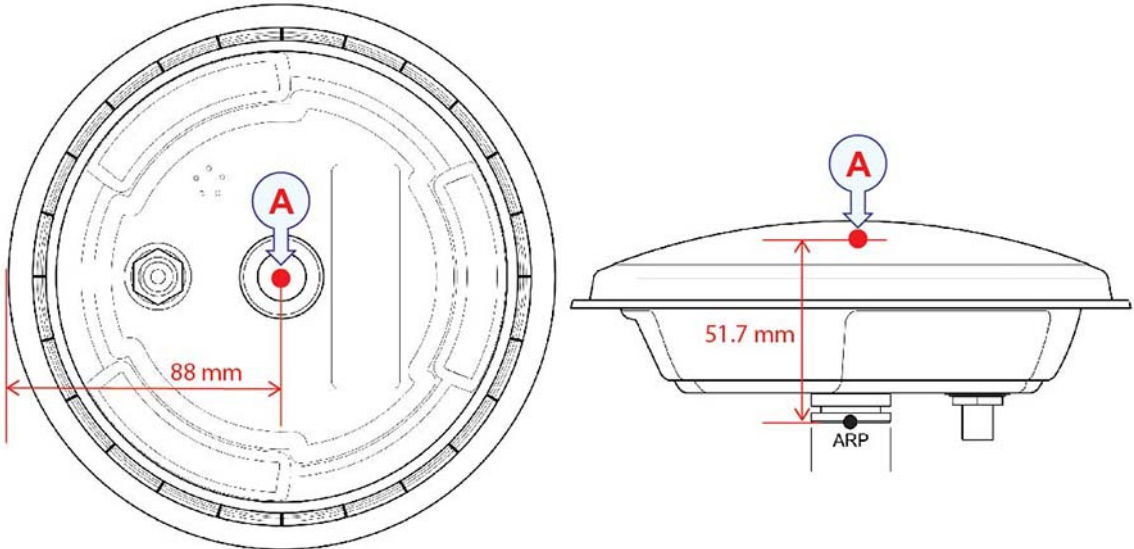
[Survey accuracy values, page 63](#)

## Surveying the GNSS antenna

For the GNSS antenna the following should be surveyed.

- The position (X, Y, Z) of the sensor point on the antenna disc. Antenna #1.
- The angular offset between the line from the phase centre on antenna #1 to the phase centre of antenna #2 and the vessel centre line (CL).

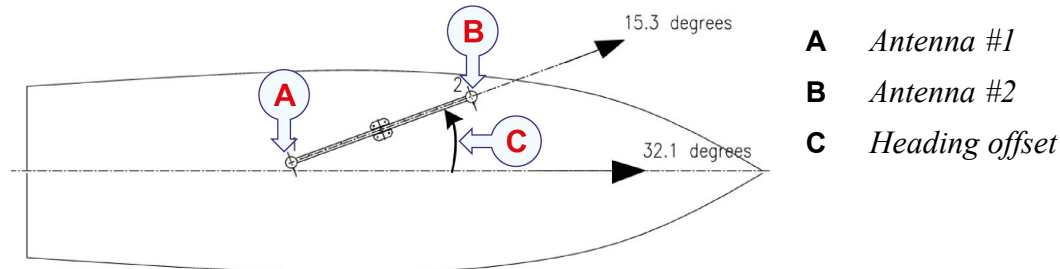
**Sensor point on the antenna**



**A** *Antenna phase centre*

**Heading offset**

The illustration shows a heading offset of 16.8 degrees ( $32.1 - 15.3$ ) between the vessel centre line and the heading. From antenna #1 to antenna #2.



**Note** \_\_\_\_\_  
*The heading offset should be confirmed against the GNSS heading log, typically during gyro calibration.*

**Related topics**

- [Survey accuracy values, page 63](#)
- [Entering antenna location parameters, page 94](#)

## Surveying the external gyro compass

For the external gyro compass the following should be surveyed.

- The offset between the gyro compass heading and the vessel centre line (CL).

Note

---

*The heading offset must be surveyed to an accuracy better than 1°.*

---

Static gyro calibration/verification (heading log) should be done after the gyro system is installed and fully operational. This can be performed in dock or alongside a quay.

Dynamic gyro calibration/verification and attitude control (heading, roll, pitch control) must be performed at sea.

## Determining the system coordinates

The coordinates for the sensor positions, the navigation reference point (NRP) and the monitoring points (MP) relative to origin must be determined and input to the operator software.

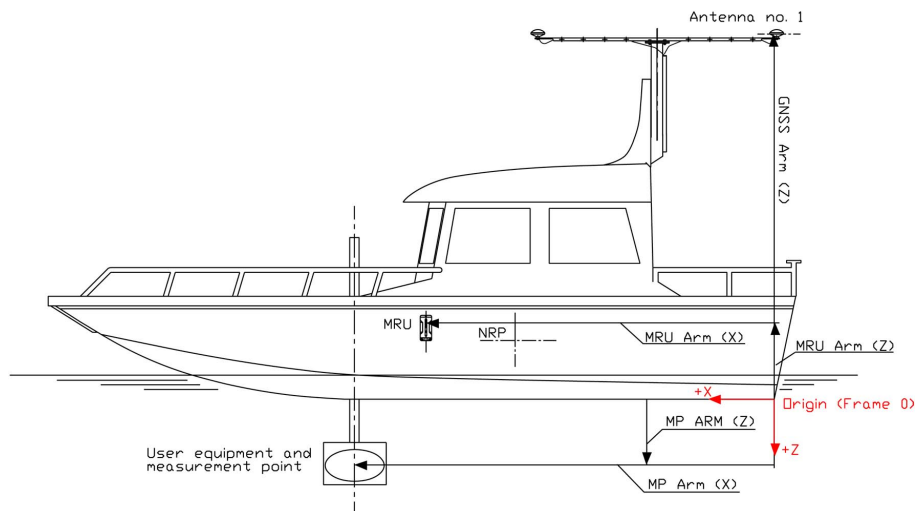
- The distance vector from origin to the GNSS antenna(s). (Coordinates for the GNSS antenna(s).)
- The distance vector from origin to the MGC or MRU location. (Coordinates for the MGC or MRU location.)
- The distance vector from origin to the selected navigation reference point (NRP) location. (Coordinates for the selected NRP location.)
- The distance vector from origin to each of the monitoring points. (Coordinates for each of the monitoring points.) Maximum eight monitoring points (MP) in this system.

All these distance vectors have to be measured or calculated based upon drawings or previously measured points. These coordinates must be measured within a specific accuracy.

Positive directions for these parameters are:

- X – positive forwards
- Y – positive towards starboard
- Z – positive downwards

The illustration shows the coordinates for the different components.



### Related topics

[Survey accuracy values, page 63](#)

[Setting vessel dimensions and reference points, page 91](#)

[Entering antenna location parameters, page 94](#)

[Setting MGC location and mounting angles, page 99](#)

[Setting MRU location and mounting angles, page 103](#)

[Setting monitoring points, page 108](#)

## Survey accuracy values

The system must be surveyed according to the given accuracy level. If not, the performance of the system will be degraded.

### MGC

- The coordinates for the GNSS antenna position (X, Y, Z): < 0.01 metre
- The coordinates for the MGC sensor point (X, Y, Z): < 0.02 metres
- The coordinates for the selected navigation reference point (NRP) location (X, Y, Z): < 0.02 metres
- The coordinates for the user defined monitoring points (MP) (X, Y, Z): < 0.01 metre
- The MGC offset angles (roll, pitch) with the vessel axis: < 0.01°
- The MGC heading offset angle with the vessel axis: < 0.01°

### MRU

- The coordinates for the GNSS antenna position (X, Y, Z): < 0.01 metre
- The coordinates for the MRU sensor point (X, Y, Z): < 0.02 metres
- The coordinates for the selected navigation reference point (NRP) location (X, Y, Z): < 0.02 metres

- The coordinates for the user defined monitoring points (MP) (X, Y, Z): < 0.01 metre
- The MRU 5+ offset angles (roll, pitch) with the vessel axis: < 0.01°
- The MRU 5+ yaw offset angle with the vessel axis: < 0.1°

**Related topics**

[Surveying the MGC Sensor Unit, page 56](#)

[Surveying the MRU, page 58](#)

[Surveying the GNSS antenna, page 60](#)

[Determining the system coordinates, page 62](#)

[Setting MGC location and mounting angles, page 99](#)

[Using Mounting Wizard to determine MGC mounting angles, page 101](#)

[Setting MRU location and mounting angles, page 103](#)

[Using Mounting Wizard to determine MRU mounting angles, page 105](#)

[Setting monitoring points, page 108](#)

[Setting vessel dimensions and reference points, page 91](#)

[Entering antenna location parameters, page 94](#)

# Cable layout and interconnections

## Topics

[Cabling for the rack units, page 65](#)

[Connecting the Seapath with MGC COMPASS, page 68](#)

[Connecting the Seapath with MRU or MGC, page 73](#)

[Wiring diagram, page 77](#)

[Power diagram, page 79](#)

## Cabling for the rack units

The Seapath system relies on communication between each system unit and between the Seapath system and external devices. It is very important that all cables are correctly installed, that the proper cable types have been used, and that all cables are connected correctly.

### Prerequisites

Make sure that you have the cable types recommended for the installation.

### Context

The cables which are attached to the rear of the unit must be long enough for the unit to be pulled out of the rack for service purposes. There must be enough slack of cables be able to pull out the HMI Unit in full length. The minimum cable bends must not be exceeded. For the antenna cables it may be necessary to use a short interconnection cable in order to route the cables properly into the rack. All cables connected to the unit must be screened.

**Note**

*If the antenna cable is attached to the Processing Unit, do not attach the antenna cable to the GNSS antenna with the unit powered on. If the antenna cable is short-circuited with power on, the GNSS receiver within the unit can be damaged.*

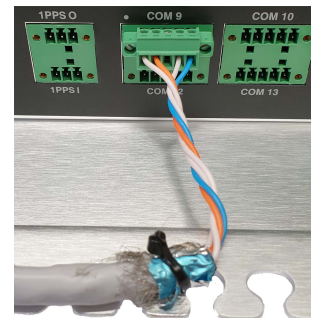
**Note**

*Make sure that the antennas and antenna cables are properly connected to the Processing Unit before you apply power to the Processing Unit. If you connect or disconnect an antenna or antenna cable when the Processing Unit is already powered, this may permanently damage the antenna port on the Processing Unit or the antenna itself.*

*If the antenna is short-circuited with power on, the receiver within the Processing Unit will be damaged.*

**Note**

*Do not place the cable between the tongues on the cable relief at the rear of the unit, but fasten the cable with strips as illustrated.*



**Procedure**

- 1 Connect the cables from the GNSS antennas to the connectors marked GNSS 1 and GNSS 2 at the rear of the Processing Unit.
- 2 Connect the Processing-Unit-to-Junction-box cable to the MRU terminal on the Processing Unit.  
Terminate the cable according to the tables for the Inertial Measurement Unit which you have in your system.
- 3 Run the cable from the MRU terminal on the Processing Unit through one of the free glands on the Junction box.  
Terminate the cable according to the tables for the Inertial Measurement Unit which you have in your system.
- 4 Connect the cables for output data from the Processing Unit to external equipment to the ports COM 1, COM 2 or the terminals COM 9 through COM 14, analog output signals or the Ethernet connections.
  - a Fasten the serial cable to the cable relief bracket with cable strips. This allows the cable to move without breaking away from the plug or connector.



- b Ground the cable shield by fastening the cable shield to the cable relief bracket. Use cable strips. This eliminates the potential for noise inducing ground loops. The cable shield should only be grounded at one end.
  - c Connect the shields for all listener (RX) cables to the talker (TX) chassis only.
- 5 Connect the 100 - 240 VAC vessel power supply to the power connector at the rear of the Processing Unit.
  - 6 Connect the 100 - 240 VAC vessel power supply to the power connector at the rear of the HMI Unit.
  - 7 Connect the cable from the display, the mouse and the keyboard to the corresponding connectors at the rear of the HMI Unit.
  - 8 Connect an Ethernet cable from the LAN1 port at the rear of the Processing Unit and to the LAN1 port on the HMI Unit to the dedicated network switch, or a direct connection between the two LAN1 ports.

### Result

When all the cables are connected, you are ready to turn on the Processing Unit and the HMI Unit. The power switch on the Processing Unit is located behind the lid to the left on the front of the unit. The power switch on the HMI Unit is located at the front of the unit. The left LED indicator on the front panel of the Processing Unit should now become red. When the software is up and running, the left LED indicator on the front panel becomes green. The installation is now complete and you are ready to set up the configuration parameters. This is done through the **NAV Engine** and the **Operator SW** submenus on the **System** menu.

### Related topics

[Mounting the GNSS antennas as stand-alone units, page 43](#)

[Mounting the GNSS antennas on antenna bracket, page 46](#)

[Required system configuration, page 91](#)

[Operator software configuration, page 129](#)

[System units pre-installed in a rack, page 51](#)

[Installing the rack, page 52](#)

[Installing the system units in a rack, page 52](#)

[Terminating the Processing Unit to MGC COMPASS junction box cable, page 68](#)

[Terminating the Processing Unit to MGC/MRU junction box cable, page 73](#)

[Cable specifications, page 162](#)

## Connecting the Seapath with MGC COMPASS

For the physical installation of the MGC COMPASS, refer to the *MGC COMPASS Installation manual*.

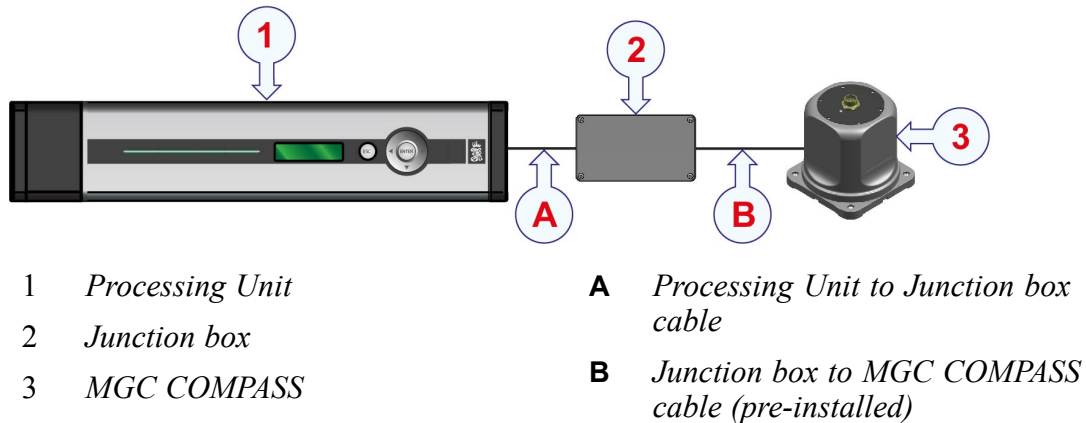
### Terminating the Processing Unit to MGC COMPASS junction box cable

The MGC COMPASS is connected to the Processing Unit via a junction box. The cable between the junction box and the Processing unit is terminated in the junction box in one end and with a 10-pin terminal for the Processing Unit in the other end. The cable is used for power and interface to the MGC COMPASS.

#### Context

When an MGC is connected to a Processing Unit, a junction box is used to make the wiring easier. You must terminate the Processing Unit end of the cable. Then run the cable into the junction box and terminate the other end of the cable into the J10a/J10b terminal (power), the J11a/J11b terminal (Sensor Unit connection) and the J1 terminal (external communication).

The MGC COMPASS is supplied with 24 V DC power from the MRU terminal on the Processing Unit.



**Important**

- The cable between the Processing Unit and the junction box must be shielded in order to fulfil the MGC power and EMC requirements. The cable must be connected to ground in both ends.
- Make sure that the shield around each pair in the cable is individually isolated on the 10-pin terminal on the Processing Unit. The outer shield is connected to pin 3 Screen on this terminal, which is an open end (not connected to earth).
- Insert an isolated wire between pin 3 (GND1) and pin 28 (GND5) on the user side in the J1 terminal in the junction box.



- A** Power connections
- B** Sensor Unit connection
- C** COM ports

**Important**

The cable illustrated in the table *Wiring for cable between Processing Unit and MGC junction box* is for the cable delivered by Kongsberg Discovery AS.

You can also use a regular ship cable.

*Table 1 Power terminal in the Junction Box*

J10a		J10b	
Pin	Signal	Pin	Signal
1	PWR1+	1	PWR2+
2	PWR0-	2	PWR0-

Table 2 Sensor Unit cable connections in the JB7 Junction Box - J11A terminal

J11A terminal				
Pin	Signal		Pair no.	Colour
1	MTX1_A-	RS-422A-, output data from MGC	2b	Orange
2	MTX1_B+	RS-422B+, output data from MGC	2a	White
3	MRX1_A-	RS-422A-, input data to MGC	3b	Green
4	MRX1_B+	RS-422B+, input data to MGC	3a	White
5	MRX2_A-	RS-232, data to MGC	7a	Red
6	MRX2_B+		14a	Black
7	MTX2_A-	RS-232, data from MGC	7b	Orange
8	MTX2_B+		14b	Brown
9	MRX3_A-	RS-422A- or RS-232, input to MGC	8a	Red
10	MRX3_B+	RS-422B+ or RS-232, return to MGC	8b	Green
11	MRX4_A-	RS-422A- or RS-232, input to MGC	9a	Red
12	MRX4_B+	RS-422B+ or RS-232, return to MGC	9b	Brown
13	DISP0	Internal control	12a	Black
14	DISP1	Internal control	12b	Orange

Table 3 Sensor Unit cable connections in the JB7 Junction Box - J11B terminal

J11B terminal				
Pin	Signal		Pair no.	Colour
1	PWR-	Power supply (0 V)	1b	Blue
2	PWR+	Power supply (+24 V)	1a	White
3	RJ-1	TD+, Ethernet	4a	White
4	RJ-2	TD-, Ethernet	4b	Brown
5	RJ-3	RD+, Ethernet	6a	Red
6	RJ-6	RD-, Ethernet	6b	Blue
7	Alert	MGC alert	5a	White
8	GND	MGC ground	5b	Grey
9	XIN	Signal to MGC	10b	Grey
10	CGND	Communication ground	10a	Red
11	EOUT	Signal from MGC, 5 Volt level	11b	Blue
12	XOUT	Signal from MGC, 5 Volt level	11a	Black
13	DISP2	Internal control	13a	Black
14	VDD	5 Volt out, max. 20 mA	13b	Green

Table 4 J1 terminal in the JB7 Junction Box

J1 terminal					
Pin	Signal		Pin	Signal	
1	TX1_B+	COM1, RS-422 output	16	TX4_B+	COM4, RS-422 output
2	TX1_A-	COM1, RS-422 output	17	TX4_A-	COM4, RS-422 output
3	GND1	COM1, signal ground	18	GND4	COM4, signal ground
4	RX1_B+	COM1, RS-422 input	19	RX4_B+	COM4, RS-422 input
5	RX1_A-	COM1, RS-422 input	20	RX4_A-	COM4, RS-422 input
6	TX2_B+	COM2, RS-422 output	21	TX5_B+	COM5, RS-422 output
7	TX2_A-	COM2, RS-422 output	22	TX5_A-	COM5, RS-422 output
8	GND2	COM2, signal ground	23	GND5	COM5, signal ground
9	RX2_B+	COM2, RS-422 input	24	RX5_B+	COM5, RS-422 input
10	RX2A-	COM2, RS-422 input	25	RX5_A-	COM5, RS-422 input
11	TX3_B+	COM3, RS-422 output	26	TXP_B+	COMP, RS-422 output
12	TX3_A-	COM3, RS-422 output	27	TXP_A-	COMP, RS-422 output
13	GND3	COM3, signal ground	28	GND5	COM5, signal ground
14	RX3_B+	COM3, RS-422 input	29	PPS_B+	PPS input
15	RX3_A-	COM3, RS-422 input	30	PPS_A-	PPS input

Table 5 MRU terminal at the rear of the Processing Unit

Pin no.	Signal description
1	GND
2	LGND
3	NC
4	MRU_1PPS_N
5	MRU_1PPS_P
6	TX_B
7	TX_A
8	RX_B
9	RX_A
10	24V_MRU

*Table 6 Wiring for cable between Processing Unit and MGC Junction Box*

Processing Unit/MGC	Signal	Pair	MGC Junction Box	Sensor Unit connector
Pin		Pin	Pin	Pin
3	NC	Screen		
10	24V_MRU	1	1 (J10a or b)	R
1	GND	1	2 (J10a or b)	B
8	MRU_RX_B	2	1 (J1)	C
9	MRU_RX_A	2	2 (J1)	T
6	MRU_TX_B	3	4 (J1)	S
7	MRU_TX_A	3	5 (J1)	P
4	MRU_1PPS_N (PPS_B+)	4	29 (J1)	
5	MRU_1PPS_P (PPS_A-)	4	30 (J1)	

**Procedure**

- 1 Connect the connector on the Sensor Unit cable into the connector at the top of the Sensor Unit.
- 2 Terminate the wires at the other end of the Sensor Unit cable into the J11a and J11b terminals.
- 3 Terminate the power wires in the cable from the Processing Unit into the J10a and J10b terminals.
- 4 Terminate the signal wires in the cable from the Processing Unit to COM1, pin 1 to 5, into the J1 terminal.
- 5 Terminate the wires for PPS input in the cable from the Processing Unit to pin 29 and 30 into the J1 terminal.
- 6 Connect the cables for output data from Seapath to external equipment to the COM1 or COM2 ports or to the COM9 to COM14 terminals on the Processing Unit.

**Related topics**

[Cabling for the rack units, page 65](#)

[Cable specifications, page 162](#)

## Connecting the Seapath with MRU or MGC

For the physical installation of the MGC or MRU, refer to their respective installation manuals.

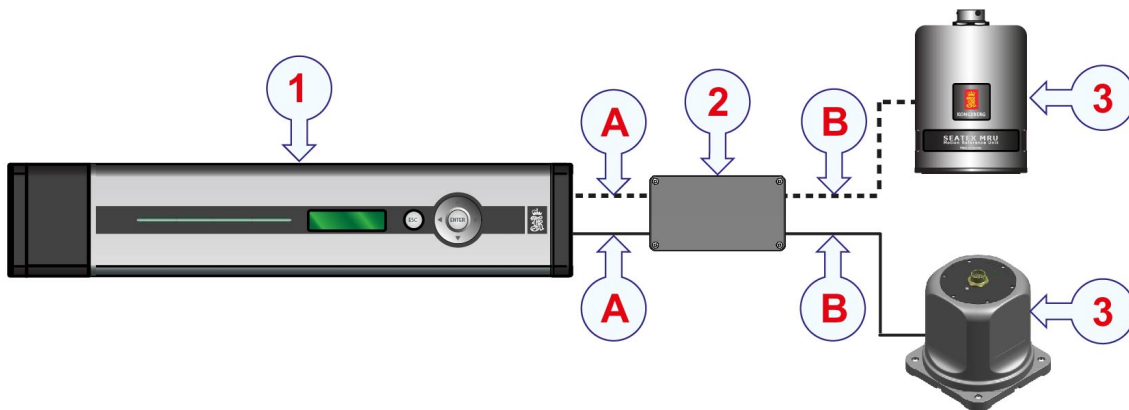
### Terminating the Processing Unit to MGC/MRU junction box cable

The Inertial Measurement Unit (MGC or MRU) is connected to the Processing Unit via a junction box. The cable between the junction box and the Processing unit is terminated in the junction box in one end and with a 10-pin terminal for the Processing Unit in the other end. The cable is used for power and interface to the MGC or MRU. The cable from the junction box to the MGC/MRU is pre-terminated in the junction box with a connector in the other end.

#### Context

When an MGC or MRU is connected to a Processing Unit, a junction box is used to make the wiring easier. You must terminate the Processing Unit end of the cable. Then run the cable through one of the free glands on the junction box and terminate the other end of the cable to the P2 terminal (user external interfaces and power) and P3 terminal (earth).

The MGC/MRU is supplied with 24 V DC power from the MRU terminal on the Processing Unit.



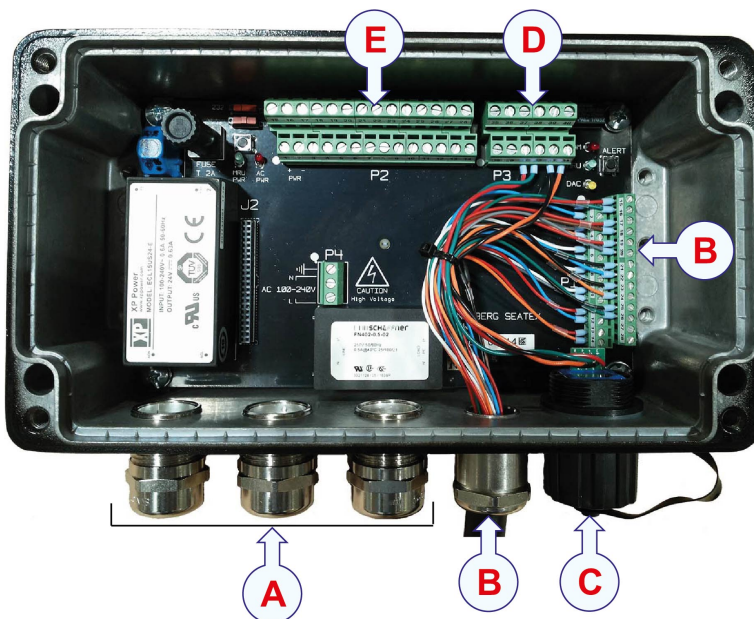
- 1 *Processing Unit*
- 2 *Junction box*
- 3 *MGC/MRU*

- A *Processing Unit to Junction box cable*
- B *Junction box to MGC or MRU cable (pre-installed)*

**Important**

---

- Make sure that the cable shield is in contact with the gland for grounding before the cable is fastened to the box. Use the required number of clips to fasten the cable to the wall.
  - Make sure that the shield around each pair in the cable is individually isolated on the 10-pin terminal on the Processing Unit.
  - Make sure that the outer shield is connected to pin 3 (screen) on the 10-pin MRU terminal, which is an open end (not connected to earth).
  - The junction box housing is grounded to earth through the screws used for mounting the box to the wall or floor. If the surface on which the junction box is mounted is NOT connected to earth, one of the junction box mounting screws must be connected to earth by connecting a wire from the screw to an object which is connected to earth.
  - Fill the cable glands which are not used with self-bounding tape. Press the self-bounding tape together as a ball and fill it into the gland. Tighten the gland properly afterwards to ensure that it is watertight. This is in order to fulfil the enclosure protection specification.
- 



- A** *User configurable external interfaces are COM 2 and Ethernet*
- B** *Cable to Inertial Measurement Unit, MGC or MRU (default pre-installed)*
- C** *Ethernet cable*
- D** *Relay and earth shield, P3*
- E** *Termination of user external interfaces, P2*



Table 7 P2 terminal in the JB3 junction box (external interface)

Pin no.	Signal description
1	PWR+ (Power+)
2	PWR- (Power-)
3	Com1_Out_B
4	Com1_Out_A
5	Com1_In_B
6	Com1_In_A
23	XIN (to MGC/MRU)
24	CGND

Table 8 P3 terminal in the JB3 junction box (earth)

Pin no.	Signal description
40 (CHASSIS)	Earth

Table 9 MRU terminal at the rear of the Processing Unit

Pin no.	Signal description
1	GND
2	LGND
3	NC
4	MRU_1PPS_N
5	MRU_1PPS_P
6	TX_B
7	TX_A
8	RX_B
9	RX_A
10	24V_MRU

Table 10 Wiring for cable between Processing Unit and MGC/MRU JB3 junction box

Pin no. Processing Unit (MRU terminal)	Colour	Pin no. Junction Box
3	Screen	Chassis (P3)
10	1 White	1 (P2)
1	1 Blue	2 (P2)
8	2 White	3 (P2)

Pin no. Processing Unit (MRU terminal)	Colour	Pin no. Junction Box
9	2 Blue	4 (P2)
6	3 White	5 (P2)
7	3 Blue	6 (P2)
5	4 White	23 (P2)
2	4 Blue	24 (P2)

### Important

---

The cable illustrated in the table *Wiring for cable between Processing Unit and MGC/MRU JB3 junction box* is for the cable delivered by Kongsberg Discovery AS.

You can also use a regular ship cable.

---

### Procedure

- 1 Terminate the 10-pin MRU terminal at the rear of the Processing Unit according to the table *Wiring for cable between Processing Unit and MGC/MRU JB3 junction box*.
- 2 Enter the other end of the cable through one of the free cable glands on the junction box.
- 3 Terminate the P2 and P3 terminal in the junction box according to the table *Wiring for cable between Processing Unit and MGC/MRU JB3 junction box*.
- 4 Seal the cable glands which are not used.

### Related topics

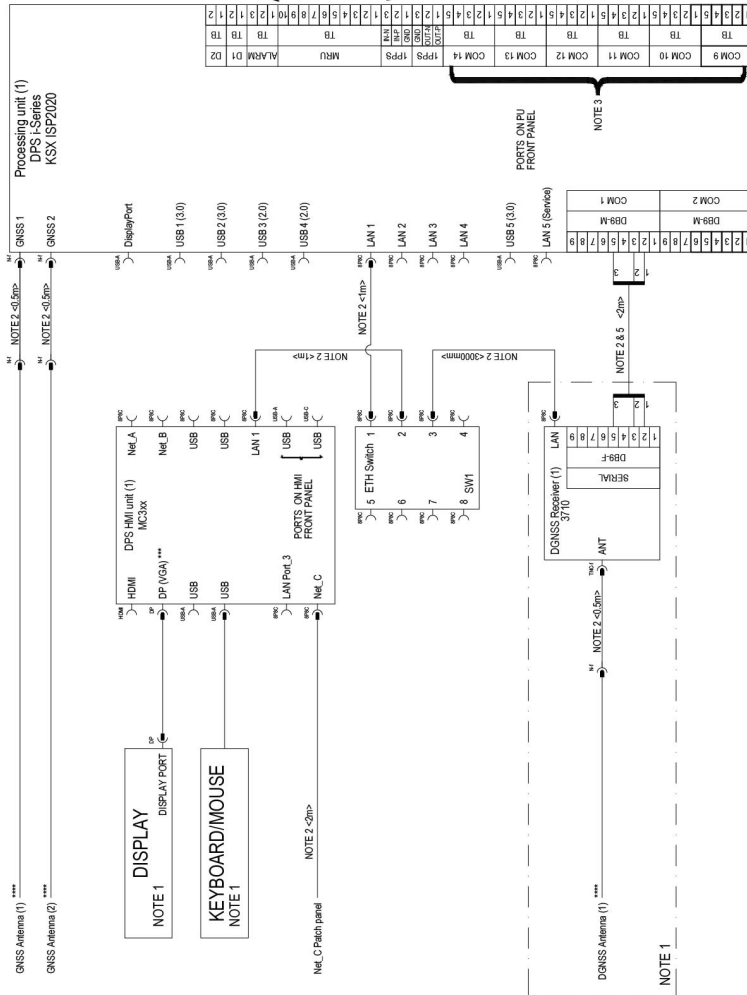
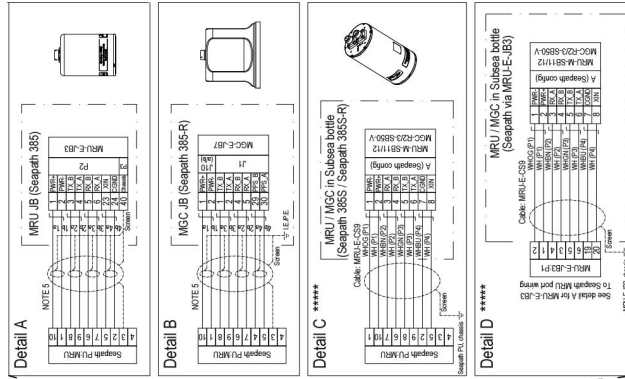
[Cabling for the rack units, page 65](#)

[Cable specifications, page 162](#)

# Wiring diagram

IMU required on MRU interface. Ref. applicable detail view for correct wire termination.

- Detail A: Seapath 385 (MRU)
- Detail B: Seapath 385-R (MGC)
- Detail C/D: Seapath 385S/385S-R (MRU/MGC in subsea bottle)



**COM 9-14 Pinout (ISP2020)**

PIN REF	RS-422	RS-232
1	RX_B	CTS
2	RX_A	RX
3	GND	GND
4	TX_B	RTS
5	TX_A	TX

**MRU port pinout (ISP2020)**

pin no.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
signal	GND	LGND	NC	1PPS_N	1PPS_P	TX_B	TX_A	RX_B	RX_A	24V

Information may be omitted. Observe the source drawing for additional details.

[110-0058922] Rev.B  
AI

**Notes:**

- 1) Item must be ordered separately
- 2) Item included in respective product/accessory option
- 3) External COM ports, user configurable
- 5) Primary DGNS receiver shall be interfaced by serial line (COM1), additional receivers may be interfaced by Ethernet connection.

Where MGC/MRU is powered from UPS (typical), "24V" and "GND" wires shall not be used for connection between Seapath and MGC/MRU.

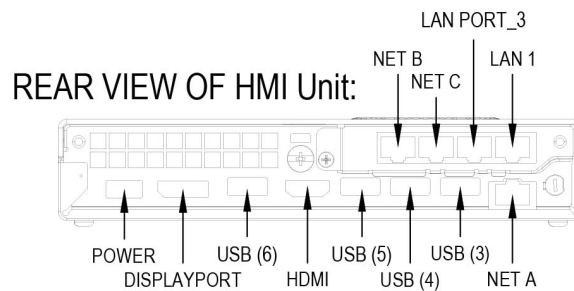
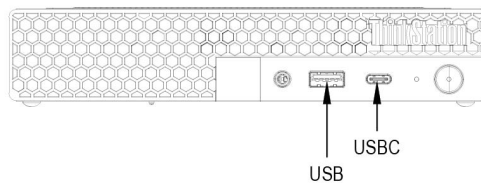
**Markings:**

All connectors, cables & components should be marked in accordance with marking & labelling specification 161013.

\*\*\*\*) Installation specific cable not included in cable kit.

DisplayPort (DP++) to VGA adapter included for connection to legacy monitors.

## FRONT VIEW OF HMI Unit:



Information may be omitted. Observe the source drawing for additional details.

[110-0058922] Rev.B  
AI



# Setting to work

## Topics

[Setting to work summary, page 80](#)

[Turning on the Seapath system, page 81](#)

[LED indicators Processing Unit, page 82](#)

[LED indicators HMI Unit, page 83](#)

[How the configuration of the system works, page 84](#)

[Required system configuration, page 91](#)

[Additional system configuration, page 116](#)

[Operator software configuration, page 129](#)

[Creating a backup of the configuration and software installation, page 136](#)

[Restoring the configuration backup, page 137](#)

[Seapath operator software on external computer, page 139](#)

## Setting to work summary

When all hardware units have been installed, and all the cables have been connected, the Seapath system can be turned on and set to work.

### Prerequisites

- All system units have been installed.
- All system cables are connected.
- All cable connections are made.
- Correct operating power is available. The system operates on 100 - 240 VAC from the vessel's mains power supply.

- All external devices which shall communicate with the Seapath are available and operational.
- All relevant personnel and tools are available.

**Procedure**

- 1 Verify that all hardware and cable installation have been made correctly.
- 2 Turn on the Processing Unit by pressing the power switch located under the lid at the front of the unit.
- 3 Turn on the HMI Unit.
- 4 Turn on the display.
- 5 Set up the Seapath system for operational use.  
The Seapath operator software is pre-installed on the HMI Unit.
- 6 Set up interfaces to external devices.
- 7 Create a backup with the system configuration and software installation.
- 8 Verify that the Seapath system is operational.

**Related topics**

[Turning on the Seapath system, page 81](#)

[LED indicators Processing Unit, page 82](#)

[LED indicators HMI Unit, page 83](#)

[Mounting the GNSS antennas as stand-alone units, page 43](#)

[Mounting the GNSS antennas on antenna bracket, page 46](#)

[Installing the Seapath units, page 51](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 65](#)

[How the configuration of the system works, page 84](#)

[Required system configuration, page 91](#)

## Turning on the Seapath system

When you have verified that all hardware units and cables have been properly installed, and that the supply power is correct, you can turn on the Seapath system for the first time.

**Context**

The software is pre-installed and the system will start automatically after it has been turned on.

**Procedure**

- 1 Make sure that the serial connections, the network cable(s), the antenna cable(s) and the power cable(s) are connected.

- 2 Turn on the Processing Unit by pressing the power switch located under the lid at the front of the unit.
- 3 Turn on the HMI Unit.
- 4 Turn on the display.
- 5 Observe that the Power/SW LED on the Processing Unit is red during the initialization phase.

When the Power/SW LED on the Processing Unit turns green, the units are running.

### Result

The system is now ready for configuration.

### Related topics

[LED indicators Processing Unit, page 82](#)

[LED indicators HMI Unit, page 83](#)

## LED indicators Processing Unit

At the front of the Processing Unit there are four LED indicators (Light Emitting Diode). These LEDs show the Processing Unit status at any time.



- A** *Power/SW LED*
- B** *Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) LED*
- C** *System health LED*
- D** *Network card LED*

### Power/SW LED

This LED indicates power and software status.

- During start-up the LED is red.
- When the software is up and running, it turns green.

### Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) LED

The LED indicates the status of the Inertial Measurement Unit (MGC or MRU).

- The LED is green when there is contact with the Inertial Measurement Unit (MGC or MRU) and PPS and data are OK.



- The LED is yellow when there is contact with the MGC or MRU but PPS or data are missing.
- The LED is red when there is no contact with the Inertial Measurement Unit (MGC or MRU).

### **System health LED**

- The LED is normally off. Other states indicate internal error.

### **Network card LED**

This LED indicates the status of the four network cards.

- The LED is green when all four network cards are OK.
- The LED is red if there is an error on one or more of the network cards.

### **Related topics**

[Turning on the Seapath system, page 81](#)

## **LED indicators HMI Unit**

The HMI Unit does not have any LEDs which show the status of the unit. The LED on the on/off button turns white when the unit is turned on.



### **Related topics**

[Turning on the Seapath system, page 81](#)

## How the configuration of the system works

### Topics

- [Entering the system configuration, page 84](#)
- [NAV Engine Configuration description, page 84](#)
- [Operator software configuration description, page 85](#)
- [Changing system modes, page 86](#)
- [Communication interface description, page 87](#)
- [Using the Serial interface, page 89](#)
- [Using the Ethernet interface, page 90](#)

### Entering the system configuration

The setup parameters are available from:

- The **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** for system setup.
- The **System** menu > **Operator SW** for display views setup.

To be able to make changes to the setup you must be in *Configuration* mode for standard configuration tasks or *Engineering* mode for advanced configuration and diagnostic tasks.

#### Note

---

*Advanced NAV Engine configuration is for service personnel only.*

---

### NAV Engine Configuration description

You can set up the system parameters from the **NAV Engine Configuration** dialog box.

The dialog box consists of a list of configuration options, a parameter settings section, an exit button and three buttons which each has different properties with regard to configuration changes.

#### Apply

Select **Apply** to apply the configuration changes to the system. This button is disabled until you have made changes to the configuration. The button will be disabled when there are no changes to apply.

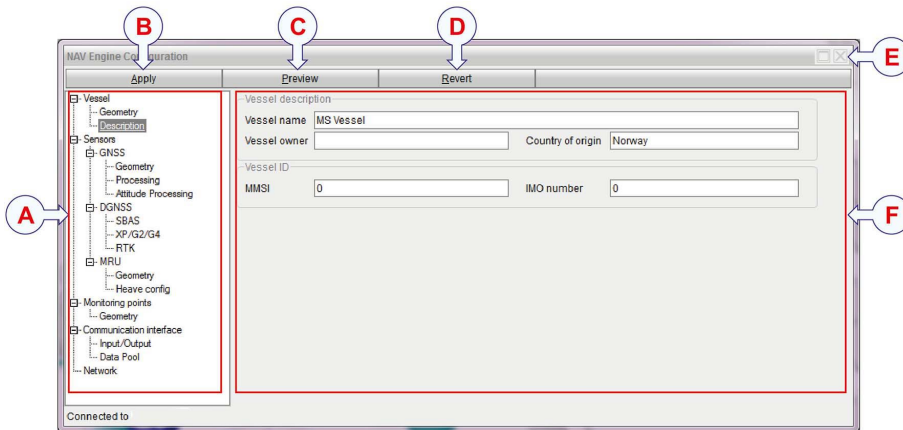
#### Preview

Select **Preview** to see which parameters have changed since the configuration was loaded. Changed settings are highlighted in bold face. This button is disabled until you have made any changes to the configuration.

Please note that monitoring point changes are displayed in the coordinate system in which they are actually stored by the configuration. For example related to the navigation reference point rather than origin.

## Revert

Select **Revert** to reject all changes you made since the configuration was loaded. The button is disabled until changes have been made.



- A *Configuration options list*
- B *Apply confirmation changes button*
- C *Preview last configuration settings button*
- D *Revert to previous settings button*
- E *Exit NAV Engine Configuration*
- F *Parameter settings section*

## Operator software configuration description

You can adjust the appearance of the display views through the **Operator software configuration** dialog box.

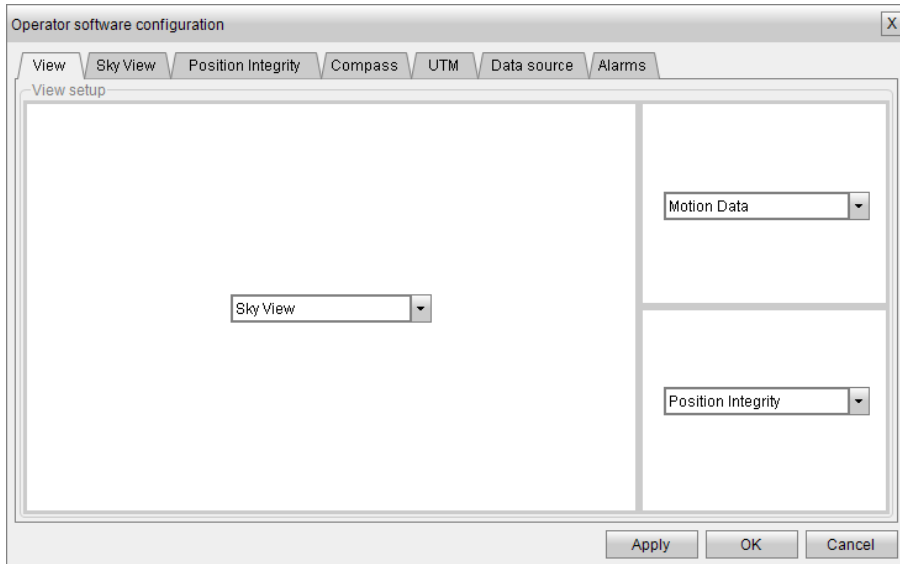
The dialog box contains tab pages for various presentation options. Each page contains two confirmation buttons with different properties and a cancel button.

- **OK button:** Selecting the **OK** button will save the changes and close the **Operator software configuration** dialog box.
- **Apply button:** Selecting the **Apply** button will save the changes but the dialog box will not close.
- **Cancel button:** Selecting the **Cancel** button will close the **Operator software configuration** dialog box and changes will not be saved.

**Note**

*The position properties selected in the **Operator software configuration** dialog box are only for display purposes.*

---



## Changing system modes

The system has three modes: *Operation*, *Configuration* and *Engineering*. To be able to make changes to the setup you must be in *Configuration* or *Engineering* mode.

### Context

The *Configuration* or *Engineering* modes are password protected. The password is **STX**. The password is not case sensitive. It is not possible to change the password.

<input type="radio"/>	Operation	
<input type="radio"/>	Configuration	Ctrl+E
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Engineering	Ctrl+A

You can change the system mode via the **System** menu or using key commands directly from the display.

### Procedure

- 1 **Via System menu**
  - a Select the **System** menu > **Change system mode**.
  - b Select either **Configuration** or **Engineering**.
  - c Type the password: **stx**.
  - d Select **OK**.
- 2 **With keyboard commands**

- a In the display:
  - Press **CTRL+E** to enter *Configuration* mode
  - Press **CTRL+A** to enter *Engineering* mode
- b Type the password: **stx**.
- c Select **OK**.

## Result

You are now able to carry out changes and/or set system parameters.

## Communication interface description

You must set up the communication interfaces for the system to be able to communicate with and interface to other systems and equipment.

### Context

The communication interfaces are set in **NAV Engine Configuration** under **Communication > Input/Output**. The **Input/Output list** shows all input and output ports which are available in the system. When you select an **Interface** in the **Input/Output list**, the **Configuration details** part for that particular interface will appear in the lower part of the page. These details will change based on the interface type you have selected, Serial or Ethernet. You must select either **Serial** or **Ethernet** for all available interfaces before you select the specific parameters for a particular interface.

Select the arrow next to the group headings to show or hide the information.

To be able to get a properly working system you must set up these communication interfaces:

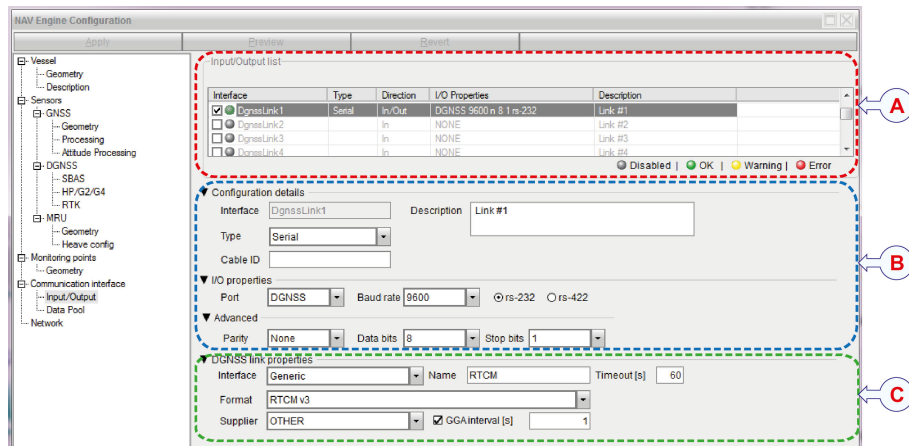
- MGC/MRU
- Telegram out

### Note

---

*You are not able to configure the GnssReceiver interface and the MRU interface.*

---



- A** Selected interface in Input/Output list
- B** Type of interface selection: Serial or Ethernet
- C** Specific configuration details for the selected interface

This procedure sums up the steps you have to go through to set up the communication interfaces for the system.

**Procedure**

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **NAVEngine** > **Standard**.
- 2 Select **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.
- 3 Select the interface you want to set up in the **Input/Output list**.  
Observe that the **Configuration details** parameters appear at the lower part of the page.
- 4 Select which type of interface you want to use from the **Type** list: Serial or Ethernet.
- 5 Select the wanted I/O parameters. These will vary depending on the type of interface you selected.
- 6 Select the specific parameters you want for the interface you selected.
- 7 Select **Apply** to save your settings without closing the dialog box.

**Related topics**

- [Setting up input to and from the MGC, page 112](#)
- [Setting up input to and from the MRU, page 113](#)
- [Setting up the Telegram out interface, page 113](#)
- [Selecting heading input format from a gyro compass, page 121](#)
- [Setting up the DGNSS correction link parameters, page 123](#)
- [Enabling and/or disabling use of GNSS link, page 124](#)

## Using the Serial interface

The Serial interface allows you to decide how the Processing Unit shall communicate with and interface to other equipment.

### Context

If you have decided to use a Serial interface, you must set up the port number, the baud rate and select RS-232 or RS-422 mode.

### Procedure

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **NAVEngine** > **Standard**.
- 2 Select **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.
- 3 Select the interface you want to set up in the **Input/Output list**.  
Observe that the **Configuration details** parameters appear at the lower part of the page.
- 4 Select **Serial** in the **Type** list.
- 5 Type an informative text about the interface in the **Description** box. This is optional.
- 6 Type a short identification text for the cables connected to the Processing Unit in the **Cable ID** box This is optional.
- 7 Select which port to use from the **Port** list.  
The serial port number corresponds with the number on the Processing Unit.
- 8 Select which baud rate you want to use from the **Baud rate** list.  
Maximum baud rate is 115200 bits/second.
- 9 Depending on which port you selected, select if you want to use RS-232 or RS-422 for the electrical interface.
- 10 Select the properties for the interface you selected in the **Input/Output list**.

### Result

You are now ready to set the specific parameters for the interface you have selected. See separate sections for selection details.

### Related topics

- [Setting up input to and from the MGC, page 112](#)
- [Setting up input to and from the MRU, page 113](#)
- [Setting up the Telegram out interface, page 113](#)
- [Selecting heading input format from a gyro compass, page 121](#)
- [Setting up the DGNSS correction link parameters, page 123](#)
- [Enabling and/or disabling use of GNSS link, page 124](#)
- [Communication interface - Serial or Ethernet, page 224](#)

## Using the Ethernet interface

The Ethernet interface allows you to decide how the Processing Unit shall communicate via the internet protocol (IP) network.

### Context

Broadcasting is a method of transferring a message to all recipients simultaneously. Unicast transmission is the sending of messages to a single network destination identified by a unique address. Multicast (one-to-many or many-to-many distribution) is group communication where information is addressed to a group of destination computers simultaneously.

### Procedure

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **NAVEngine** > **Standard**.
- 2 Select **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.
- 3 Select the interface you want to set up in the **Input/Output list**.  
Observe that the **Configuration details** parameters appear at the lower part of the page.
- 4 Select **Ethernet** in the **Type** list.
- 5 Type a short identification text for the cables connected to the Processing Unit in the **Cable ID** box This is optional.
- 6 Select the wanted connection type: Broadcast, Unicast or Multicast.
  - **Local interface**: The LAN port on the Processing Unit.
  - **Local port**: When receiving, this is the port on which the unit listens.
  - **Remote port**: When transmitting, this is the port to which the unit sends.
  - **IP address Unicast**: The target IP address, to which the unit is receiving or sending.
  - **IP address Multicast**: The multicast group address. Recommended range: 239.255.000.000 to 239.255.255.255.

### Note

---

*It is recommended to use the same port number for both Local and Remote ports.*

---

- 7 Depending on the connection type you have selected, select which local interface you want to use from the **Local interface** list.
- 8 Select the properties for the interface you selected in the **Input/Output list**.

### Result

You are now ready to set the specific parameters for the interface you have selected. See separate sections for selection details.



**Related topics**

- [Setting up input to and from the MGC, page 112](#)
- [Setting up input to and from the MRU, page 113](#)
- [Setting up the Telegram out interface, page 113](#)
- [Selecting heading input format from a gyro compass, page 121](#)
- [Setting up the DGNSS correction link parameters, page 123](#)
- [Enabling and/or disabling use of GNSS link, page 124](#)
- [Communication interface - Serial or Ethernet, page 224](#)

## Required system configuration

**Topics**

- [Setting vessel dimensions and reference points, page 91](#)
- [Entering antenna location parameters, page 94](#)
- [Setting MGC location and mounting angles, page 99](#)
- [Using Mounting Wizard to determine MGC mounting angles, page 101](#)
- [Setting MRU location and mounting angles, page 103](#)
- [Using Mounting Wizard to determine MRU mounting angles, page 105](#)
- [Selecting heave filter options, page 107](#)
- [Setting monitoring points, page 108](#)
- [Setting up input to and from the MGC, page 112](#)
- [Setting up input to and from the MRU, page 113](#)
- [Setting up the Telegram out interface, page 113](#)

### Setting vessel dimensions and reference points

You must define the dimensions and the reference points for the vessel which hosts the Seapath system and the origin of the vessel coordinate system.

**Prerequisites**

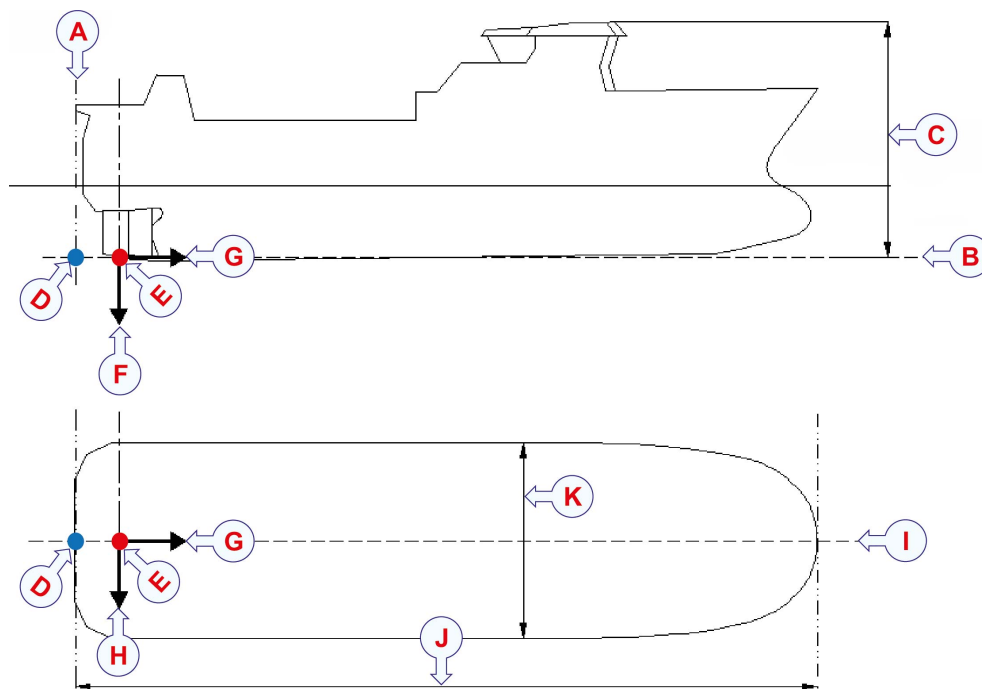
The navigation reference points you type here must be measured or defined before you start the configuration process.

**Context**

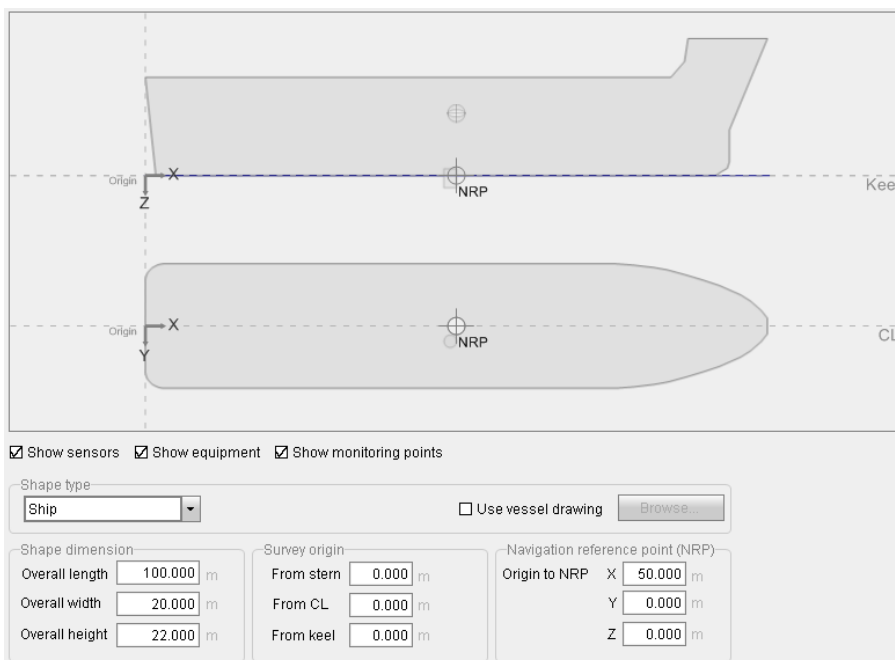
This is information you need in order to specify correct location of various sensors, equipment and monitoring points on a vessel. The information you enter here will help you later in the configuration process. The drawing is correctly scaled based on the

vessel dimensions to make sure that the various points are correctly indicated. The measurement unit of the entered coordinates is metres.

The illustration shows different vessel dimensions and location of origin. If a survey report is available, the vessel origin should be located in the common reference point (CRP) used in the report.



- |                                       |                           |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>A</b> Stern                        | <b>G</b> +X axis          |
| <b>B</b> Keel                         | <b>H</b> +Y axis          |
| <b>C</b> Overall height               | <b>I</b> CL (centre line) |
| <b>D</b> CRP (common reference point) | <b>J</b> Overall length   |
| <b>E</b> Origin                       | <b>K</b> Overall width    |
| <b>F</b> +Z axis                      |                           |



## Procedure

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **NAVEngine** > **Standard**.
- 2 Select **Vessel** > **Geometry**.
- 3 Select the shape of your vessel from the **Shape type** list or select **Use vessel drawing** if you have a specific vessel shape file you want to use. Select the **Browse** button to search for the wanted file.  
If you select **Use vessel drawing**, the **Shape dimension** parameters will be locked.
- 4 Type the overall length, width and height dimensions of your vessel.
- 5 Type the parameters for location of origin (survey origin).
- 6 Type the navigation reference point location, X, Y, Z.
- 7 Select **Show sensors**, **Show equipment** and/or **Show monitoring points** if you want to display these objects in the vessel illustration.
- 8 Select **Apply** to save your settings without closing the dialog box.

## Related topics

- [Determining the system coordinates, page 62](#)
- [Survey accuracy values, page 63](#)
- [Vessel Geometry page, page 208](#)
- [Importing vessel shape from file, page 117](#)
- [Entering antenna location parameters, page 94](#)

## Entering antenna location parameters

The antenna position is a critical parameter in the system. It is used for Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) integration and calculation of monitoring points and heading.

### Prerequisites

The distance vector from the origin to the GNSS antenna #1 has to be measured before you can enter the parameters into the configuration.

### Context

You can either drag and place the antenna symbol in the vessel illustration or you can enter the parameters directly into the table.

### Important

---

If you move the antenna after the system has been installed and configured, you must update the distance vector measurements and re-configure the antenna location. This must be done both for the Seapath system and for the connected DP (dynamic positioning) system.

---

### Calibration Wizard

The **Calibration wizard** will help you to calculate the position of the two antennas more accurately.

### Note

---

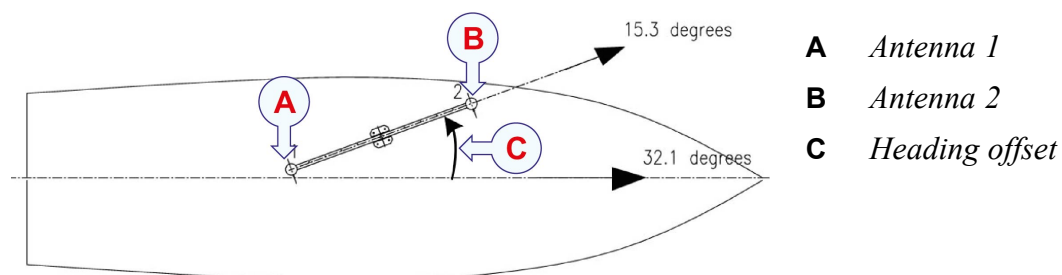
*Before you start the **Calibration wizard**, make sure that all configuration changes, including the correct MGC/MRU mounting angles, are applied by pressing the **Apply** button on the menu bar. See **Sensors > MGC/MRU > Geometry** for mounting angles.*

*Also, verify that the roll, pitch and heading measurements are indicated as valid (green) in the status indicators on the top bar.*

---

### Heading offset calculation example

If the reference heading is found to be 32.1 degrees and the GNSS heading after the calibration is 15.3 degrees, the Determined heading offset will be 32.1 - 15.3. Observe that the heading offset is positive counterclockwise, and in the range [0,360> degrees.

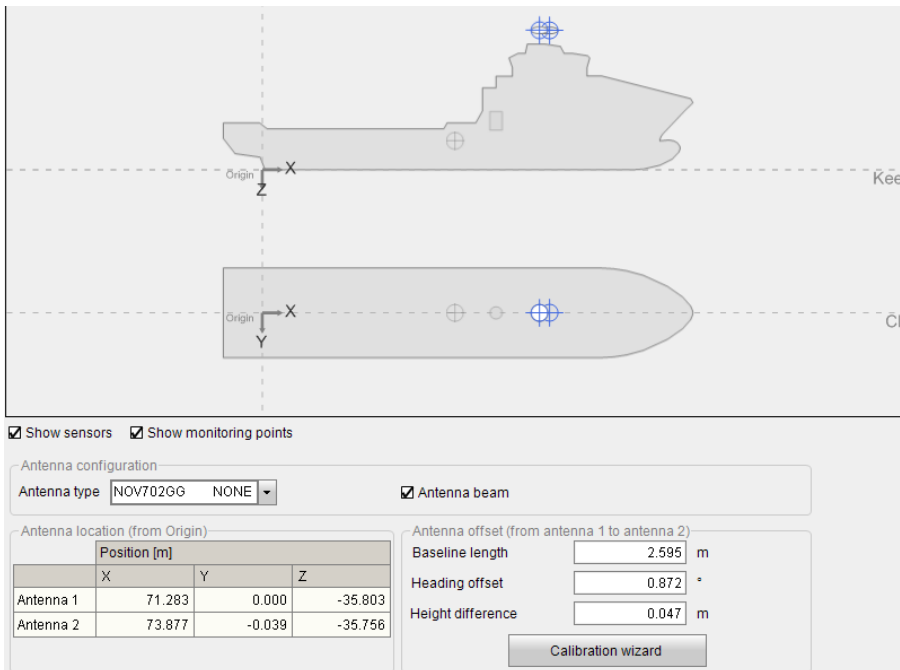


---

**Note**

The antenna cable connected to **GNSS1** at the rear of the Processing Unit, will be GNSS antenna #1 in the installation.

---



The illustrations in this procedure shows the **Calibration wizard** when the **Antenna beam** box is deselected.

### Procedure

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **GNSS** > **Geometry**.
- 2 Select **Show sensors**, **Show monitoring points** if you want to display these objects in the vessel illustration.
- 3 Select **Antenna type**.
- 4 Select the **Antenna beam** check box if the antennas are mounted on a beam. Clear the box if the antennas are mounted separately.
- 5 Type the surveyed antenna coordinates, X, Y, Z, for **Antenna 1**.

If the **Antenna beam** check box is selected, type the **Baseline length**, **Heading offset** and **Height difference** values measured earlier into the **Antenna offset (from antenna 1 to antenna 2)** boxes. The co-ordinates for **Antenna 2** will be updated accordingly.

If the **Antenna beam** check box is not selected, type the surveyed X, Y, Z co-ordinates for **Antenna 2**. Or you can type the **Baseline length**, **Heading offset** and **Height difference** values.

- 6 Make sure that the antenna has been located in the expected spot in the vessel illustration.

If the antenna symbol does not appear where you expect it to in the vessel illustration, observe the GNSS antenna co-ordinates, the vessel dimensions and the entered location of origin.

- 7 Select the **Calibration wizard** button to start the calibration of the antenna baseline and height difference.

The system will indicate when calibration measurements are ready.

- 8 In Step 1 **Accuracy**, modify the **Baseline length accuracy** and the **Height difference accuracy** values if needed.

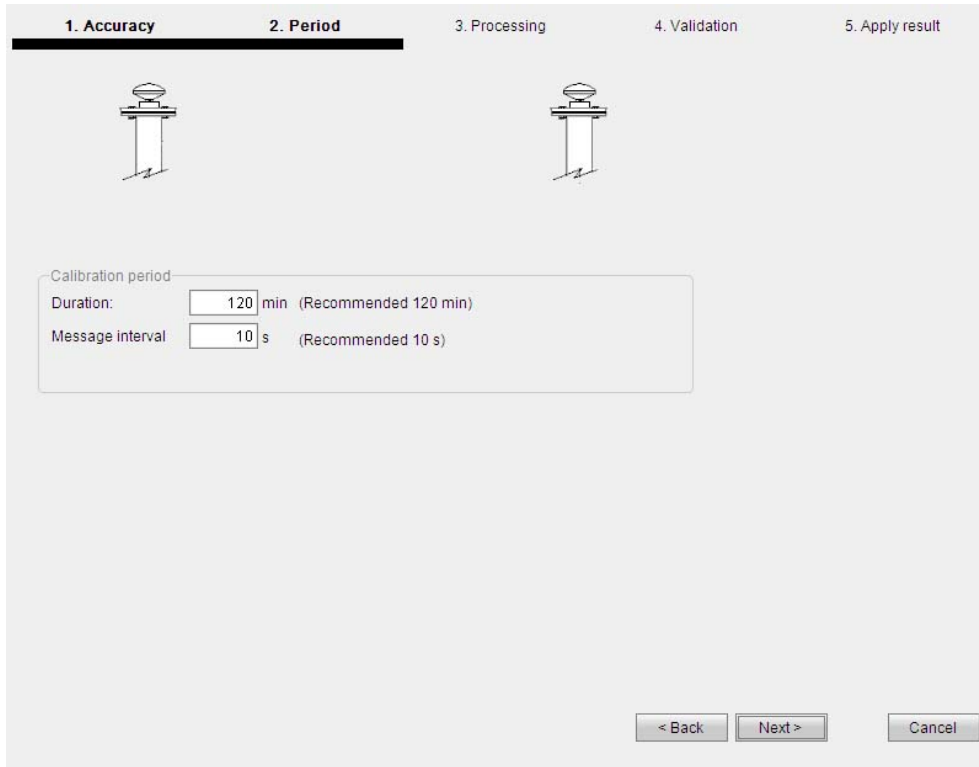
Select **Apply** to restart the calibration measurements.

The **Next** button will be enabled as soon as measurements are ready.

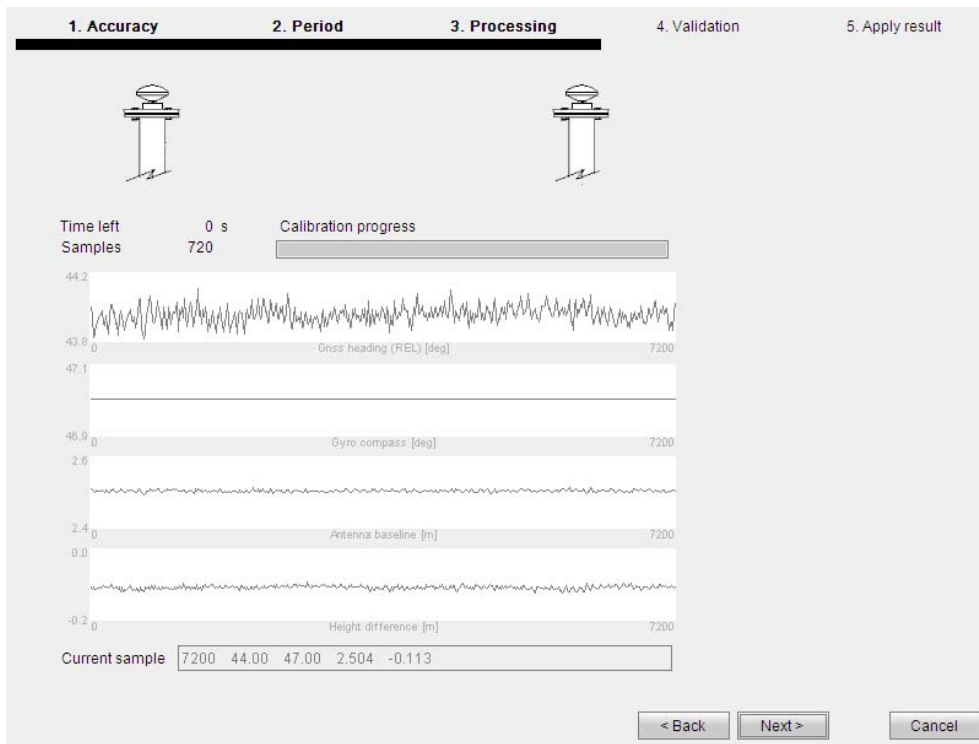
The screenshot shows a software interface for antenna calibration. At the top, there are five tabs: '1. Accuracy' (selected), '2. Period', '3. Processing', '4. Validation', and '5. Apply result'. Below the tabs, there are two identical illustrations of an antenna mounted on a vessel deck. Underneath these illustrations is a 'Calibration parameters' section containing two input fields: 'Baseline length accuracy' with the value '500.000 m' and 'Height difference accuracy' with the value '200.000 m'. To the right of these fields is an 'Apply' button. Below the 'Calibration parameters' section, the text 'System is ready for antenna calibration' is displayed. At the bottom right of the interface, there are three buttons: '< Back', 'Next >', and 'Cancel'.

- 9 Select **Next** to continue to Step 2 **Period**.

- 10 Modify the **Duration** and **Message interval** values of the calibration period if needed. It is recommended to use the default values.



- 11 Select **Next** to start the calibration logging.



- 12 Select **Next** to proceed to Step 4 **Validation** for inspection of the logged data.

1. Accuracy      2. Period      3. Processing      4. Validation      5. Apply result

Calibration measurements:

Count	Time [s]	Heading [deg]	Gyro [deg]	Baseline [m]	Height diff [m]
1	10	43.99	47.00	2.506	-0.120
2	20	44.00	47.00	2.508	-0.110
3	30	43.95	47.00	2.506	-0.115
4	40	43.85	47.00	2.501	-0.112
5	50	43.82	47.00	2.501	-0.109
6	60	43.85	47.00	2.500	-0.114
7	70	43.83	47.00	2.502	-0.113
8	80	43.90	47.00	2.504	-0.117

Calibration statistics

	Mean	Std. deviation
Gnss heading	43.953	0.047
Gyro compass	47.00	0.00
Antenna baseline	2.503	0.003
Height diff	-0.110	0.005

Number of samples: 720  
Duration: 7200

Buttons: Save changes, Delete line, Revert, Show graphs, < Back, Next >, Cancel

- 13 Delete possible wild points by selecting the corresponding row in the table. Select **Delete line**.
- 14 When the calibration result has been found acceptable, select **Next** to proceed to step 5, **Apply result**.



- 15 Type the mean value for the vessel **Reference heading**. Select **Update** in order to calculate the heading offset.

The screenshot shows the 'Antenna Calibration Wizard' dialog box, specifically the '5. Apply result' step. The dialog has a progress bar at the top with five steps: 1. Accuracy, 2. Period, 3. Processing, 4. Validation, and 5. Apply result. Below the progress bar are two icons of a vessel with an antenna. The main area contains a 'Calibration result' section with the following data:

Label	Value	Unit	Range
Reference heading	43.953	°	[0° - 360°>
- Gns heading	43.953	°	
+ Current heading offset	69.347	°	
= Determined heading offset	69.347	°	[0° - 360°>

Buttons: Update, Export log file, < Back, Finish, Cancel.

- 16 Select **Export log file** if the calibration data are wanted for post processing.
- 17 Select **Finish** to accept the result and exit the antenna Calibration Wizard.
- 18 Select **Apply** to save your settings without closing the dialog box.

### Related topics

[About sensor survey, page 54](#)

[Surveying the GNSS antenna, page 60](#)

[Determining the system coordinates, page 62](#)

[Survey accuracy values, page 63](#)

[Setting vessel dimensions and reference points, page 91](#)

[Sensors GNSS Geometry page, page 210](#)

## Setting MGC location and mounting angles

The physical location of the MGC relative to the origin and its mounting angles is required for the Seapath system to be able to calculate position, roll, pitch and heading correctly.

### Prerequisites

For accurate location of the MGC (Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass) a survey has to be carried out.

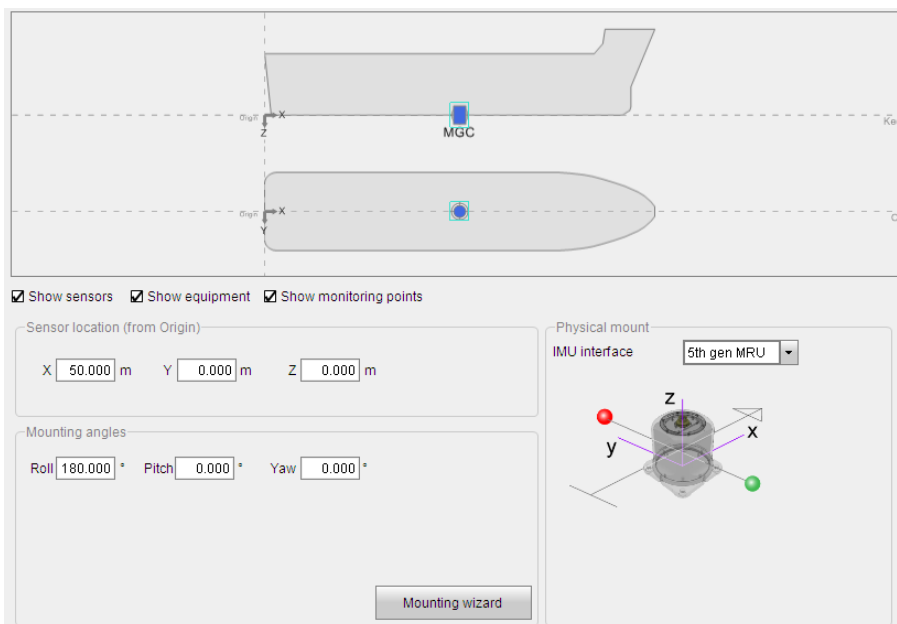
## Context

The MGC measures the roll, pitch, yaw and heave motions of the vessel. Under **MGC Geometry** you must define the physical location of the sensor unit related to the origin location you created under **Vessel Geometry**.

In the **MGC Geometry** page you enter the MGC location parameters, the X, Y and Z coordinates in meters, and the MGC mounting angles, the roll, pitch and yaw parameters in degrees. Look at the vessel illustration in the page to help you enter the correct signs for the coordinates. The illustration will show if the sensor unit appears at the expected location on the vessel.

If something looks out of place, check the signs and X, Y, Z coordinates you typed for the sensor unit location and/or return to the **Vessel Geometry** page and check the vessel shape dimensions, the origin location and the navigation reference point (NRP) location.

The MGC mounting angles can either be input manually or determined by use of the Mounting wizard. The Mounting Wizard is located under **NAV Engine Configuration > Sensors > MGC > Geometry**.



## Procedure

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **MGC** > **Geometry**.
- 2 Select the type of sensor unit which is connected to your vessel.
- 3 Type the X, Y and Z coordinates in metres from Origin to the sensor unit location.
- 4 Type the sensor unit mounting angles in degrees for roll, pitch and yaw.

If the mounting angle values are not known to you, use the Mounting Wizard to calculate these values.

- 5 Select **Apply** to save your settings without closing the dialog box.

**Related topics**

[About sensor survey, page 54](#)

[Determining the system coordinates, page 62](#)

[Survey accuracy values, page 63](#)

[Using Mounting Wizard to determine MGC mounting angles, page 101](#)

[Sensors MGC Geometry page, page 212](#)

## Using Mounting Wizard to determine MGC mounting angles

Use the Mounting Wizard to determine the roll, pitch and yaw mounting angles in degrees for the sensor unit.

**Prerequisites**

The MGC offset angles have to be available from a survey report or through other methods with similar accuracy.

**Context**

The mounting bracket offset angles which have to be entered are roll, pitch and yaw.

**Note**

---

*If the mounting bracket offset angles exceed 45 degrees, another main rotation should be selected.*

---

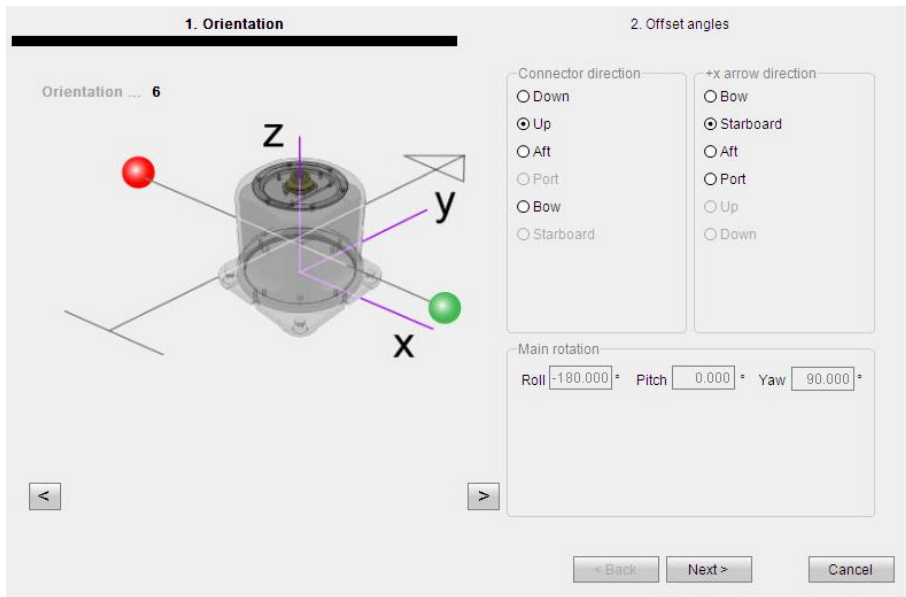
**Procedure**

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **MGC** > **Geometry**.
- 2 Select the **Mounting Wizard** button and use the wizard to calculate the roll, pitch and yaw mounting angles.

The red circle indicates Port. The green circle indicates Starboard. The arrow points in the bow direction.

- 3 In step 1, **Orientation**, you shall determine the orientation of the sensor unit. There are two ways to determine the orientation.
  - a Select the < or > buttons to turn the sensor unit around in 90-degree steps, axis by axis. Click until the correct mounting orientation of the sensor unit has been found.

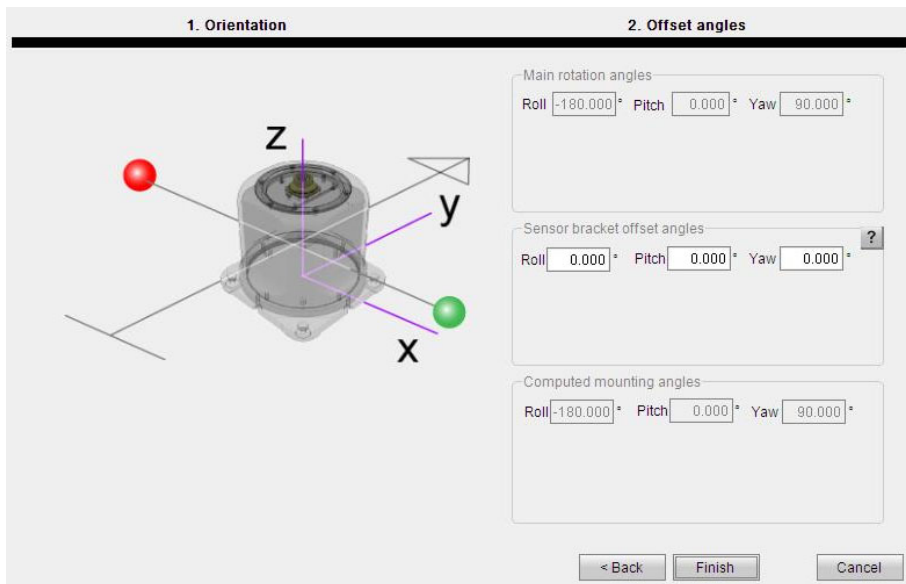
Observe that the parameters for roll, pitch and yaw under **Main rotation** are automatically updated with the actual main rotation of the sensor unit.
  - b Select the **Connector direction** options or the **+x arrow direction** options to select the sensor unit orientation.



- 4 Select **Next** to continue to step 2, **Offset angles**.

Observe that the roll, pitch and yaw mounting angles are now indicated under **Main rotation angles**.

- 5 Type the surveyed sensor unit bracket offset angles in degrees for roll, pitch and yaw. The system calculates the mounting angles automatically and the values appear under **Computed mounting angles**.



- 6 Select **Finish** when you are ready to complete the offset angle setting. This will exit the wizard and take you back to the initial **MGC Geometry** page.
- 7 Select **Apply** to save your settings without closing the dialog box.

**Related topics**

[Survey accuracy values, page 63](#)

[Setting MGC location and mounting angles, page 99](#)

[Sensors MGC Geometry page, page 212](#)

[Sensors MGC Geometry - Mounting Wizard , page 213](#)

## Setting MRU location and mounting angles

The physical location of the MRU relative to the origin and its mounting angles is required for the Seapath system to be able to calculate position, roll, pitch and heading correctly.

**Prerequisites**

For accurate location of the MRU (Motion Reference Unit) a survey has to be carried out.

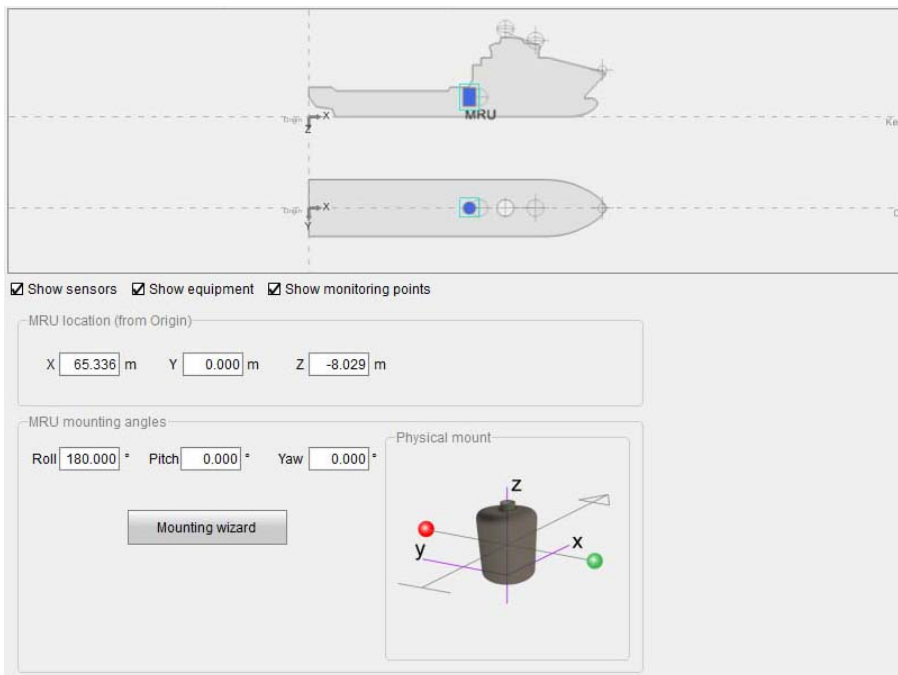
**Context**

The MRU measures the roll, pitch, yaw and heave motions of the vessel. Under **MRU Geometry** you must define the physical location of the sensor unit related to the origin location you created under **Vessel Geometry**.

In the **MRU Geometry** page you enter the MRU location parameters, the X, Y and Z coordinates in meters, and the MRU mounting angles, the roll, pitch and yaw parameters in degrees. Look at the vessel illustration in the page to help you enter the correct signs for the coordinates. The illustration will show if the sensor unit appears at the expected location on the vessel.

If something looks out of place, check the signs and X, Y, Z coordinates you typed for the sensor unit location and/or return to the **Vessel Geometry** page and check the vessel shape dimensions, the origin location and the navigation reference point (NRP) location.

The MRU mounting angles can either be input manually or determined by use of the Mounting wizard. The Mounting Wizard is located in the **NAV Engine Configuration > Sensors > MRU > Geometry**.



### Show sensors, Show equipment, Show monitoring points

These items are displayed in the vessel illustration when you select the boxes.

### Sensor location (from origin)

This is the position of the MRU in X, Y, Z coordinates in metres from Origin. The sensor unit (IMU) location has to be measured.

### IMU interface

Select the Inertial Measurement Unit connected to this product. This could be the previous MRU generation (4<sup>th</sup> generation) or 5<sup>th</sup> generation MRU (MGC).

### Mounting angles

This is the mounting angles of the Inertial Measurement Unit in degrees for roll, pitch and yaw. The Mounting Wizard is a helpful tool to obtain the correct roll and pitch compensation.

### Mounting wizard button

Select this button and the Mounting wizard will assist you with the determination of the MRU mounting angles.

## Procedure

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **MRU** > **Geometry**.
- 2 Type the X, Y and Z coordinates in metres from Origin to the sensor unit location.
- 3 Type the sensor unit mounting angles in degrees for roll, pitch and yaw.

If the mounting angle values are not known to you, use the Mounting Wizard to calculate these values.

- 4 Select **Apply** to save your settings without closing the dialog box.

## Related topics

[About sensor survey, page 54](#)

[Determining the system coordinates, page 62](#)

[Survey accuracy values, page 63](#)

[Using Mounting Wizard to determine MRU mounting angles, page 105](#)

[Sensors MRU Geometry page, page 216](#)

[Sensors MRU Geometry - Mounting Wizard , page 217](#)

## Using Mounting Wizard to determine MRU mounting angles

Use the Mounting Wizard to determine the roll, pitch and yaw mounting angles in degrees for the sensor unit.

### Prerequisites

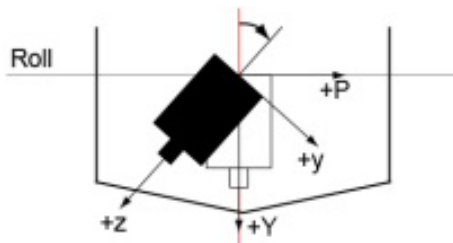
The MRU mounting bracket offset angles have to be available from a survey report or through other methods with similar accuracy.

### Context

The mounting bracket offset angles which have to be entered are roll, pitch and yaw.

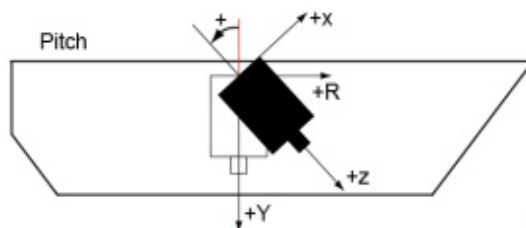
#### Roll offset angle

The angle between the ship's Y-axis and the projection of the sensor unit z-axis in the ship's PY-plane. Positive roll offset angle if the bracket tilts to starboard.



#### Pitch offset angle

The angle between the ship's Y-axis and the projection of the sensor unit z-axis in the ship's RY-plane. Positive pitch offset angle if the bracket tilts to stern.



#### Yaw offset angle

The angle between the ship's R-axis and the projection of the sensor unit x-axis in the ship's RP-plane. Positive yaw offset angle if the bracket is rotated clockwise.

Note

*If the mounting bracket offset angles exceed 45 degrees, another main rotation should be selected.*

---

**Procedure**

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **MRU** > **Geometry**.
- 2 Select the **Mounting Wizard** button and use the wizard to calculate the roll, pitch and yaw mounting angles.

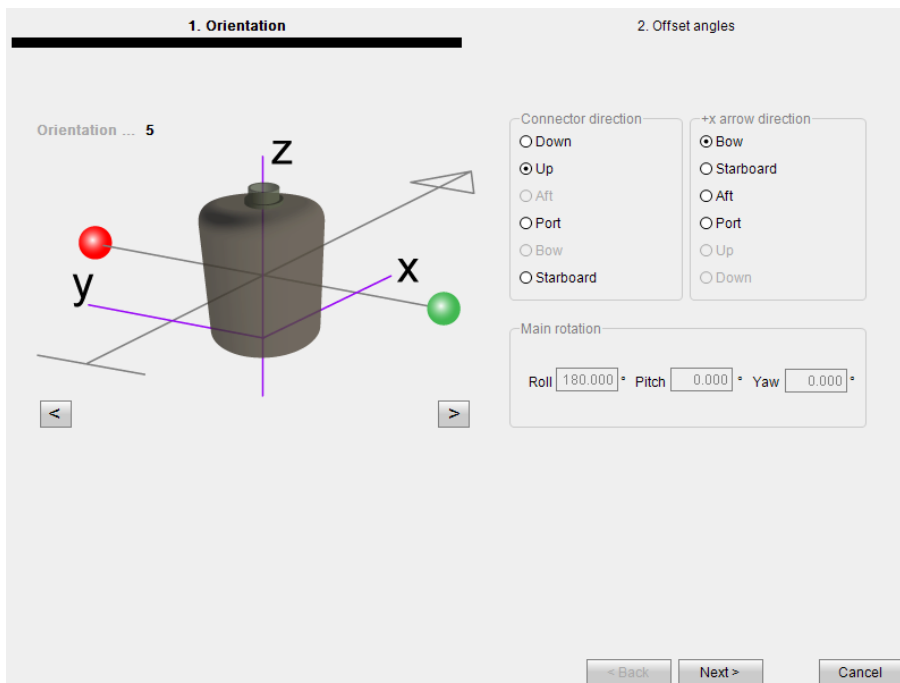
The red circle indicates Port. The green circle indicates Starboard. The arrow points in the bow direction.

- 3 In step 1, **Orientation**, you shall determine the orientation of the sensor unit. There are two ways to determine the orientation.

- a Select the < or > buttons to turn the sensor unit around in 90-degree steps, axis by axis. Click until the correct mounting orientation of the sensor unit has been found.

Observe that the parameters for roll, pitch and yaw under **Main rotation** are automatically updated with the actual main rotation of the sensor unit.

- b Select the **Connector direction** options or the **+x arrow direction** options to select the sensor unit orientation.

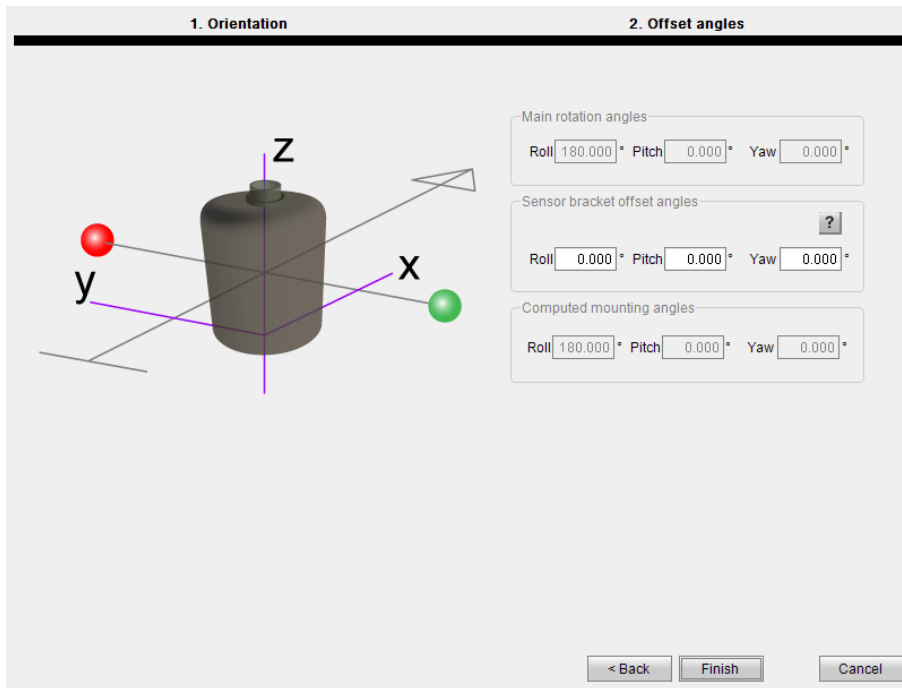


- 4 Select **Next** to continue to step 2, **Offset angles**.

Observe that the roll, pitch and yaw mounting angles are now indicated under **Main rotation angles**.



- 5 Type the surveyed sensor unit bracket offset angles in degrees for roll, pitch and yaw. The system calculates the mounting angles automatically and the values appear under **Computed mounting angles**.



- 6 Select **Finish** when you are ready to complete the offset angle setting. This will exit the wizard and take you back to the initial **MRU Geometry** page.
- 7 Select **Apply** to save your settings without closing the dialog box.

### Related topics

- [Survey accuracy values, page 63](#)
- [Setting MRU location and mounting angles, page 103](#)
- [Sensors MRU Geometry page, page 216](#)
- [Sensors MRU Geometry - Mounting Wizard , page 217](#)

## Selecting heave filter options

The heave configuration parameters allow you to tune the heave parameters to the vessel motion characteristics for the actual weather conditions. This is important when using real-time heave measurements in order to achieve optimum heave performance.

### Context

Before a survey and/or during operation check the heave performance and tune the heave parameters until the best heave performance is achieved. An alternative is to select **Automatic** and let the system automatically choose the best settings.

The screenshot shows a configuration dialog box for heave measurements. It is divided into two main sections: 'Real-time heave' and 'Delayed heave'.  
In the 'Real-time heave' section:  
- 'Heave filter' is a dropdown menu currently set to 'Automatic'.  
- 'Heave mean level' has a checked checkbox for 'Roll/Pitch dependent'.  
In the 'Delayed heave' section:  
- 'Heave mean level' has a checked checkbox for 'Roll/Pitch dependent'.

### Procedure

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **NAVEngine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **MGC/MRU** > **Heave config**.
- 2 Select the **heave filter** mode you want to use from the **Options** list.
- 3 If you select **Hydrographic survey** or **General purpose**, type the wanted filter period. Values are between 1 and 25 seconds.
- 4 Select the **Roll/Pitch dependent** box if you want the heave measurements dependent on the roll and pitch measurements.  
  
There are separate selections for the real time heave and the delayed heave (PFreeHeave).
- 5 Select **Apply** to save your settings without closing the dialog box.

### Related topics

[Sensors MGC Heave config page, page 220](#)

## Setting monitoring points

You must define the locations on the vessel for which you want the system to calculate the position.

### Prerequisites

To get exact coordinates from origin to each monitoring point, each monitoring point has to be measured or calculated based upon drawings or previously measured points.


### Context

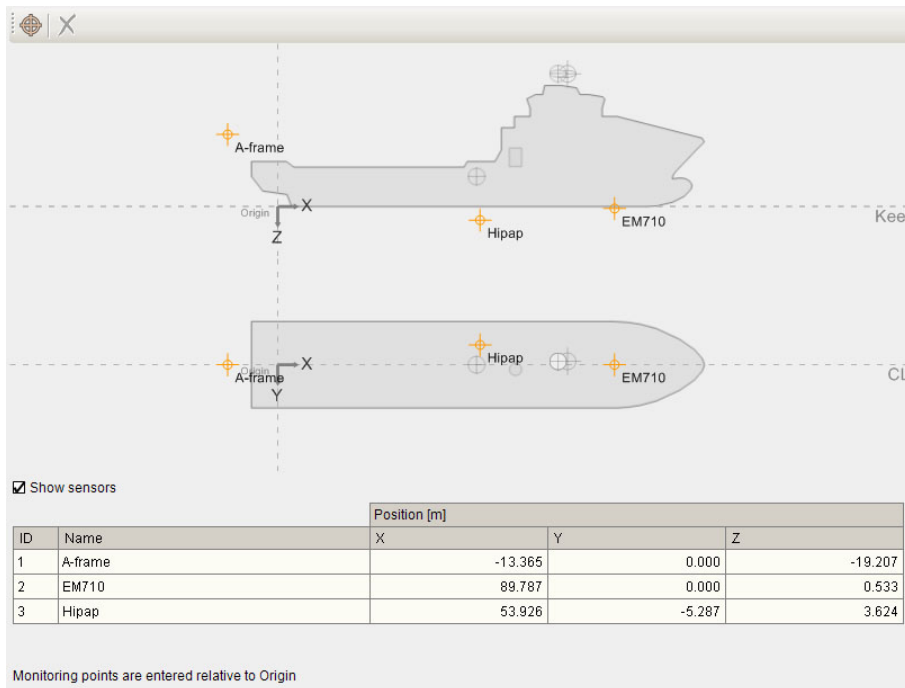
You must define points (monitoring points) on the vessel where you want the position measurements to be output. The monitoring points are given relative to origin (positive forward, towards starboard and down). The position of a monitoring point relative to the origin is indicated in the vessel illustration when the cursor is over the monitoring point. As soon as a monitoring point has been defined, its location is indicated in the vessel illustration. If a monitoring point appears incorrect, check the signs and the coordinates

input for each monitoring point and the vessel dimensions and the entered location of origin in the **Vessel Geometry** page.

The system supports up to eight user definable monitoring points.

### Deleting a monitoring point

You can delete a monitoring point by selecting the wanted point in the table and clicking the **Delete** button, .




The screenshot displays a 3D model of a vessel with three monitoring points: A-frame, Hipap, and EM710. The vessel is shown from a side-on perspective, with the keel and centerline (CL) indicated. The A-frame is located at the bow, Hipap is on the deck, and EM710 is on the hull. The origin is marked at the bow. Below the model is a table with the following data:

		Position [m]		
ID	Name	X	Y	Z
1	A-frame		-13.365	0.000
2	EM710		89.787	0.000
3	Hipap		53.926	-5.287

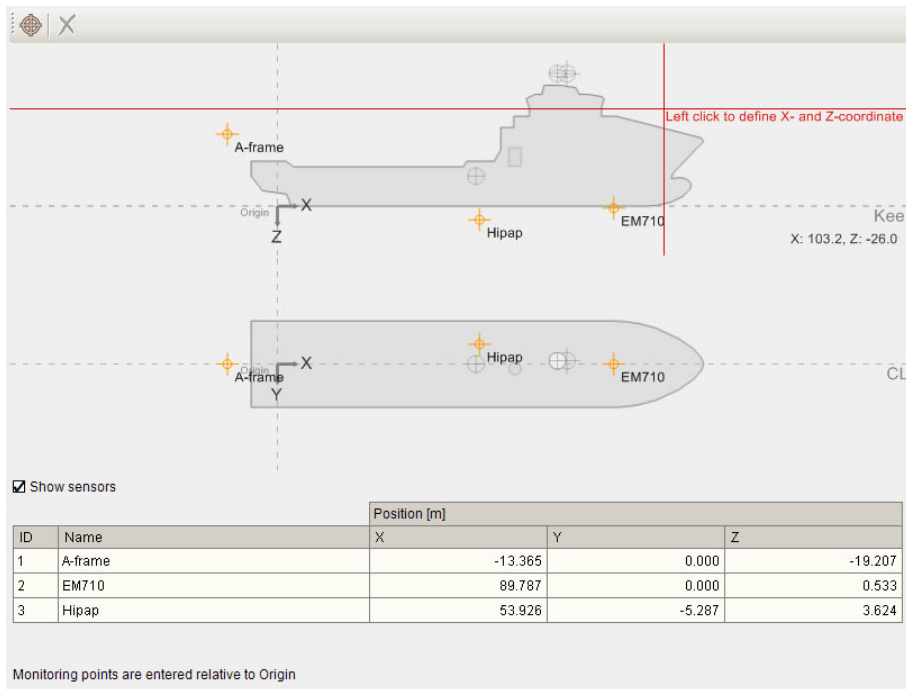
Monitoring points are entered relative to Origin

### Procedure

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Monitoring points** > **Geometry**.
- 2 Select the **Add** button  at the top of the page to add a monitoring point.

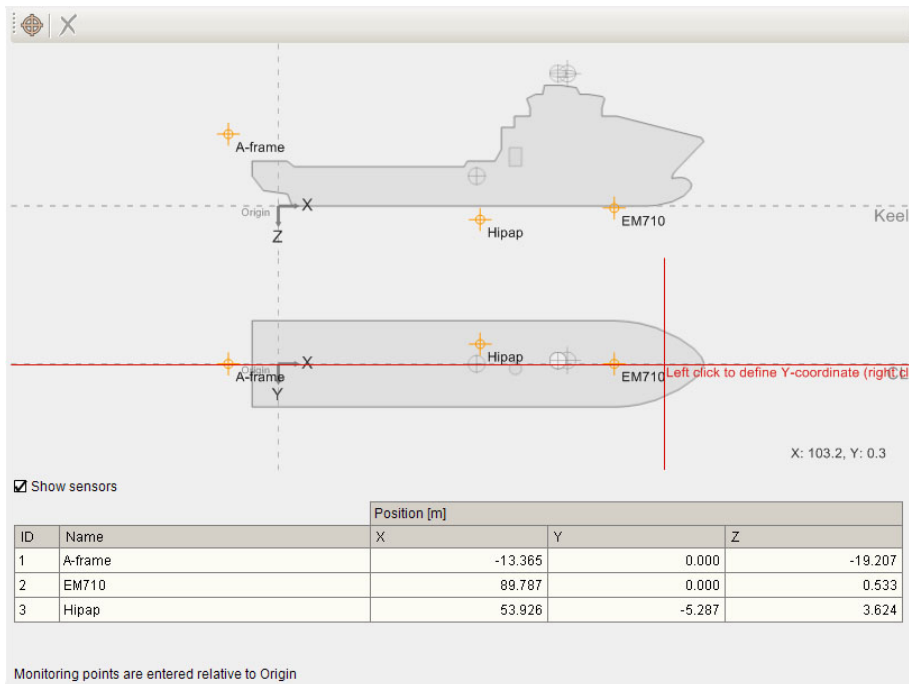
Observe that the cursor changes to two red lines which will help you to place the new monitoring point in the vessel illustration.

- 3 Drag the cursor to the location on the upper vessel illustration where you want to add the X and Z coordinates for your monitoring point and left-click the mouse button.

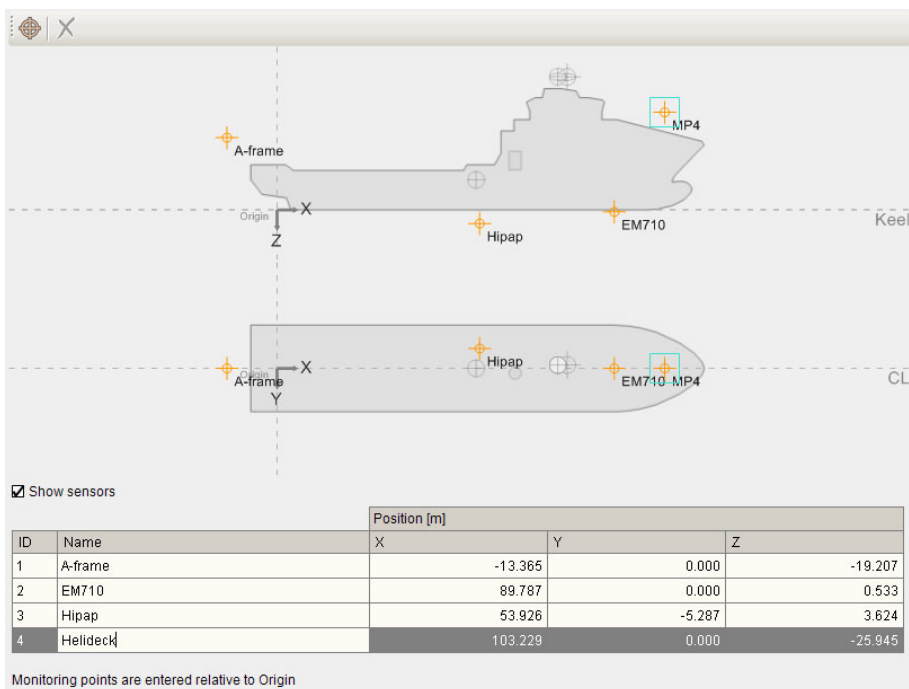


- 4 Continue and drag the cursor to the location in the lower vessel illustration where you want to add the Y coordinate for your monitoring point and left-click the mouse button.

Observe that the coordinates for the new monitoring point appear in the monitoring points table. The table will also help you to get the wanted location for your monitoring point.



- 5 Select the **Name** column in the table and type an identifying name for your monitoring point. Press **Enter** to confirm.



- 6 Select the **X**, **Y** and **Z** columns and adjust the coordinates by typing the exact location of the monitoring point. If necessary. Press **Enter** to confirm.
- 7 Select **Apply** to save your settings without closing the dialog box.

**Related topics**

[Determining the system coordinates, page 62](#)

[Survey accuracy values, page 63](#)

[Monitoring points Geometry page, page 223](#)

## Setting up input to and from the MGC

Set up the MGC interface to prioritise heading input and position output.

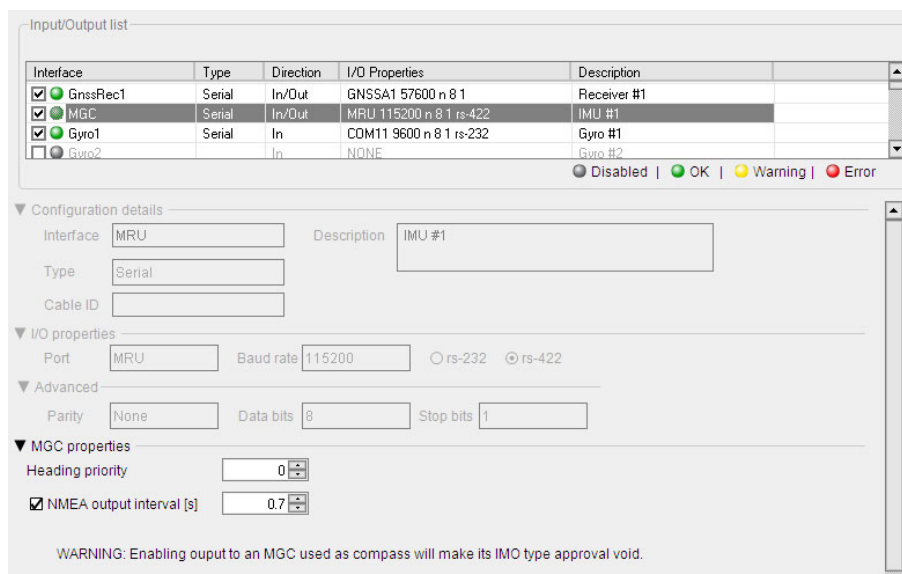
**Context**

The MGC is detected in the system when the MGC is connected to the Processing Unit. The MGC interface cannot be set up by the operator. It is automatically set up when the units are connected.

However, if you have several heading input sources in your system, you can set up which priority the MGC shall have in your system.

**WARNING**

***Enabling output to an MGC used as compass will void the IMO type approval.***



**Procedure**

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.
- 2 Select the MGC interface you want to set up in the **Input/Output list**. Observe that the **Configuration details** parameters appear at the lower part of the page. Continue to **MGC properties**.
- 3 Type a number for which priority the MGC heading input shall have in the system.

- 4 Select the **NMEA output interval** check box to enable output of NMEA GGA, VTG and ZDA messages to the MGC. Select the wanted interval in seconds between the message outputs.
- 5 Select **Apply** to save the settings.

### Related topics

[Communication interface description, page 87](#)

[Using the Serial interface, page 89](#)

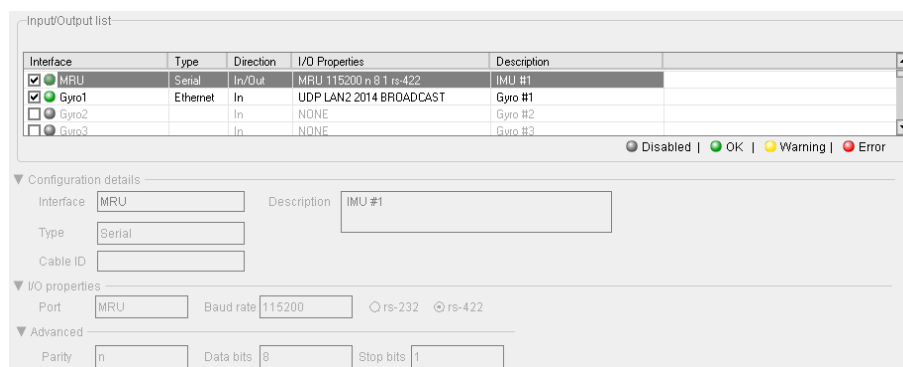
[Using the Ethernet interface, page 90](#)

[Communication interface - MGC interface page, page 227](#)

## Setting up input to and from the MRU

The Motion Reference Unit (MRU) is automatically detected in the system when the MRU is connected to the Processing Unit.

The MRU interface cannot be set up by the operator. It is automatically set up when the units are connected.



### Related topics

[Communication interface description, page 87](#)

[Using the Serial interface, page 89](#)

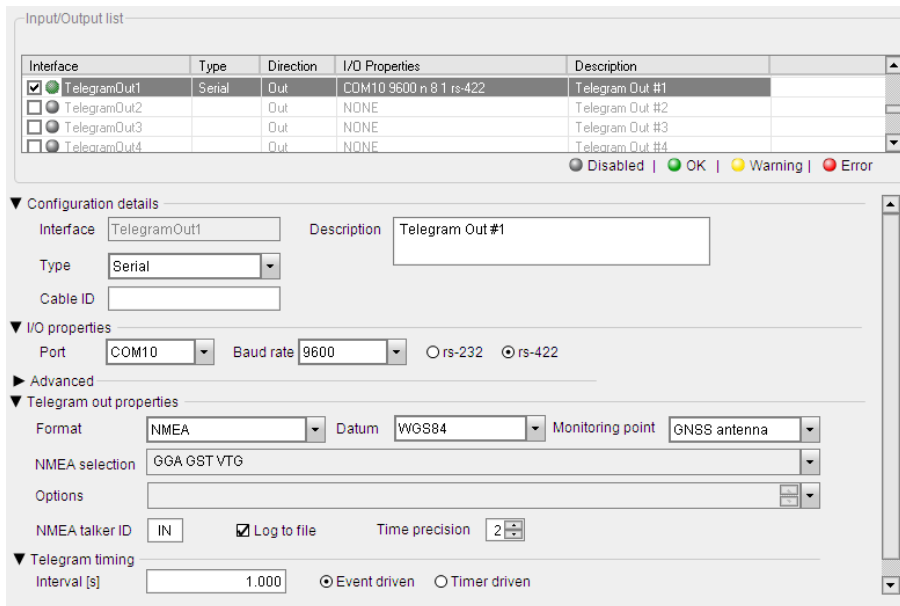
[Using the Ethernet interface, page 90](#)

## Setting up the Telegram out interface

The **TelegramOut** function allows you to enable and set up data messages transmitted to external equipment.

### Context

Up to 16 serial and/or network interfaces can be configured.



## Procedure

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.
- 2 Select the **TelegramOut** interface you want to set up in the **Input/Output list**.  
Observe that the **Configuration details** parameters appear at the lower part of the page.
- 3 Select either **Ethernet** or **Serial** in the **Type** list.  
Enter the appropriate parameters for the selected interface type.
- 4 Continue to **Telegram out properties**.
- 5 Select the wanted output telegram format from the **Format** list.  
If you select NMEA as telegram format, the **NMEA selection** list becomes active.
- 6 If NMEA is selected, select the wanted NMEA telegrams to use from the **NMEA** list.
- 7 Select the wanted datum format from the **Datum** list.
- 8 Select the wanted monitoring point from the **Monitoring point** list.
- 9 Type the talker ID of NMEA messages sent from this output in the **NMEA talker ID** box.  
The default value is IN for systems with an Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) connected. The default value is GP for systems without an IMU connected.
- 10 Select the **Log to file** box if you want to log the measurements to file internally in the Seapath system.
- 11 Select the wanted number of decimals in the time field in the NMEA telegrams containing time information from the **Time precision** box



- 12 Under **Telegram timing**, type the wanted output interval for the messages.
  - **Event driven**: This parameter outputs data only when the data are calculated or when a change occurs. Output data are delayed.
  - **Timer driven**: This is the interval between each sample, Type the wanted interval in seconds in the **Interval** box. The range is 0.01 to 3000 seconds.
- 13 Select **Apply** to save the settings.

### **Related topics**

[Communication interface description, page 87](#)

[Using the Serial interface, page 89](#)

[Using the Ethernet interface, page 90](#)

[Communication interface - TelegramOut interface page, page 230](#)

[Data output specifications, page 161](#)

[Datum specifications, page 162](#)

## Additional system configuration

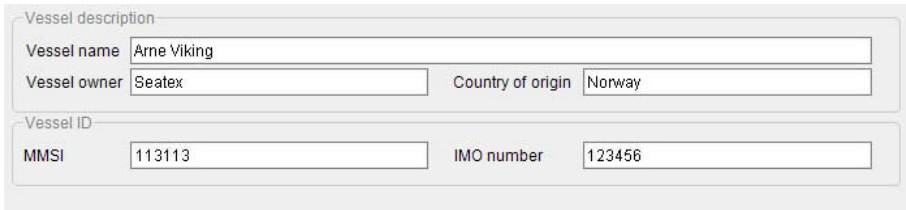
### Topics

- [Entering vessel identification parameters, page 116](#)
- [Importing vessel shape from file, page 117](#)
- [Selecting SBAS satellites, page 119](#)
- [Enabling Fugro high precision services, page 120](#)
- [Selecting heading input format from a gyro compass, page 121](#)
- [Setting up the DGNSS correction link parameters, page 123](#)
- [Enabling and/or disabling use of GNSS link, page 124](#)
- [Adding extra serial ports, page 125](#)
- [Changing the Processing Unit IP address, page 127](#)
- [Changing the HMI Unit IP address, page 128](#)

### Entering vessel identification parameters

The vessel **Description** parameters allow you to enter information about the vessel which is needed for identification purposes.

#### Context



The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "Vessel description" with two sections: "Vessel description" and "Vessel ID".

Vessel description			
Vessel name	Arne Viking		
Vessel owner	Seatex	Country of origin	Norway

Vessel ID	
MMSI	113113
IMO number	123456

#### Procedure

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Vessel** > **Description**.
- 2 Type the name of your vessel. This box cannot be empty. The default value is **VESSEL**.
- 3 Type the name of the **vessel owner**. This is optional information.
- 4 Type the **country of origin** for the vessel. This is optional information.
- 5 Type the MMSI number assigned to the vessel. The default value is 0.
- 6 Type the IMO number assigned to the vessel. The default value is 0.
- 7 Select **Apply** to save the settings.

## Related topics

[Vessel Description page, page 209](#)

## Importing vessel shape from file

You can load a vessel model from file in order to get accurate dimensions for your vessel.

### Context

The pre-defined scalable vessel shapes represent the actual vessel outline only in rare cases. In order to configure the accurate location of various sensors, equipment and monitoring points, it is recommended to load a separate vessel model from file.

The system supports two types of two dimensional outlines: side view (towards starboard) and top view. Three file types are available: **Vessel models** (\*.svm), **Vessel vector images** (\*.svi) and **Old vessel images** (\*.txt).

The vessel image file must meet the following requirements:

- The vessel data have to be in an ASCII file generated by Excel, Notepad or similar tools.
- The file head includes Overall length (LOA), Overall width, Overall height and Stern to Origin data in metres.
- Profile (side view) data in X and Z coordinates must be in metres, related to the origin. The coordinates are specified clockwise from a point aft of the origin, and the last coordinate has to equal the first coordinate to form a closed polygon.
- The top view data in X and Y coordinates must be in metres. The first coordinate has to be aft of the origin along the centre line. Successive coordinates are specified clockwise, and the last coordinate has to equal the first to form a closed polygon.

Vessel image files can be created by Kongsberg Discovery AS upon customer request. General arrangement (GA) drawings or similar are required to create vessel image files.

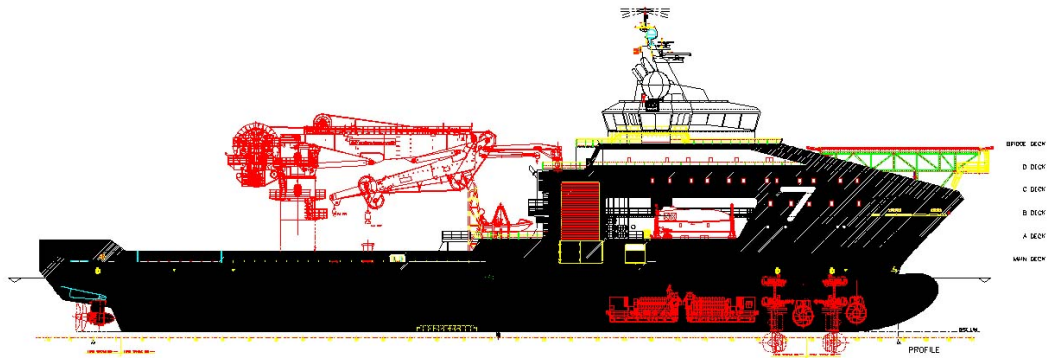
### Procedure

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Vessel** > **Geometry**.
- 2 Select **Use vessel drawing**. The **Shape dimension** parameters will be locked.
- 3 Type the parameters for the location of origin (survey origin).
- 4 Type the navigation reference point location.X, Y, Z.
- 5 Select **Apply** to save the settings.

### Example

#### Vessel shape from file

The illustration shows an example of a GA drawing of a multi-purpose vessel.



A user text file from Notepad may look like this.

```

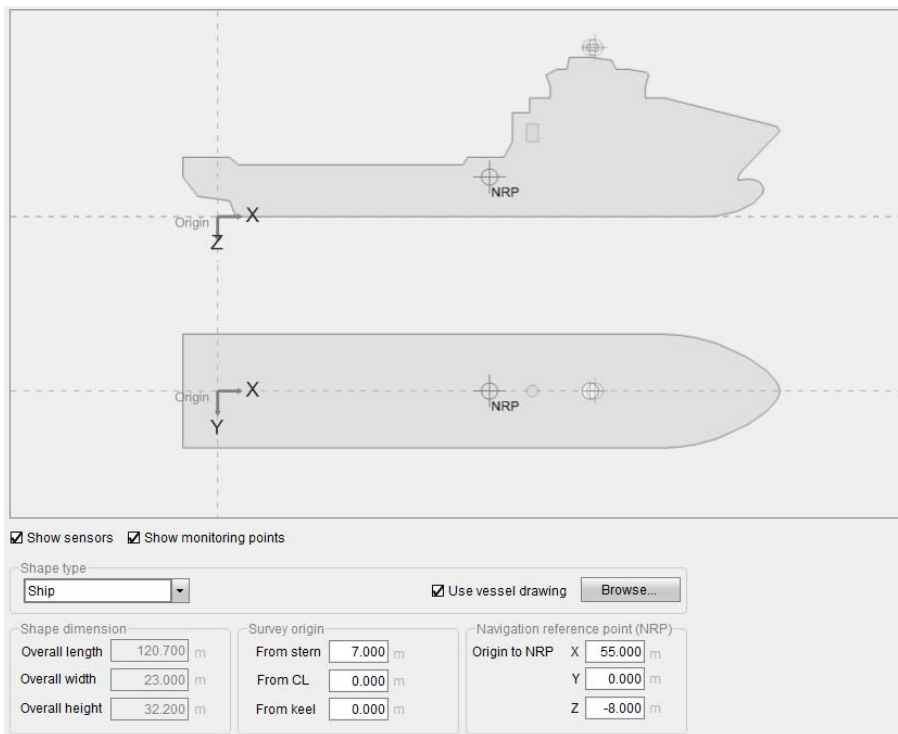
mpv.svi - Notepad
File Edit Format View Help
%Vessel Data [m]
%LOA = 120.70
%width = 23.00
%Height = 32.20
%Aft to AP = 7.00

%Profile coordinates in (X,Z) [m]
0.00,-3.55
2.44,-3.19
3.69,0.00
98.60,0.00
101.00,-0.14
105.20,-1.12
108.36,-2.70
110.09,-4.51
110.35,-5.20
110.40,-5.43
110.40,-5.69
.
.
.
63.10,-24.00
63.10,-21.00
59.62,-21.00
59.62,-15.13
57.87,-12.99
49.65,-10.50
4.25,-10.50
2.31,-12.00
-7.00,-12.00
-7.00,-8.00
-4.00,-4.11
0.00,-3.55

%Profile cutout
-23.20,-36.48
-23.20,-10.24
23.20,-10.24
23.20,-36.48
-23.20,-36.48

%Top view coordinates in (X,Y) [m]
-7.00,0.00
-7.00,11.50
90.30,11.50
.
.
113.60,0.57
113.70,0.00
    
```

The vessel shape in the NAV Engine Configuration looks like this.



In the example, only the port side of the vessel top view is defined in the file. Symmetry is assumed, so this is sufficient to draw a symmetric vessel shape. If the vessel is not symmetric, use the section code **%Top view coordinates in (X,Y) [m] Complete** and give the coordinates along the complete shape, defined clockwise.

It is possible to define cutouts within the profile or top view polygons. For profile cutout, use **%Profile cutout n**, where **n** identifies the cutout.

### Related topics

[Setting vessel dimensions and reference points, page 91](#)

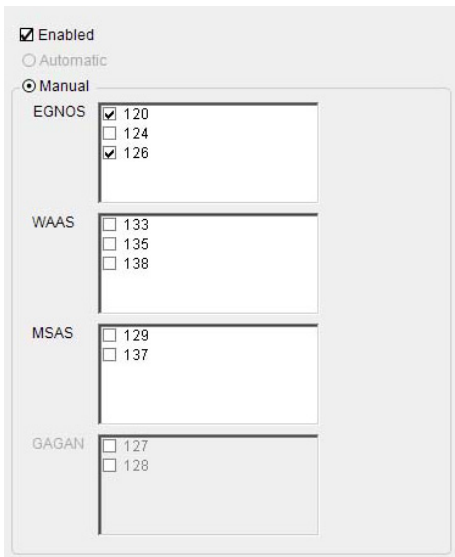
[Vessel Geometry page, page 208](#)

## Selecting SBAS satellites

The SBAS parameters allow you enable tracking of SBAS satellites. You can set up automatic or manual tracking of the SBAS satellites.

### Context

Maximum two SBAS satellites can be tracked by the receiver. If you manually select two SBAS satellites, the system will automatically use data from the best satellite. If no specific satellite is selected, the system will select and use data from the best of the available satellites.



### Procedure

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **DGNSS** > **SBAS**.
- 2 Select **Enable** to enable tracking of SBAS satellites.
- 3 If you want the system to track SBAS satellites automatically, select **Automatic**.
- 4 If you want to select which SBAS satellites to use yourself, instead of automatic selection by the system, select **Manual**
- 5 Select which SBAS satellites to use. You can select maximum two satellites.
- 6 Select **Apply** to save the settings.

### Related topics

[Sensors DGNSS SBAS page, page 221](#)

## Enabling Fugro high precision services

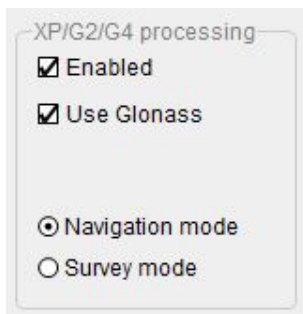
The **XP/G2/G4** parameters allow you to use high precision services to improve the accuracy of the GNSS signals which results in a more accurate position.

### Prerequisites

A Fugro demodulator has to be connected and activated. A valid subscription to the Fugro high performance positioning service is required.

### Context

You must enable the use of high precision services as this setting is not enabled by default.



### Procedure

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **NAVEngine** > **Standard**.
- 2 Select **Sensors** > **DGNSS** > **XP/G2/G4**
- 3 Select the **Enabled** box to enable the use of high precision services.
- 4 Select **Glonass** if you want the system to use GLONASS corrections.
- 5 If you want more reliability during difficult conditions, select **Navigation mode** or if you want high accuracy, select **Survey mode**.
- 6 Select **Apply** to save the settings.

### Related topics

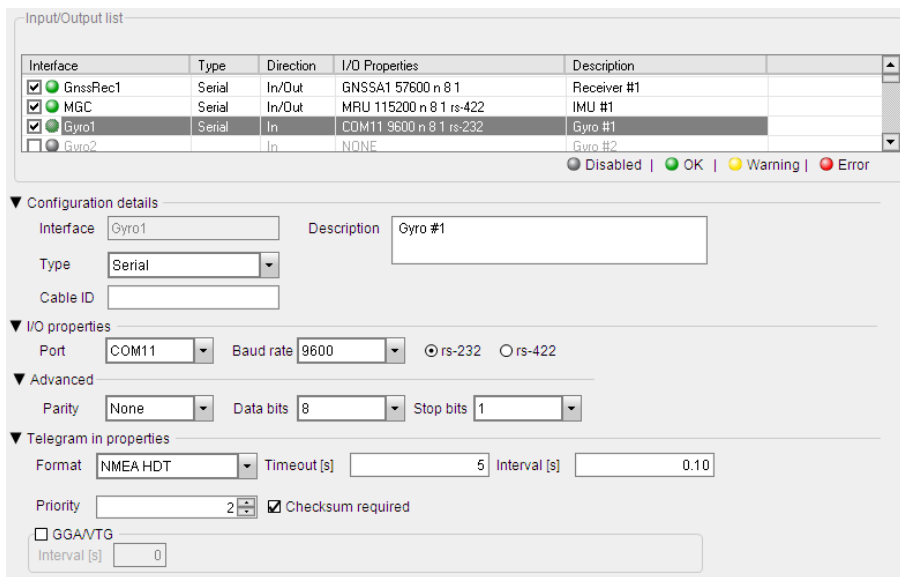
[Sensors DGNSS XP/G2/G4 page, page 229](#)

## Selecting heading input format from a gyro compass

Heading input from a gyro compass or similar can be input to the Seapath system as a backup to improve reliability.

### Context

Heading input from a gyro compass, or heading input from the DP system, are used in the position filter and can be used to display heading and speed in the displays. In addition, heading is necessary to use the built-in lever arm compensation. Several types of heading formats are accepted by the system.



## Procedure

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.
- 2 Select the **Gyro** interface you want to set up in the **Input/Output list**.  
Observe that the **Configuration details** parameters appear at the lower part of the page.
- 3 Select either **Ethernet** or **Serial** in the **Type** list.  
Enter the appropriate parameters for the selected interface type.
- 4 Continue to **Telegram in properties**.
- 5 Select the wanted gyro telegram from the **Format** list.
- 6 Type the wanted **Timeout** age limit in seconds.  
If the age of the gyro message exceeds this limit, the gyro message is invalid.
- 7 Type the wanted **Interval** for seconds between the incoming telegrams
- 8 Type a number for which priority the heading input shall have in the Seapath system
- 9 Select the **Checksum required** box if you want NMEA checksum to be required.  
This selection is selected by default. This is the recommended setting.
- 10 Select the **GGA/VTG** box if you want the system to send GGA and VTG messages to the gyro at specified intervals.
- 11 Select **Apply** to save the settings.



## Related topics

[Communication interface description, page 87](#)

[Using the Serial interface, page 89](#)

[Using the Ethernet interface, page 90](#)

[Communication interface - Serial or Ethernet, page 224](#)

[Communication interface - Gyro interface page, page 233](#)

## Setting up the DGNSS correction link parameters

You can set up the system to receive various types of corrections which will improve the position accuracy.

### Context

The screenshot shows the 'Input/Output list' configuration window. It contains a table with the following data:

Interface	Type	Direction	I/O Properties	Description
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DgnssLink2	Ethernet	In	UDP LAN2 15010 MULTICAST	Link #2
<input type="checkbox"/> DgnssLink3	Ethernet	In	UDP LAN2 13911 BROADCAST	Link #3
<input type="checkbox"/> DgnssLink4	Serial	In	COM1 38400 n 8 1 rs-232	Link #4
<input type="checkbox"/> DgnssLink5	Ethernet	In	UDP LAN2 32111 MULTICAST	Link #5

Below the table, there are configuration details for the selected interface (DgnssLink2):

- Configuration details:**
  - Interface: DgnssLink2
  - Description: Link #2
  - Type: Ethernet
  - Cable ID: (empty)
- I/O properties:**
  - DGNSS link properties:**
    - Interface: 3710 DGNSS receiver
    - Name: RTCM
    - Timeout [s]: 60
    - Format: RTCM v2 and XP/G2/G4
    - GGA interval [s]: 0

### Procedure

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.
- 2 Select the **DGNSSLink** interface you want to set up in the **Input/Output** list.  
Observe that the **Configuration details** parameters appear at the lower part of the page.
- 3 Select either **Serial** or **Ethernet** in the **Type** list.  
Enter the appropriate parameters for the selected interface type.
- 4 Continue to **DGNSS link properties**.
- 5 Select the wanted interface from the **Interface** list.  
The content of the **Format** list will depend on this selection.
- 6 Select the wanted format from the **Format** list.
- 7 Type the name of the DGNSS correction link.  
This name will be displayed in the DGNSS link status bar at the bottom of View 1.

- 8 Type the correction **Timeout** age limit in seconds.  
If the age of the corrections exceeds this limit, the corrections are invalid.
- 9 Select the **GGA Interval** box if you want the system to send GGA messages to the DGNSS receiver. Type the wanted interval in seconds between the telegrams.
- 10 Select **Apply** to save the settings.

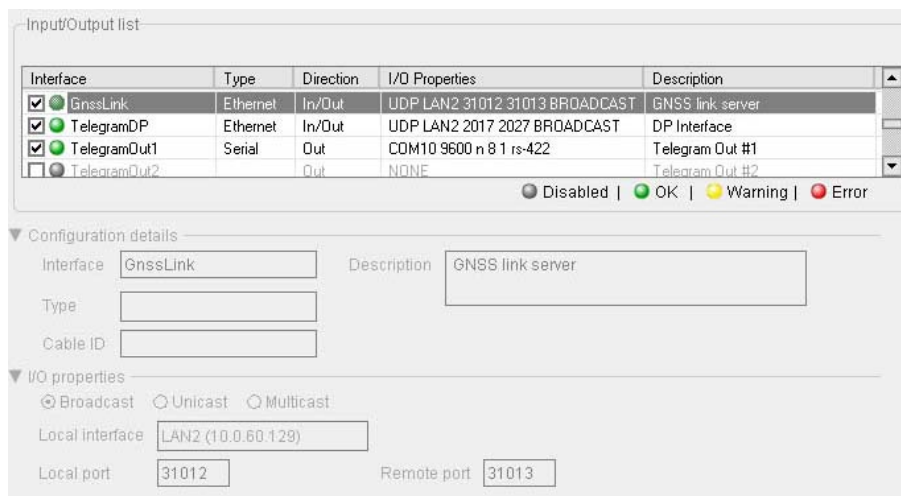
### Related topics

- [Communication interface description, page 87](#)
- [Using the Serial interface, page 89](#)
- [Using the Ethernet interface, page 90](#)
- [Communication interface - Serial or Ethernet, page 224](#)
- [Communication interface - DgnssLink interface page, page 228](#)

## Enabling and/or disabling use of GNSS link

If you have a Kongsberg Discovery AS system which needs GNSS data, you can send these data from the Seapath by enabling the **GNSSLink** parameter.

### Context



### Procedure

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.
- 2 Select the **GNSSLink** interface you want to enable/disable in the **Input/Output list**.
- 3 Select **Apply** to save the settings.

## Related topics

[Communication interface description, page 87](#)

[Using the Serial interface, page 89](#)

[Using the Ethernet interface, page 90](#)

## Adding extra serial ports

You can add more serial ports to the system than those available in the Processing Unit.

### Context

A serial port extender can be delivered as an option for connection to the Processing Unit. The extender is an 8-port RS-232/422/485 serial device server, type Moxa NPort 5650I-8-DT.

The serial port extender is used to provide more serial ports to the system than those available in the Processing Unit. The extender is configured via a web page displayed in the Standard NAV Engine Configuration after selecting the correct IP address for the serial port extender in the **Address** box and selecting **Open configuration**.

### Note

*The extended serial ports are not as accurate with regard to timing as COM 9 to COM 14 and are not recommended used for timing critical outputs.*



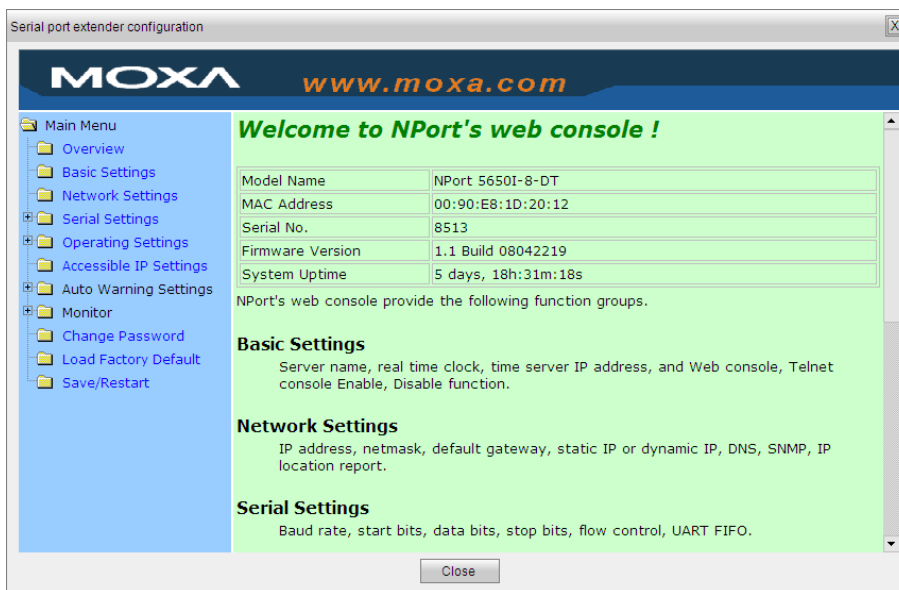
Address

Type

### Procedure

- 1 Install the serial port extender according to the instructions supplied with the product.
- 2 Connect the serial port extender to a LAN port at the rear of the Processing Unit and to the HMI Unit.  
Use a network switch between the Processing Unit and the HMI Unit.
- 3 Connect power to the serial port extender with the supplied power adapter.
- 4 On the serial port extender, select a free IP address on the network for the serial port extender.  
Get the IP address from the vessel's network administrator.
- 5 If the serial port extender is not new, it is recommended to reset to factory default. To reset, press and hold **Reset** with a pointed object for 5 seconds.
- 6 On the front panel of the serial port extender, select **Main Menu > Network setting > IP address** and enter the chosen IP address.
- 7 Select **Main Menu > Network setting > Netmask** and change the subnet mask if necessary.

- 8 Select **Main Menu** > **Save/Restart**.
- 9 Select the **System** menu > **NAVEngine** > **Standard**.
- 10 Select **Communication interface** > **Serial port extender**.
- 11 Type the IP address for the serial port extender in the **Address** box.
- 12 Select MOXA Nport as **Type**.
- 13 Select **Open configuration** to open the web configuration page.



- 14 Select **Main Menu** > **Serial settings**.
- 15 Set **Flow control** to **None** for all ports.
- 16 Set **Interface** to RS-422 or RS-232 for each port to match the connected equipment.  
No other configuration changes should be mad in the web browser.
- 17 Submit and activate the configuration.
- 18 Close the web browser.  
You are now back in the **NAV Engine Configuration**.
- 19 Select **Apply** to save the settings.
- 20 Restart the Processing Unit.

### Result

After restart the serial ports are available in the **NAV Engine Configuration** > **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**. **Serial** interface, under **I/O properties**.

Change of interface type between RS-422 and RS-232 must be made from the web browser.

## Related topics

[Communication interface - Serial port extender page, page 234](#)

## Changing the Processing Unit IP address

You must enter the Internet Protocol (IP) address for the Processing Unit so it can communicate on the local area network (LAN).

### Context

Under **Interface settings** you can modify the IP address of the physical interface selected in the **Interface** list.

The Processing Unit communicates with the operator software (HMI Unit) using multicast UDP/IP. Any client may join the configured multicast group provided that the network hardware between the Processing Unit and the client supports multicast forwarding.

The default IP address for the Processing Unit is:

- LAN 1: 192.168.1.10
- LAN 2: 192.168.2.10
- LAN 3: 192.168.3.10
- LAN 4: 192.168.4.10
- LAN 5: 192.168.5.10

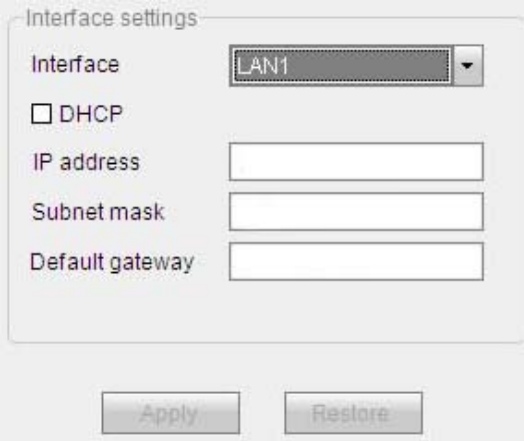
The default IP address for the HMI Unit is: 192.168.1.100.

The default multicast address for the Processing Unit is: 239.255.0.3.

The default subnet mask for the Processing Unit is: 255.255.255.0.

Changing the Processing Unit IP address might also require a change in the HMI Unit address.

Contact the network administrator for advice on IP address assignments.



Interface settings

Interface: LAN1

DHCP

IP address:

Subnet mask:

Default gateway:

Apply Restore

### Procedure

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Network**.
- 2 Select the interface for which you want to change the IP address.
- 3 Type the new IP address for the interface. This is recommended.  
Or you can select the **DHCP** box if the IP address is given by a DHCP server. The rest of the parameters will then be disabled.
- 4 Type the subnet mask address for this interface.
- 5 Type the IP address for the default gateway.
- 6 Select **Apply** to save the settings.
- 7 Restart the Processing Unit for these changes to take effect and or the new settings to be used by NAV Engine.

### Further requirements

To restart the Processing Unit, select the **System** menu > **Restart** > **Processing Unit**.

If you select **Restore**, you will return to the previous interface settings.

### Related topics

[Network page, page 235](#)

[Changing the HMI Unit IP address, page 128](#)

## Changing the HMI Unit IP address

Some situations may occur where the network administrator asks you to change the HMI Unit's Internet Protocol (IP) address.

### Prerequisites

You must be in *Engineering* mode to be able to make changes to these settings.

### Context

The default IP address for the HMI Unit is: 192.168.1.100.

### Procedure

- 1 Select **Tools** > **Windows Shell**.
- 2 Type `Control` and press **Enter**.
- 3 Select **Network** > **Sharing Center**.
- 4 Select the connection you want to change. For example LAN1.
- 5 Select **Properties**.
- 6 5. Select **Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4)** > **Properties**.

- 7 Select **Use the following IP address** and type the preferred **IP address**, **Subnet mask** and **Default gateway**.
- 8 Select **OK**.
- 9 Close the other dialog boxes.

### **Related topics**

[Changing the Processing Unit IP address, page 127](#)

## Operator software configuration

### **Topics**

[Selecting the position of views in the display, page 129](#)

[Selecting the appearance of the Sky view, page 130](#)

[Adjusting the Integrity view, page 132](#)

[Adjusting the Compass view, page 133](#)

[Adjusting UTM presentation, page 134](#)

[Selecting the Seapath HMI software data source, page 134](#)

[Selecting reception of alarm messages, page 135](#)

## Selecting the position of views in the display

The **View** page allows you to select the contents of each view when the HMI (Human Machine Interface) application starts.

### **Context**

Two views cannot have the same contents. When one view is selected as contents in View 1, other contents will automatically be selected for View 2.



### Procedure

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **View**.
- 2 Select which view you want for View 1 and View 2 from the drop-down lists.
- 3 Select **Apply** to save the settings.

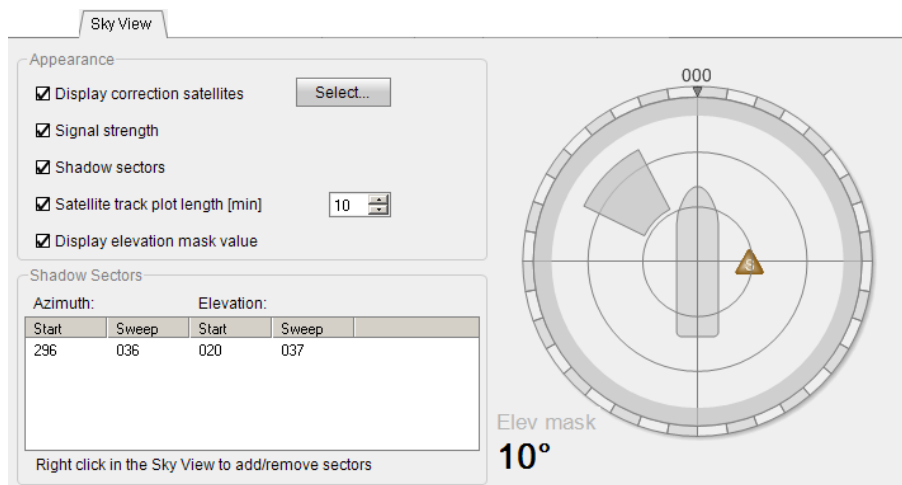
### Related topics

[Operator software configuration - View page, page 236](#)

## Selecting the appearance of the Sky view

The *Sky View* can contain various information. You can define what information and objects you want to appear in the *Sky View*.

### Context





## Procedure

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **Sky View**.
- 2 Select **Display correction satellites**. Observe that the **Select** button appears.
- 3 Select this button to open the **Select Correction Satellites** dialog box.
- 4 Select the satellites you want to appear in the Sky view. Select **OK**.
- 5 Select **Signal strength** if you want to display the signal bar under the satellites in the Sky view.
- 6 Add shadow sectors to be able to display them in the Sky view.
  - a Place the cursor over the sky view area to the right in the Sky view page.
  - b Right-click and select **Add sector**.  
Observe that the sector appears in the sky view area and in the table under **Shadow Sectors**. The table shows your shadow sectors.
  - c Hover the cursor over the shadow sector. Observe that the cursor changes to arrow symbols.
  - d Drag the arrows horizontally and vertically to create your shadow sector. Observe the **Azimuth** and **Elevation** values in degrees.
- 7 Delete shadow sectors if they are no longer applicable.
  - a Select a sector in the sky view area to the right in the **Sky View** page.
  - b Right-click and select **Remove sector**.  
Observe that the shadow sector disappears from the sky view area and from the table.
- 8 Select **Satellites track plot length** if you want to show this in the Sky view. Observe that the **Satellite track plot length** list appears.
- 9 Select the wanted value for the satellite track plot length in minutes.
- 10 Select **Display elevation mask value** if you want the value to appear in the Sky view.
- 11 Select **Apply** to save the settings.

## Related topics

[Operator software configuration - Sky view page, page 237](#)

## Adjusting the Integrity view

The **Position Integrity** tab allows you to adjust the scaling of the Integrity view.

### Context



### Procedure

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **Position Integrity**.
- 2 Type the **Max ellipse EPE** in metres.
- 3 Type the steps for **Ellipse diagram resolution**.
- 4 Select **Apply** to save the settings.

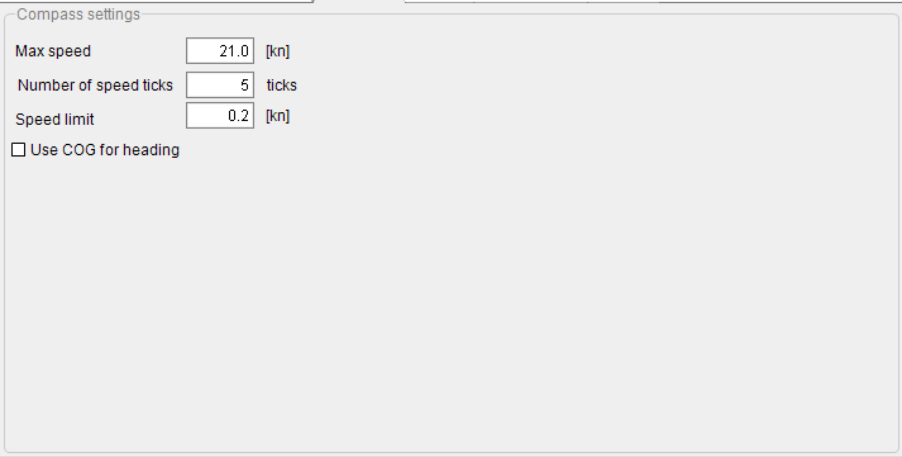
### Related topics

[Operator software configuration - Position Integrity page, page 239](#)

## Adjusting the Compass view

The **Compass** page allows you to adjust the speed scaling of the Compass view.

### Context



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Compass settings" with a "Compass" tab. It contains the following fields and options:

Max speed	<input type="text" value="21.0"/>	[kn]
Number of speed ticks	<input type="text" value="5"/>	ticks
Speed limit	<input type="text" value="0.2"/>	[kn]
<input type="checkbox"/> Use COG for heading		

### Procedure

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **Compass**.
- 2 Type the maximum vessel speed, **Max speed**, to be displayed in the Compass view.
- 3 Type the number of circles to be displayed, **Number of speed ticks**.
- 4 Type the lower **Speed limit** for when COG (Course Over Ground) and SOG (Speed Over Ground) shall be displayed in the Compass view.
- 5 Select the **Use COG for heading** box if true heading is unavailable.
- 6 Select **Apply** to save the settings.

### Related topics

[Operator software configuration - Compass page, page 240](#)

## Adjusting UTM presentation

You can control how UTM positions are treated by the application. UTM is the Universal Transverse Mercator coordinate system.

### Context



### Procedure

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **UTM**.
- 2 Clear the **False Northing** check box if you want positions south of the equator to be presented as negative values in the Position data when displaying position as UTM.
- 3 Select which **zone options** you want to use. If you select **Manual**:
  - a Type the value for the zone you want to use.
  - b Type the zone offset for this zone, range 1 to 60.
- 4 Select **Apply** to save the settings.

### Related topics

[Operator software configuration - UTM page, page 241](#)

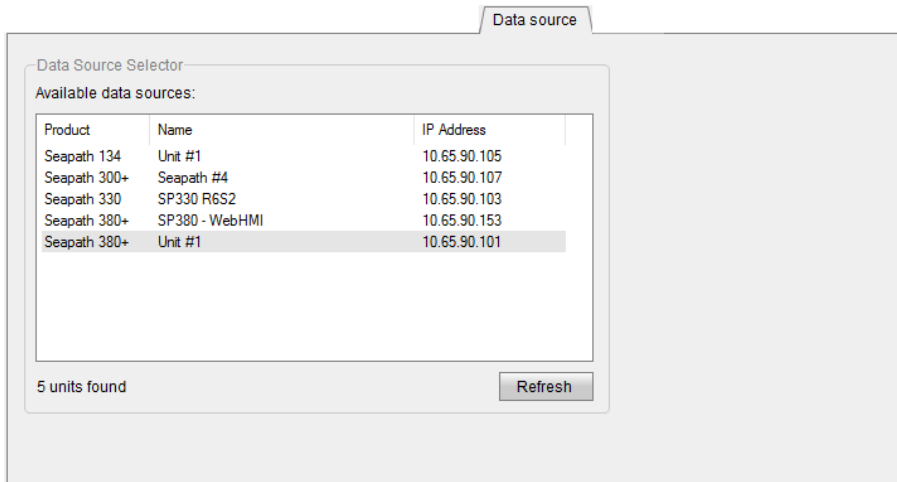
## Selecting the Seapath HMI software data source

You can select the data source which the operator software (Seapath HMI) receives its data from.

### Context

The operator software will automatically detect the default IP address for the Processing Unit. If you want to receive data from another unit, you can select which unit from this page.

Select **Refresh** to update the list of available units. If the wanted data source is not displayed in the list, you can check the network connections and that all equipment is switched on.



## Procedure

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **Data Source**.
- 2 Select the wanted data source from the list.
- 3 Select **Apply** to save the settings.

## Related topics

[Operator software configuration - Data source page, page 242](#)

## Selecting reception of alarm messages

You can define how to receive alarm messages.

## Prerequisites

**UDP Broadcast** is the default (and recommended) setting. Defining a multicast address for alarm message distribution requires advanced network configuration skills.

## Context



## Procedure

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **Alarms**.
- 2 Select the wanted connection type: **UPD Multicast** or **UDP Broadcast**.
- 3 Select **Apply** to save the settings.

## Related topics

[Operator software configuration - Alarms page, page 243](#)

# Creating a backup of the configuration and software installation

If you have a complex configuration setup in your system, it can be useful to make a copy of this configuration in case you should need it later. The **Copy Configuration** tool will copy the system configuration to a disk based archive file or to a USB flash drive.

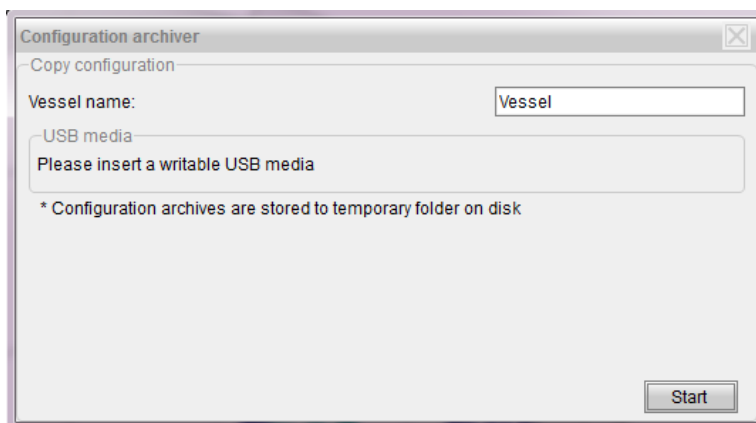
## Context

### Note

---

*This procedure will only copy the configuration setup and not a full image of the installed system.*

---



### Note

*If a USB flash drive is not inserted, the archive will be stored in a temporary location on the local disk. In this case, the archive will only be available for restore until the next reboot.*

### Procedure

- 1 Insert a USB flash drive into the USB port at the front of the HMI Unit.
- 2 Select the **Tools** menu > **Copy Configuration**.
- 3 The configured vessel name is automatically entered into the **Vessel name** box but you can change this if you want.
- 4 Select **Start** to copy the configuration files to the USB flash drive. The copied configuration will be stored as a compressed archive (ZIP file) under the **ConfigBackup** folder in the root of the USB flash drive.

### Result

You can use the USB flash drive with the copied configuration to restore the system configuration at a later date.

## Restoring the configuration backup

If you need to restore the configuration setup to your system, you can use the USB flash drive with a copy of your configuration which you created with the **Copy Configuration** tool.

### Prerequisites

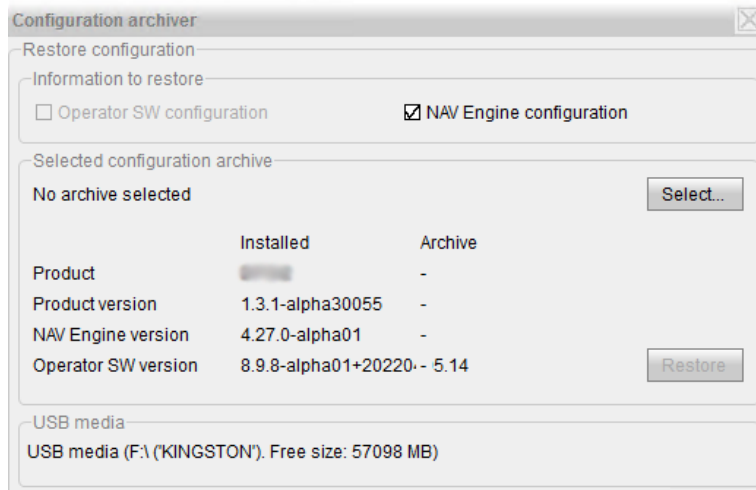
A USB flash drive with the Seapath application must be available.

## Context

### Note

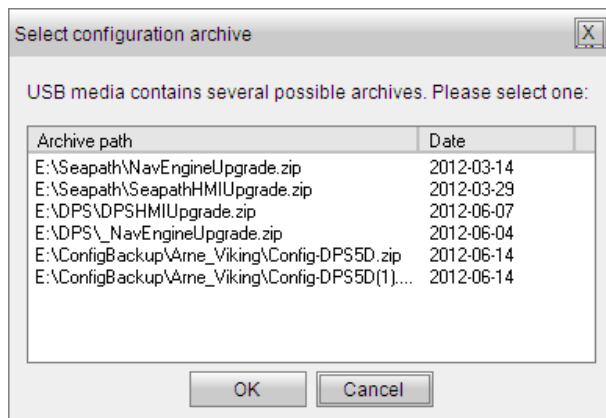
*The **Restore Configuration** tool will stop NAV Engine before restoring the configuration. NAV Engine will be restarted automatically.*

---



## Procedure

- 1 Insert a USB flash drive into the USB port on HMI Unit.
- 2 Select the **System** menu > **Change system mode** > **Engineering**.
- 3 Type the password: **stx**. The password is not case sensitive.
- 4 Select the **Tools** menu > **Restore configuration**.
- 5 Select **NAV Engine configuration**.
- 6 Select **Select...**
- 7 Select the wanted configuration archive from the list. Select **OK**.



- 8 Select at least one option under **Information to restore** in the **Configuration archiver** dialog box. This will enable the **Restore** button.



- 9 Select **Restore** to restore the wanted configuration.

## Seapath operator software on external computer

### Topics

[Installing the Seapath operator software on external computer, page 139](#)

[Removing the Seapath operator software from external computer, page 140](#)

[Starting the Seapath operator software on external computer, page 140](#)

[Stopping the Seapath operator software, page 140](#)

### Installing the Seapath operator software on external computer

This software is used to set the configuration parameters for the Seapath and to monitor the performance of the Seapath system. The operator software is pre-installed on the HMI Unit but you can also install it on an external computer.

#### Prerequisites

Generate a USB flash drive for the operator software from the software download link received from Kongsberg Discovery customer support.

#### Procedure

- 1 Insert the USB flash drive with the software into a USB port on the external computer.
- 2 Open the removable disk drive to which the USB flash drive is connected.
- 3 Locate and run the installation file `SeapathHmiInstaller.exe`.
- 4 Follow the instructions on the screen in order to complete the installation of the **Seapath HMI** program.
- 5 When you reach the last step, clear the **Run the application** check box if you do not want to start the operator software immediately after installation.
- 6 Remove the USB flash drive from the computer when the installation is finished.

## Removing the Seapath operator software from external computer

When you do not need the Seapath anymore, you can remove it from the external computer.

### Procedure

- 1 Open the **Control panel** on your computer and select **Programs and Features**. This is the dialog box where you remove programs.
- 2 Locate the **Seapath series** program in the list.
- 3 Select **Uninstall** to remove the program.
- 4 Follow the instructions on the screen.

## Starting the Seapath operator software on external computer

When you have installed the operator software on the external computer, you must start the software to be able to operate the Seapath system.

### Context

There are two ways to start the operator software.



### Procedure

- 1 Double-click the **Seapath Operator SW** icon on the desktop to start the software.
- 2 Select the Windows Start button and type `seapath` in the search box. Select **Seapath Operator SW**.

## Stopping the Seapath operator software

You can stop the Seapath application on the external computer.

### Context

Note

---

*The system will still calculate and output data if you stop the operator software.*

---

### Procedure

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **Stop** > **Operator SW**.  
The message **This will end the application. Are you sure?**, appears.
- 2 Select **Yes** to confirm.

# System backup and restore

## Topics

[Processing Unit procedures, page 141](#)

[HMI Unit procedures, page 144](#)

## Processing Unit procedures

### Topics

[Preparing a USB flash drive for backup and restore purposes, page 141](#)

[Backing up the Processing Unit image to a USB flash drive, page 142](#)

[Restoring Processing Unit image from backup flash drive, page 143](#)

## Preparing a USB flash drive for backup and restore purposes

The **ISP Backup and Restore (IBR)** tool is a special tool installed on a USB flash drive which supports backup and restore of the Processing Unit in the Seapath system.

### Prerequisites

You have received an email or a USB flash drive with the `ibr-*.zip` file from Kongsberg Discovery AS. A USB flash drive suitable for the purpose must be available.

A USB flash drive with the ISP Backup and Restore (IBR) may have been produced at installation and kept together with the product manual. If this flash drive cannot be located, you will have to make a new one.

## Context

This procedure will prepare the USB flash drive with the **ISP Backup and Restore** (Integrated Sensor Platform) tool which you can use to create a backup of the system image and to restore this image.

## Note

---

*The USB flash drive will be reformatted as a part of the creation process. Existing content will be lost.*

---

## Procedure

- 1 Insert the USB flash you want to use into your Windows 10 computer.
- 2 Format the USB flash drive. Use the Windows 10 **Disk Management** tool.
  - a Press the **Windows** key and type `diskmgmt`.
  - b Delete any existing partitions on the USB flash drive. Right-click and select **Delete Volume**.
  - c Create two new partitions. Right-click the disk and select **New Simple Volume**. Follow the Wizard.
  - d The first partition:
    - Size: 1024 MB
    - File system: Select `FAT32`
    - Volume label: Type `IBR`
  - e The second partition:
    - Size: The rest of the flash drive.
    - File system: Select `FAT32`
    - Volume label: Type `PRODBKUP`
- 3 Unzip the contents of the most recent version of the `ibr-*.zip` file which you have received onto the first partition.
- 4 Remove the USB flash drive.

## Backing up the Processing Unit image to a USB flash drive

We strongly advise you to create your own backup once the installation has been completed. Your backup will then include the operating system, the Seapath 385 software, as well as all the interface parameters that you have defined.

## Prerequisites

You have prepared a USB flash drive with the **ISP Backup and Restore (IBR)** tool.

This procedure is performed on the Processing Unit. A keyboard and a mouse must be connected to the Processing Unit in order to perform this procedure.

### Context

This procedure will stop all output from the system for about 15 minutes.

### Procedure

- 1 Insert the USB flash drive with the **IBR** tool into the Processing Unit.
- 2 Turn on the Processing Unit.
- 3 Select **ISP Backup and Restore (IBR)** or wait 30 seconds for the program to open.
- 4 Select **System backup**.
- 5 Select **Yes**.  
Wait for the backup process to finish.
- 6 Select **OK**.
- 7 Select **Power off the system**
- 8 Remove the USB flash drive.
- 9 Restart the Processing Unit.

### Result

An updated copy of the latest system image is now stored on the USB flash drive.

## Restoring Processing Unit image from backup flash drive

You can restore the system image from the backup copy you made on a USB flash drive. Restoring the system image from the USB flash drive is useful if the system for some reason should fail.

### Prerequisites

You have created a USB flash drive with a copy of the system image.

This procedure is performed on the Processing Unit. A keyboard and a mouse must be connected to the Processing Unit in order to perform this procedure.

### Context

This procedure will stop all output from the system for about 15 minutes.

#### Note

---

*All settings and configurations on the unit on which the restore is performed, will be cleared and replaced by the contents of the USB flash drive with the system image backup.*

---

### Procedure

- 1 Select the **System** menu > **Shutdown** > **Processing Unit**.
- 2 Turn off the Processing Unit.
- 3 Insert the USB flash drive.
- 4 Turn on the Processing Unit.
- 5 Select **ISP Backup and Restore** (IBR) or wait 30 seconds for the program to open.
- 6 Select **System restore**.
- 7 Select **Yes**.  
Wait for the restore process to finish.
- 8 Select **OK**.
- 9 Remove the USB flash drive.
- 10 Turn on the Processing Unit.

### Result

A system identical to the one at the time the backup, was created.

## HMI Unit procedures

### Topics

[Preparing a USB flash drive for backup and restore purposes, page 144](#)

[Creating a backup of the HMI Unit on external USB device, page 145](#)

[Creating a backup of the HMI Unit on internal hard disk, page 147](#)

[Restoring image from external USB device, page 148](#)

[Restoring image from internal hard disk, page 149](#)

## Preparing a USB flash drive for backup and restore purposes

You must prepare a USB flash drive for backup and restore of the HMI Unit in the Seapath system.

### Prerequisites

A bootable recovery USB flash drive is included with the delivery. In case this drive is lost, a flash drive with at least 32 GB storage capacity may be used.

## Context

This procedure describes how to prepare a bootable USB flash drive, in case the HMI Unit recovery flash drive included with the delivery has been lost. A bootable flash drive is required to create bootable backup media. Multiple backups may be stored to the same bootable backup media.

## Procedure

- 1 Stop the operator software if it is running.
- 2 Stop the StxAppLauncher process from the Task Manager. Ctrl+Shift+Esc.
- 3 Insert the empty USB flash drive into the high speed port at the front of the HMI Unit.
- 4 Press the Windows key.
- 5 Select **Hard Disk Manager 16**.
- 6 Select **Paragon Hard Disk Manager 16**.
- 7 Select the **Home** tab.
- 8 Select **Recovery Media Builder**. Select **Next**.
- 9 Select **Removable Media Builder**.
- 10 Select the USB drive. Select **Next**.
- 11 Select **Yes** to accept writing the recovery environment to the USB flash drive. Select **Next**.  
The recovery media will now be created.
- 12 Select **Finish**.
- 13 Remove the USB flash drive.

## Creating a backup of the HMI Unit on external USB device

When the system installation has been verified, we recommend to perform a backup of the system installation. A backup can be created on a USB flash drive, a USB hard disk or the internal hard disk.

## Prerequisites

The USB device shall have at least 20 GB available space. It is strongly recommended that the backup is stored on an external bootable media in case the HMI Unit recovery flash drive included with the delivery has been lost.

## Note

---

*Be aware that the time required to create a USB flash drive backup depends on the quality and speed of the flash drive. The time required can be up to 45 minutes with a low quality flash drive.*

---

Use the left USB port on the HMI Unit when creating a backup, as this is a high speed port (10 GBit per second).

### Context

This procedure explains how to make a backup of the HMI Unit to an external USB device using the pre-installed Paragon HDM software.

If you create a backup of the HMI Unit to an external USB device, the backup will still be available in case of a disk failure.

### Procedure

- 1 Start the HDM software by pressing the Windows key.
- 2 Select **Hard Disk Manager 16 > Paragon Hard Disk Manager 16**.
- 3 Select the **Tools** menu > **Create single backup**.
- 4 On the **Welcome** page, select **Next**.
- 5 On the **Name** page, type a name and description for the backup. Select **Next**. Type extra information in the **Description** box if needed.
- 6 On the **Source** page, select **Files and folders**.
- 7 Select C, D and E disks.
- 8 For the D and E disks, make sure that only **System Volume Information** is selected.
- 9 Select **Next**.
- 10 On the **Target** page, select **External devices**. Select the USB flash drive or USB hard disk. Select **Next**.
- 11 On the **Finish** page you can review the backup summary. You can go back and make corrections if needed.
- 12 Select **Finish**.

The backup starts immediately. The backup to the USB flash drive may take up to 45 minutes to complete.

- 13 When the backup process has completed to 100 %, you should inspect the target media to make sure that the backup has been created.

In the Paragon HDM software you can select the backup entry to review the backup information.



## Creating a backup of the HMI Unit on internal hard disk

When the system installation has been verified, we recommend to perform a backup of the system installation. A backup can be created on a USB flash drive, a USB hard disk or the internal hard disk.

### Context

This procedure explains how to make a backup of the HMI Unit to the internal hard disk using the pre-installed Paragon HDM software.

### Note

---

*This backup will be unavailable in case of a total disk failure.*

---

A backup to the internal hard disk takes typically 5 minutes.

### Procedure

- 1 Start the HDM software by pressing the Windows key.
- 2 Select **Hard Disk Manager 16 > Paragon Hard Disk Manager 16**.
- 3 Select the **Tools** menu > **Create single backup**.
- 4 On the **Welcome** page, select **Next**.
- 5 On the **Name** page, type a name and description for the backup. Select **Next**. Type extra information in the **Description** box if needed.
- 6 On the **Source** page, select **Files and folders**.
- 7 Select C, D and E disks.
- 8 For the D and E disks, make sure that only **System Volume Information** is selected.
- 9 Select **Next**.
- 10 On the **Target** page, select **Local volumes > Data (E:)**.
- 11 On the **Finish** page you can review the backup summary. You can go back and make corrections if needed.
- 12 Select **Finish**.  
The backup starts immediately.
- 13 When the backup process has completed to 100 %, you should inspect the target media to make sure that the backup has been created.

In the Paragon HDM software you can select the backup entry to review the backup information.

## Restoring image from external USB device

If you experience problems with the system, or has a complete disk failure, you can restore the image of the HMI Unit from the USB flash drive or external USB hard disk with a copy of the HMI Unit.

### Prerequisites

The bootable USB device with a backup of the HMI Unit image must be available.

Make sure that the hard disk has at least 250 GB storage space.

### Context

The backup you created is a complete image of the system disk. The restore process has to be run from an external boot device.

### **WARNING**

---

***Do not try to restore from a backup created for the 2010 1U HMI Unit.***

---

### Procedure

- 1 Insert the USB recovery flash drive containing the wanted backup archive into the HMI Unit.
- 2 Turn on the HMI Unit.
- 3 Press and hold the **F12** key during start-up until the **Startup Device Menu** appears.
- 4 Select the USB HDD from the list. Press **Enter**.
- 5 Wait for the Paragon tool to load.  
  
This may take some time due to network auto-configuration in WinPE. Disconnect all Ethernet cables if you want to minimize boot time.
- 6 On the **Tools** menu, select **Restore backup**. Select **Next**.
- 7 Select **External devices**.
- 8 Locate the name of the backup you want to restore in the root of the USB flash drive. Select **Next**.
- 9 The **Check backup before restore** dialog box appears. To skip checking, select the **Skip backup integrity verification** box. Select **Skip**.
- 10 Under **Objects to restore**, select **Files and folders**. Select all available boxes. Select **Next**.
- 11 Under **What method should be used to restore the files?**, select **Restore files to the original location while overwriting files with identical names**. Select **Next**.
- 12 Select **Finish**.  
  
The restore process will start. Wait for the process to complete to 100 %.
- 13 Select **Close**.

- 14 Remove the USB recovery flash drive. Store the flash drive in a safe place.
- 15 Select **Restart** from the **Shutdown/Restart** button in the upper right corner.

## Restoring image from internal hard disk

If you experience problems with the system, you can restore the image of the HMI Unit from the USB flash drive or USB hard disk with a copy of the HMI Unit.

### Procedure

- 1 Start the HDM software by pressing the Windows key.
- 2 Select **Hard Disk Manager 16 > Paragon Hard Disk Manager 16**.
- 3 Select the **Tools** menu > **Restore backup**. Select **Next**.
- 4 Select **Local volumes**.
- 5 Locate the name of the backup from **Data (E:)**. Select **Next**.
- 6 The **Check backup before restore** dialog box appears. To skip checking, select the **Skip backup integrity verification** box. Select **Skip**.
- 7 Under **Objects to restore**, select **Files and folders**. Select all available boxes. Select **Next**.
- 8 Under **What method should be used to restore the files?**, select **Restore files to the original location while overwriting files with identical names**. Select **Next**.
- 9 Select **Finish**.  
The restore process will start. Wait for the process to complete to 100 %.
- 10 Select **Close**.
- 11 Select **Restart** from the **Shutdown/Restart** button in the upper right corner.

# Drawings

## Topics

[About the drawings, page 150](#)

[Processing Unit dimensions, page 151](#)

[HMI Unit dimensions, page 153](#)

[GNSS antenna dimensions, page 154](#)

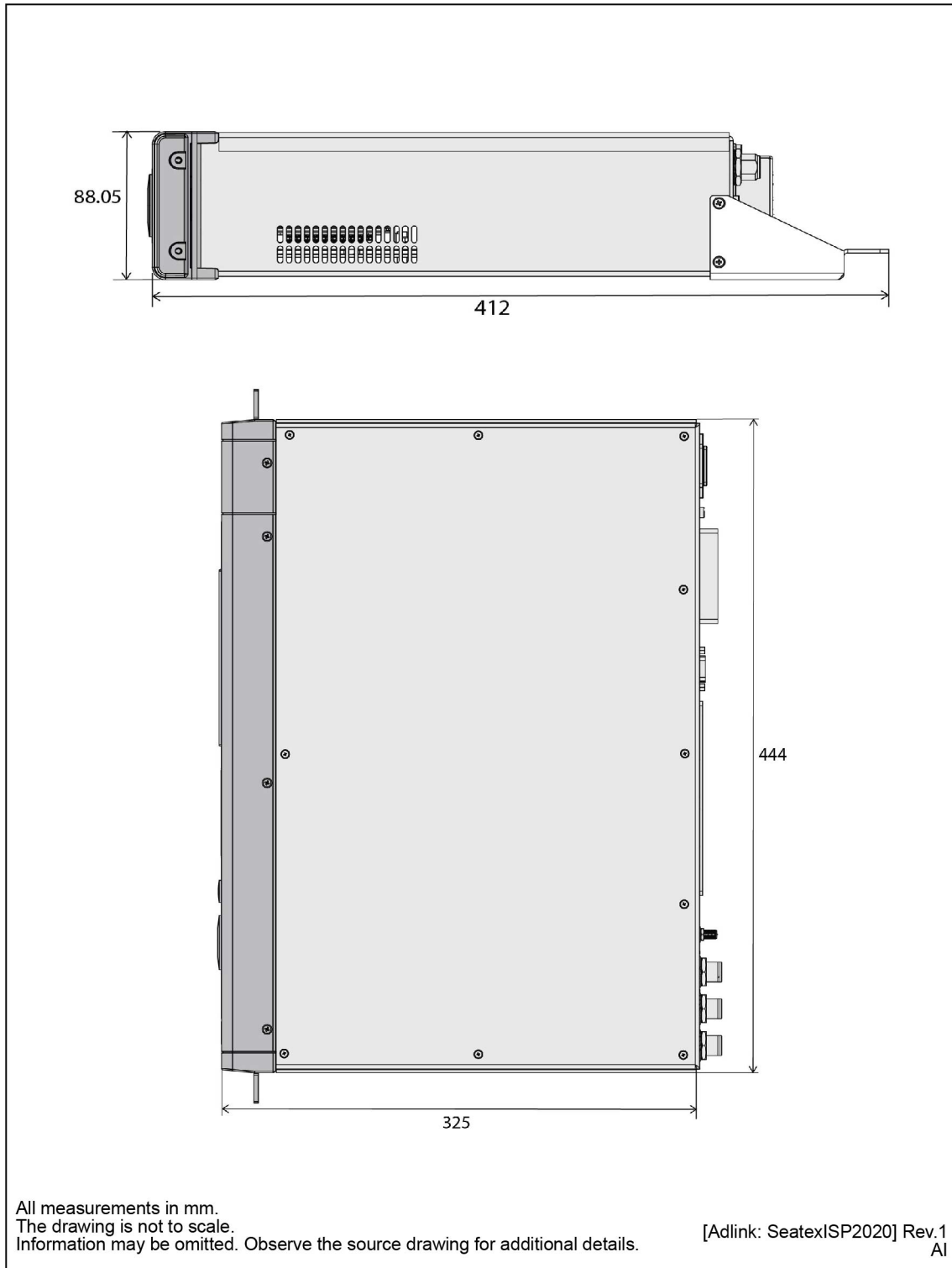
## About the drawings

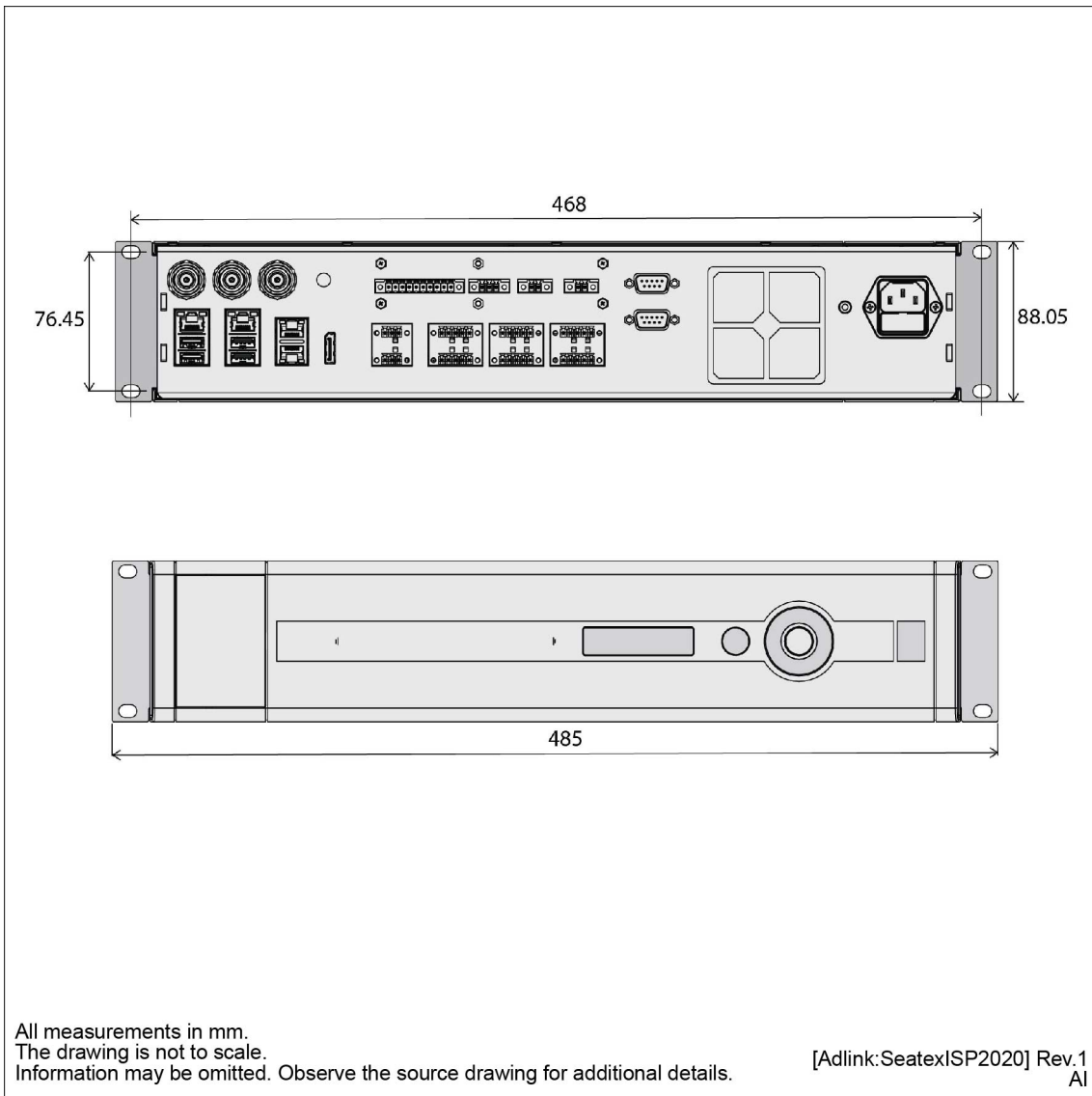
These drawings are for information and planning purposes only.

Unless otherwise specified, all measurements are in millimetres. The drawings are not to scale.

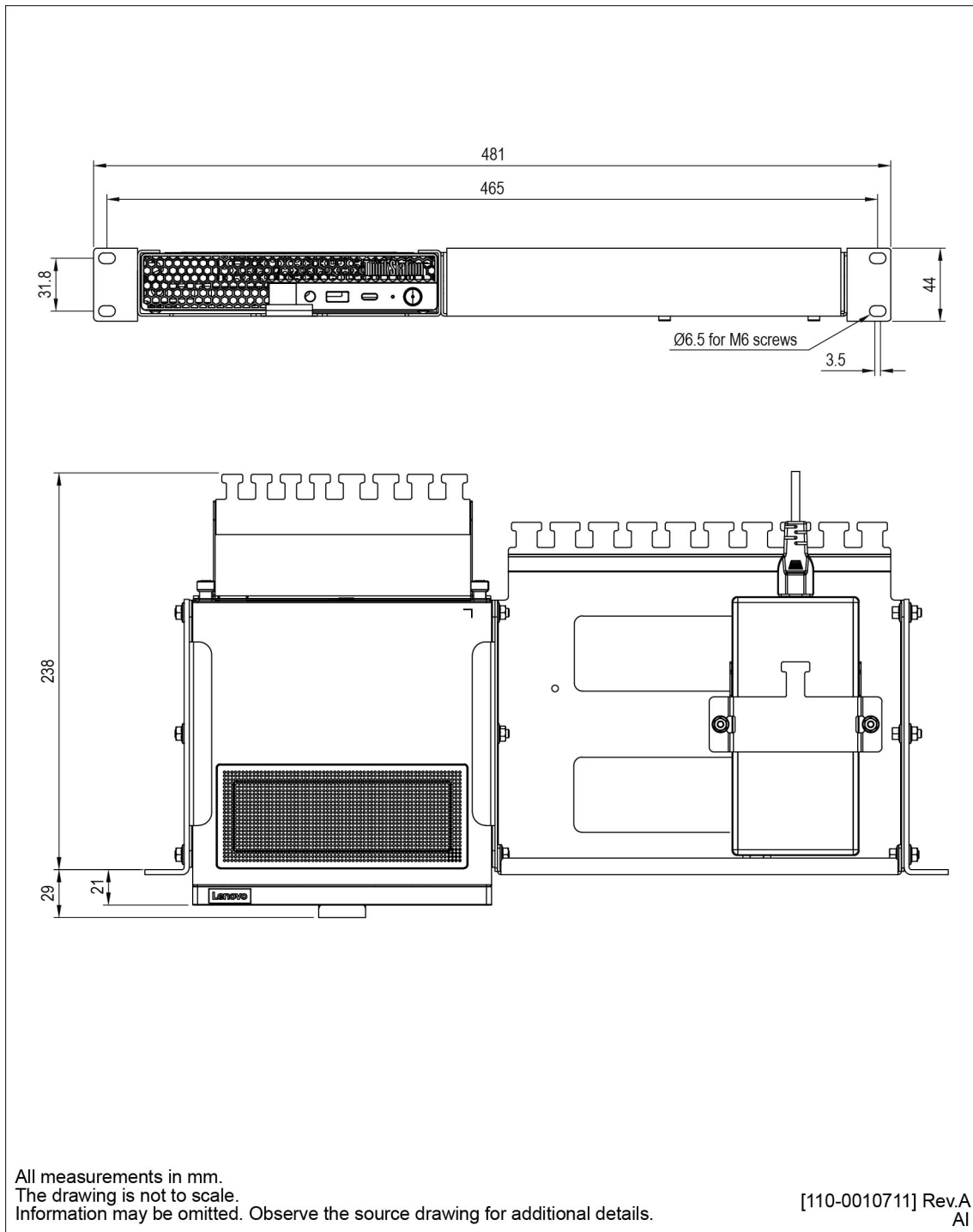
Information may be omitted. Observe the source drawings for additional details.

## Processing Unit dimensions



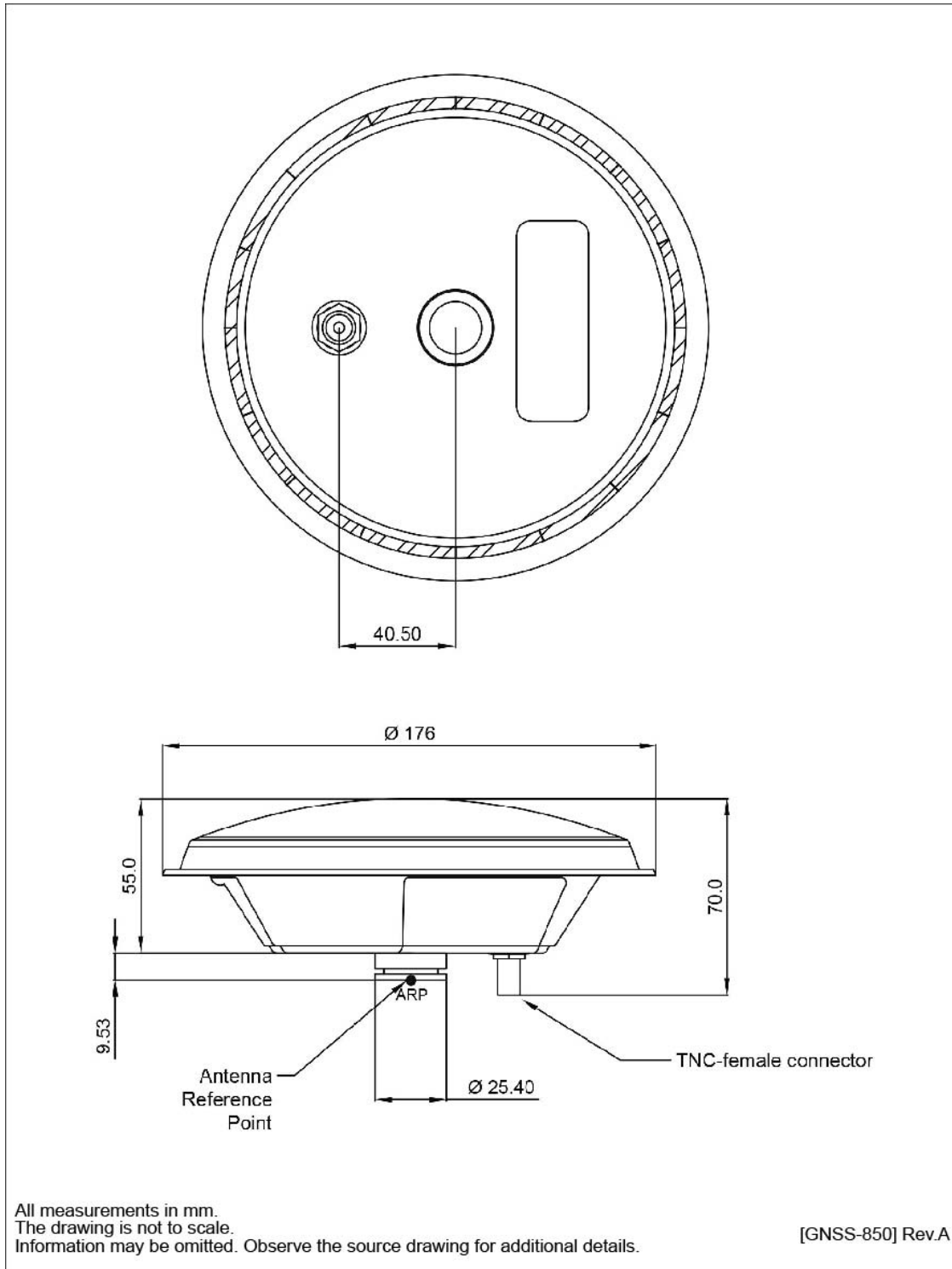


## HMI Unit dimensions



## GNSS antenna dimensions

NovAtel GNSS-850





# Technical specifications

## Topics

[Performance specifications, page 155](#)

[Interface specifications, page 158](#)

[Weights and outline dimensions, page 158](#)

[Power specifications, page 159](#)

[Environmental specifications, page 160](#)

[Frequency specifications, page 161](#)

[Data output specifications, page 161](#)

[Data input specifications, page 162](#)

[Datum specifications, page 162](#)

[Cable specifications, page 162](#)

[Manufacturer's conformity declaration, page 164](#)

[NMEA telegram output options, page 165](#)

## Performance specifications

### Roll and pitch

#### MRU

- **Roll and pitch accuracy  $\pm 5^\circ$  amplitude:** 0.010° RMS - Seapath 385-3
- **Roll and pitch accuracy  $\pm 5^\circ$  amplitude:** 0.008° RMS - Seapath 385-5
- **Roll and pitch accuracy  $\pm 5^\circ$  amplitude:** 0.005° RMS - Seapath 385-5+

#### MGC

- **Roll and pitch accuracy  $\pm 5^\circ$  amplitude:** 0.008° RMS - Seapath 385-R2

- **Roll and pitch accuracy  $\pm 5^\circ$  amplitude:** 0.007° RMS - Seapath 385-R3
- **Roll and pitch accuracy  $\pm 5^\circ$  amplitude:** 0.005° RMS - Seapath 385-R4

All roll and pitch values are with Automatic Online Calibration (AOC).

### Heading accuracy

#### MRU

- **Heading accuracy with 2.5-metre antenna baseline:** 0.07° RMS - Seapath 385-3
- **Heading accuracy with 2.5-metre antenna baseline:** 0.04° RMS - Seapath 385-5 and 5+
- **Heading accuracy with 4-metre antenna baseline:** 0.05° RMS - Seapath 385-3
- **Heading accuracy with 4-metre antenna baseline:** 0.03° RMS - Seapath 385-5
- **Heading accuracy with 4-metre antenna baseline:** 0.02° RMS - Seapath 385-5+

#### MGC

- **Heading accuracy with 2.5-metre antenna baseline:** 0.03° RMS - Seapath 385-R2
- **Heading accuracy with 2.5-metre antenna baseline:** 0.02° RMS - Seapath 385-R3
- **Heading accuracy with 2.5-metre antenna baseline:** 0.01° RMS - Seapath 385-R4
- **Heading accuracy with 4-metre antenna baseline:** 0.02° RMS - Seapath 385-R2
- **Heading accuracy with 4-metre antenna baseline:** 0.01° RMS - Seapath 385-R3
- **Heading accuracy with 4-metre antenna baseline:** 0.007° RMS - Seapath 385-R4

### Heave accuracy and heave motion

#### MRU

- **Heave accuracy (real-time output):** 5 cm or 5 %, whichever is highest (RMS)
- **Heave motion periods (real-time output):** 0 - 18 seconds - Seapath 385-3
- **Heave motion periods (real-time output):** 0 - 25 seconds - Seapath 385-5 and 5+
- **Heave accuracy for 10 s motion period (real-time output):** 2 cm or 2 %, whichever is highest (RMS) - Seapath 385-3
- **Heave accuracy for 10 s motion period (real-time output):** 1 cm or 1 %, whichever is highest (RMS) - Seapath 385-5 and 5+
- **Heave accuracy (delayed signal, PFreeHeave®):** 1 cm or 1 %, whichever is highest (RMS)
- **Heave motion periods (delayed signal, PFreeHeave®):** 0 - 50 seconds

#### MGC

- **Heave accuracy (real-time output):** 5 cm or 5 %, whichever is highest (RMS) - Seapath 385-R2, R3 and R4
- **Heave motion periods (real-time output):** 0 - 25 seconds - Seapath R2, R3 and R4
- **Heave accuracy for 10 s motion period (real-time output):** 1 cm or 1 %, whichever is highest (RMS) - Seapath R2, R3 and R4

- **Heave accuracy (delayed signal, PFreeHeave®):** 1 cm or 1 %, whichever is highest (RMS) - Seapath R2, R3 and R4
- **Heave motion periods (delayed signal, PFreeHeave®):** 0 - 50 seconds

### Position accuracy

#### MRU/MGC

- **Position accuracy with DGNS:** 0.5 m RMS or 1 m 95 % CEP
- **Position accuracy with SBAS:** 0.5 m RMS or 1 m 95 % CEP
- **Position accuracy with Fugro Seastar® XP2/G2/G2+/G4/G4+:** 0.05 m RMS or 0.1 m 95 % CEP
- **Position accuracy with VERIPOS Ultra/Ultra2:** 0.05 m RMS or 0.1 m 95 % CEP
- **Position accuracy with C-NavC1, C-NavC2:** 0.05 m RMS or 0.1 m 95 % CEP
- **Position accuracy with RTK (x and y):** 1 cm + 1 ppm RMS

The accuracy is dependent on GPS satellite geometry, environment, ionospheric conditions and distance to the reference station. Excessive multipath, GPS signal obstructions or interference may also reduce the performance.

- **Position accuracy with RTK (z):** 2 cm + 1 ppm RMS

The accuracy is dependent on GPS satellite geometry, environment, ionospheric conditions and distance to the reference station. Excessive multipath, GPS signal obstructions or interference may also reduce the performance.

### Position drift, horizontal

#### MRU

- **Typical position drift 1 minute after GNSS dropout (RTK):** 1.6 m, Seapath 385-3
- **Typical position drift 1 minute after GNSS dropout (RTK):** 0.6 m, Seapath 385-5
- **Typical position drift 1 minute after GNSS dropout (RTK):** 0.3 m, Seapath 385-5+

#### MGC

- **Typical position drift 1 minute after GNSS dropout (RTK):** 0.6 m, Seapath 385-R2
- **Typical position drift 1 minute after GNSS dropout (RTK):** 0.2 m, Seapath 385-R3
- **Typical position drift 1 minute after GNSS dropout (RTK):** 0.08 m, Seapath 385-R4

### Velocity accuracy

#### MRU/MGC

- **Velocity accuracy:** 0.03 m/s RMS or 0.07 m/s 95 % CEP

## Interface specifications

### Processing Unit

- **Serial ports:** 6 non-dedicated isolated ports, RS-232/RS-422\*)  
Isolated COM 1 and COM 2, 9-pin D-Sub, RS-232  
\*) The number of serial ports can be expanded by using a serial port extender.
- **Baud rate:** Up to 115 200 bytes/sec
- **LAN:** 5 Ethernet ports
- **USB:** 2 USB 2.0, 3 USB 3.0

### HMI Unit

- **LAN:** 5 ports, rear
- **USB:** 1 port, front; 4 ports, rear
- **USB C:** 1 port, front

## Weights and outline dimensions

### Processing Unit

- **Outline dimensions:**
  - **Depth:**
    - \* **Minimum:** 357 mm (Includes connectors on the rear panel)
    - \* **Maximum:** 412 mm (Includes cable relief bracket)
  - **Width:** 485 mm (Will fit in a 19" rack)
  - **Height:** 88.1 mm (2U)
- **Weight:** 5.4 kg

### HMI Unit

- **Outline dimensions:**
  - **Depth:** 267 mm
  - **Width:** 481 mm
  - **Height:** 44 mm
- **Weight:** 3.6 kg

### GNSS antenna

- **Make and model:** NovAtel GNSS-850

- **Outline dimensions:**
  - **Diameter:** 176 mm
  - **Height:** 55 mm
- **Weight:** 0.5 kg
- **Connector:** TNC connector (Female)

#### **Antenna mounting bracket, 2.5 metres**

- **Part number:** M320-21
- **Outline dimensions:**
  - **Length:** 2560 mm
  - **Width:** 75 mm
  - **Height:** 40 mm
- **Weight:** 6.6 kg

## **Power specifications**

### **Processing Unit**

- **Voltage:** 100 – 240 VAC, 50/60 Hz
- **Power consumption:** 75 W (Maximum)  
The power consumption shown is with the Inertial Measurement Unit connected.
- **Power backup:** None. Connection to UPS recommended.

### **HMI Unit**

- **Voltage:** 100 - 240 VAC, 50/60 Hz
- **Power consumption:** 170 W (Maximum)
- **Power backup:** None. Connection to UPS recommended.

### **GNSS antenna**

- **Make and model:** NovAtel GNSS-850
- **Input voltage:** +3.8 - +18 VDC  
5 VDC is supplied by the Processing Unit.
- **Current:** 60 mA (Max.)

## Environmental specifications

### Processing Unit

- **Operating temperature:** -15 - 55 °C  
Do not operate for more than 10 hours at maximum temperature.
- **Recommended operating temperature:** Room temperature (20 °C)
- **Storage temperature:** -20 - 70 °C  
Long term storage temperature: 5 - 35 °C (Recommended)
- **Operating humidity:** 5 - 95 % relative, non-condensing
- **Storage humidity:** < 55%
- **Ingress protection (IP) code:**
  - **Front:** IP42
  - **Rear:** IP21
- **Standards:**
  - **Electromagnetic compatibility:** IEC 60945/EN 60945 (Immunity and radiation), IACS E10
  - **Vibration:** IEC 60945/EN 60945, IACS E10
- **Enclosure material:** Aluminium
- **MTBF (designed for):** 100 000 h

### HMI Unit

- **Operating temperature:** 5 - 35 °C
- **Recommended operating temperature:** Room temperature (20 °C)
- **Storage temperature:** -10 - 40 °C
- **Relative humidity:** 10 - 90 %, non-condensing
- **Storage humidity:** 10 - 90 %, non-condensing
- **Type approval:** Type approved by ABS, BV, CCS, DNV, KR, LR, RS, NKK, PRS and RINA. IACS E10 and IEC 60945.

### GNSS antenna

- **Make and model:** NovAtel GNSS-850
- **Operating temperature:** -40 - 85 °C
- **Storage temperature range:** -55 - 85 °C
- **Humidity:** 95% non-condensing
- **Ingress protection:** IP69K

**Related topics**[Storage, page 246](#)

## Frequency specifications

**GNSS antenna**

- **Make and model:** NovAtel GNSS-850
- **Upper band:**  $1569 \pm 43$  MHz
- **Lower band:**  $1232 \pm 68$  MHz
- **LNA gain:** 29 dB (typical)

**GNSS receiver**

- **GPS:** L1, L2, L5
- **GLONASS:** L1, L2, L3, L5
- **Galileo:** E1, E5 a/b, E6
- **BeiDou:** B1, B2, B3
- **QZSS:** L1, L2, L5, L6

## Data output specifications

**Processing Unit**

- **Message format:**
  - Simrad EM 3000
  - Seapath binary format 26
  - Calibration format
  - Echo sounder format 9 and 18, TSS1
  - RD Instrument ADCP proprietary NMEA format "PRDID"
  - KM binary
  - 1 PPS time tag, NMEA ZDA message and Trimble compatible messages
  - RTCM v3, raw GNSS output
  - PFreeHeave<sup>®</sup> format
  - IMU raw data output
  - Post-processing1

- NMEA 0183 v3.0, Proprietary
- **Message types NMEA:**
  - DTM, GBS, GGA, GLL, GNS, GRS, GSA, GST, GSV, HDT, RMC, ROT, THS, VBW, VER, VTG, ZDA.
  - NMEA proprietary: PSXN20, PSXN21, PSXN22, PSXN23, PSXN24, PBF.

#### **Related topics**

[Setting up the Telegram out interface, page 113](#)

[Telegram specifications, page 177](#)

## Data input specifications

- **DGNSS corrections:** Seastar® XP2, Seastar® G2/G2+/G4/G4+, RTCM-SC104 v. 2.2, 2.3, 3.0 and 3.2, VERIPOS Ultra/Ultra<sup>2</sup>, C-NavC<sup>1</sup>, C-NavC<sup>2</sup>, Trimble CMR
- **Gyro compass:** NMEA 0183 HDM, HDT, HRC, PSXN10, PSXN23, Robertson LR22 BCD format, EM3000
- **Display control:** Display Dimming and Control (DDC)

#### **Related topics**

[Telegram specifications, page 177](#)

## Datum specifications

#### **Processing Unit**

- **Datum types:** NAD27, ED50, WGS84, MINNA, ARATU Bahia, ARATU Campos, ARATU ES, ARATU Santos, SIRGAS2000 and CAMACUPA.

Up to five user defined datums.

These datum types can only be selected if the corrections input to the product are in WGS84. Or if no corrections are input.

#### **Related topics**

[Setting up the Telegram out interface, page 113](#)

## Cable specifications

#### **Data cable**

Specifications for cables connected to the communication ports.



- **Clamping range:** 0.08 - 1.50 mm<sup>2</sup> (Maximum)
- **Cable types:** 0.50 - 1.50 mm<sup>2</sup>
  - Solid H05(07) V-U
  - Stranded H07 V-R
  - Flexible H05(07) V-K
  - Flexible with ferrule
  - Flexible with plastic collar
- **Stripping length:** 6.0 mm

#### **Cable from Processing Unit to IMU Junction box**

- **Type:** 4 x 2 x 0.75 mm<sup>2</sup>, individually shielded, twisted pairs
- **Diameter:** 13 mm (±1 mm)
- **Flame retardation:** IEC 332-3/A

#### **GNSS antenna cable**

- **Type:** ½" superflex 50 BHF
- **Attenuation:** 14 dB/100 m (at 1.6 GHz)
- **Length:** 100 m, max. length (each cable)
- **Diameter:** 13.5 mm
- **Bend radius:** 30 mm, max.
- **Flame retardation:** IEC 60332-3
- **Coax connectors:** Huber+Suhner 11\_N-50-9-9

If the antenna cables are not delivered by Kongsberg Discovery, make sure that the cables meet the following electrical specifications.

- **Insertion loss:** 15 dB (at 1.6 GHz), max.
- **Characteristic impedance:** 50 ohm (nominal)

The antenna connectors on the Processing Unit are of N-type male. On the GNSS antennas both TNC-type female and N-type female are available. Optionally, an interconnection cable for transfer of connector type from TNC on the antenna to N-type on the antenna cable, can be delivered.

#### **Related topics**

[Installing antenna cables, recommendations, page 29](#)

[Cabling for the rack units, page 65](#)

[Terminating the Processing Unit to MGC COMPASS junction box cable, page 68](#)

[Terminating the Processing Unit to MGC/MRU junction box cable, page 73](#)

# Manufacturer's conformity declaration

This product is in compliance with relevant directives and product standards.



KONGSBERG

## EU DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Manufacturer's name: **Kongsberg Discovery AS**  
Manufacturer's address: **Havnegata 9, N-7010 Trondheim, Norway**

declares that the product:

Product name: **Seapath 385 series**  
Models: **Seapath 385 and Seapath 385-R**

is in conformity with the **Radio Equipment Directive, RED, 2014/53/EU** and with reference to ETSI guide **ETSI EG 203 367**, using relevant sections of the following product standards:

Essential Requirements	Standards
Health and Safety (Article 3.1(a))	EN 61010-1:2010/A1:2019/AC:2019-04
EMC (Article 3.1(b))	IEC/EN 60945:2002 + Corr1:2008
Spectrum (Article 3.2)	ETSI EN 303 413 V1.2.1 (2021-04) ETSI EN 300 330 V2.1.1 (2017-02)

### Test References

Report EMC: E22068.00, issued by Nemko Scandinavia AS.  
Report Spectrum: 459605-01-R00, issued by Nemko Scandinavia AS.  
Report Safety: ISP2020\_Safety\_001, issued by Kongsberg Seatex AS.

### RoHS

To the best of our knowledge and with reference to standard **EN IEC 63000:2018**, the product is compliant with Directive **2011/65/EU** as amended by Commission Delegated Directive **EU 2015/863**.

### Supplementary Information

The Seapath 385 series contains GNSS receivers compliant to **RED directive 2014/53/EU**.

Date and signature  
2024-02-06

Finn Otto Sanne, Product Line Manager

Doc item: 110-0062663/A

## NMEA telegram output options

When you set up the **TelegramOut** interface, the contents of some of the available NMEA telegrams may be modified according to options listed in the **Options** list in the NAVEngine configuration. This is for example useful when interfacing to older equipment.

This list holds a description of the various options.

### **Output residuals on Ashtech RRE format (GRS)**

Use this option if you have enabled the GRS sentence and want the residuals output on the Ashtech RRE format instead.

### **Send VHW message after VTG using ground speed from VTG**

Use this option when a VHW sentence is needed, and vessel heading and vessel speed relative to the water are not available. When this option is enabled, an NMEA VHW sentence is output, using SOG as Speed, and COG as heading. The VHW sentence is output immediately after the VTG sentence.

### **Output empty fields in NMEA HDT and NMEA THS messages also for reduced accuracy**

Use this option when you want to set invalid heading (empty HDT/THS field) when heading status is reduced (low accuracy).

### **Use inertial roll, pitch and heave only**

Use this option if you want the output of roll, pitch and heave to be calculated from IMU measurements only (no GNSS).

### **Use time from dataset in NMEA ZDA message**

GNSS systems: Use this option if you want the time stamp in the NMEA ZDA message to be equal to the time stamp of the GNSS data set and the GGA message.

### **Disable additional GNS messages when diffcorr is used for both GPS and GLONASS**

Use this option if you do not want additional NMEA messages if differential corrections are used for both GPS and GLONASS.

### **Limit correction age to 9.9 sec in GGA**

Use this option if your system does not handle correction ages above 9.9 seconds in the GGA sentence. If this option is enabled, the correction age will increase and stop at 9.9 seconds even if the correct correction age is more than 9.9 seconds.

### **Use GNSS solution only**

Integrated systems only: Use this option if you want to output position based on GNSS only (no IMU).

### **Set GGA quality indicator to 5 if converged high precision**

Use this option if you want the Quality Indicator in the NMEA GGA sentence set to 5, when position solution is converged clock orbit or float filter (XP, G2, Ultra, Apex etc).

**Freeze NMEA position if invalid**

Use this option if you want the position output to use the last known valid position when the current position becomes invalid.

**Use current GNSS info if only integrated position is valid**

Integrated systems only: Use this option if you want to output current HDOP, number of satellites and corrections age in the GGA message though the GNSS position is invalid and the integrated position is valid.

**Allow more than 12 satellites in GGA message**

The NMEA standard limits the number of satellites in the GGA sentence to 12. Use this option if you want the GGA sentence to use the actual number of satellites.

**Use modified quality indicator in GGA message**

Use this option if you want the quality indicator in the NMEA GGA sentence to be replaced by GQI.

**Use external attitude for lever arm compensation**

Use this option if you want to use external attitude for lever arm compensation and velocity decomposition.

**Use DQI(0-9) as GGA quality indicator**

DP only: Use this option if you want to use talker DP and output DQI instead of NMEA Quality Indicator for GGA.

**Send each NMEA telegram in separate UDP datagram**

Use this option if TelegramOut is configured to send on UDP, and you want each NMEA telegram to be sent in a separate UDP telegram.

**Use 2 decimals instead of 1 for velocity in NMEA VTG and RMC**

Use this option if you want the velocity field in NMEA VTG and NMEA RMC messages to contain 2 decimals instead of the default 1.

**Stop GGA, GLL, GNS and RMC output if invalid position**

Use this option if you want the output of the position telegrams to stop if the position is invalid.

# Interface descriptions

## Topics

[Processing Unit interfaces, page 167](#)

[HMI Unit interfaces, page 175](#)

## Processing Unit interfaces

### Topics

[Front interfaces Processing Unit, page 168](#)

[Rear interfaces Processing Unit, page 168](#)

[RS-422 A and B signal definition, page 169](#)

[COM 1 and COM 2, page 170](#)

[Rear panel ports, page 170](#)

[Ethernet connection, page 174](#)

## Front interfaces Processing Unit

The power on/off switch, local area network (LAN) port and USB connection are located behind the lid to the left on the front panel. Push lid on left side to open.

LAN 5 is type RJ-45, 10/100/1000 Mbits/s.



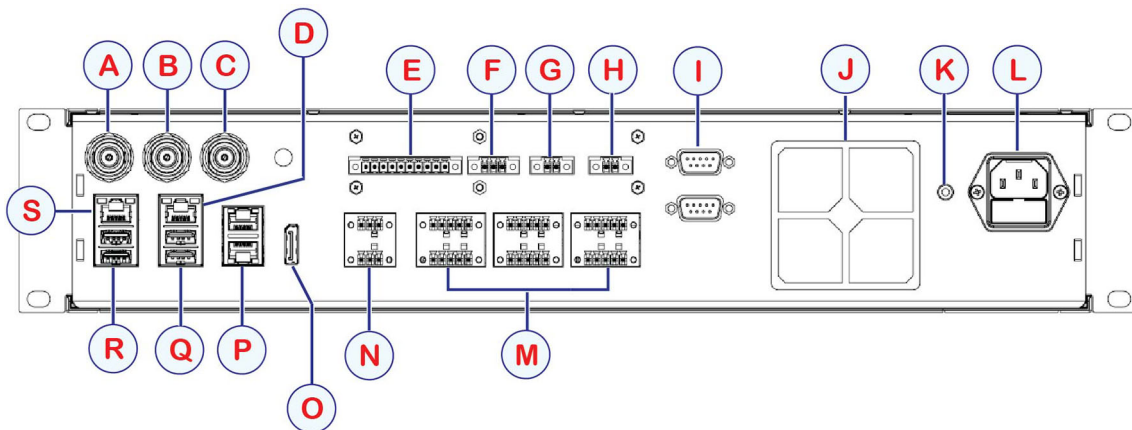
Connector name	Connector type	Connected to
LAN 5	RJ-45, 10/100/1000 Mbit/s	For support purposes
USB	USB 3.0	For software update and data logging

## Rear interfaces Processing Unit

The rear panel of the unit contains communication interface ports for interfacing to external equipment. These ports are individually galvanically isolated.

Note

*All terminal pin numbering goes from left (no. 1) to right.*



	Connector name	Connector type	Connected to
A	GNSS 1	N connector 50 Ohm female	GNSS antenna
B	GNSS 2	N connector 50 Ohm female	DPS i2, i3, i4: Not used in this system, DPS i6: GNSS antenna
C	Not in use	N/A	N/A

	Connector name	Connector type	Connected to
D	LAN 2	RJ-45, 10/100/1000 Mbit/s	User configurable
E	MRU	10-pin terminal, RS-422	MGC or MRU
F	ALARM	3-pin terminal, Relay	External alarm system
G	D1	2-pin terminal	When activated from external device, DGNSS/GNSS power is turned off
H	D2	2-pin terminal	Spare input
I	COM 1	9-pin DSub male, RS-232	User configurable
I	COM 2	9-pin DSub male, RS-232	User configurable
K	GND	Ground	Ground
L	Power	100 - 240 VAC	Input of 100 - 240 VAC
M	COM 9	5-pin terminal, RS-232/422	User configurable
M	COM 10	5-pin terminal, RS-232/422	User configurable
M	COM 11	5-pin terminal, RS-232/422	User configurable
M	COM 12	5-pin terminal, RS-232/422	User configurable
M	COM 13	5-pin terminal, RS-232/422	User configurable
M	COM 14	5-pin terminal, RS-232/422	User configurable
N	1PPS	2 x 3-pin terminal	External equipment
O	DP	Display Port	Not used in this system
P	LAN 3	RJ-45, 10/100/1000 Mbit/s	User configurable
P	LAN 4	RJ-45, 10/100/1000 Mbit/s	User configurable
Q	USB 2.0	USB 2.0	Keyboard/Mouse
Q	USB 2.0	USB 2.0	Keyboard/Mouse
R	USB 3.0	USB 3.0	User configurable
R	USB 3.0	USB 3.0	User configurable
S	LAN 1	RJ-45, 10/100/1000 Mbit/s	HMI Unit and serial port extender

## RS-422 A and B signal definition

Signal state definition according to the IEC 61162-1 standard from the International Electrotechnical Committee.

The idle, marking, logical 1, OFF or stop bit states are defined by a negative voltage on line A with respect to line B. The active, spacing, logical 0, ON or start bit states are defined by a positive voltage on line A with respect to line B. It should be noted that the above A with respect to B levels are inverted from the voltage input/output requirements of standard UARTs and that many line drivers and receivers provide a logic inversion.

With reference to the table showing the pin layout for the serial ports on the rear panel screw terminals, note that the separate GND (ground) pin for each port is isolated from the chassis and shall act as a common signal intended to be connected between the talker

(-TX) and the listener side (RX) of other equipment, for example the corresponding isolated GND (ground) pin or common pin. The purpose of the common signal is to increase the reliability of the hardware transmission. It must not be connected to the chassis or the cable screen. This applies to both sides of a connection. The cable screen shall be connected to the equipment chassis on one side only, preferably talker side, -TX.

## COM 1 and COM 2

COM 1 and COM 2 at the rear of the Processing Unit are 9-pin DSub male. These ports are RS-232 only. They are not NMEA 0183 electrical compliant ports.

These ports are not intended for use with long cables. They should only be used internally in the rack.

### Note

---

*The COM 1 and COM 2 ports are not as accurate with regard to timing as COM 9 to COM 14. Thus they are not recommended used for timing critical outputs.*

---

The table shows the pin layout on the COM 1 and COM 2 ports.

<b>Pin no.</b>	<b>RS-232</b>	<b>Pin no.</b>	<b>RS-232</b>
1	DCD1	6	DSR1
2	RXD1	7	RTS1
3	TXD1	8	CTS1
4	DTR1	9	RI1
5	GND		

## Rear panel ports

The illustration shows the screw terminal pin layout for the ports located on the rear panel.

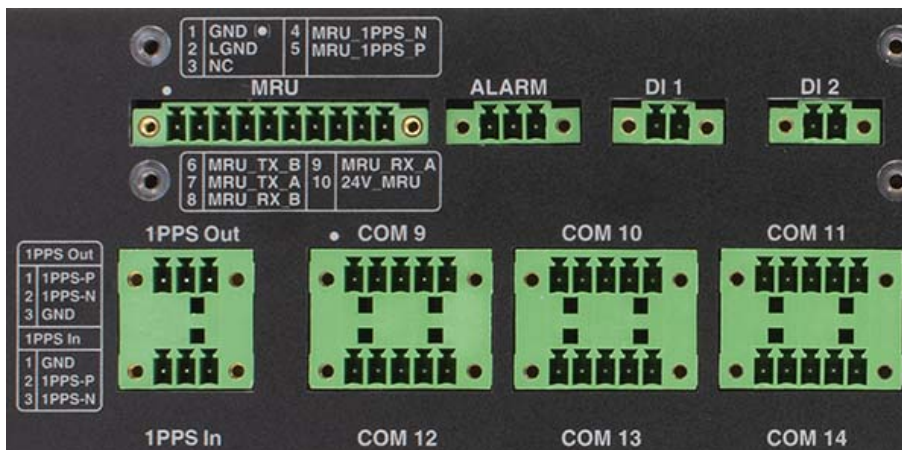
### Note

---

*All terminal pin numbering goes from left (no. 1) to right.*

---





## MRU

The MRU connector is used for power and interface to the Inertial Measurement Units, MGC or MRU. Usually when an MGC or an MRU is connected to a Processing Unit, a junction box is used to make the wiring easier.

The table shows the pin layout of the MRU terminal.

Pin no.	Signal
1	GND
2	LGND
3	NC
4	MRU_1PPS_N
5	MRU_1PPS_P
6	MRU_TX_B
7	MRU_TX_A
8	MRU_RX_B
9	MRU_RX_A
10	24V_MRU

### Note

*The A and B lines for RX and TX are reversed compared to the older HWP2010 Processing Unit.*

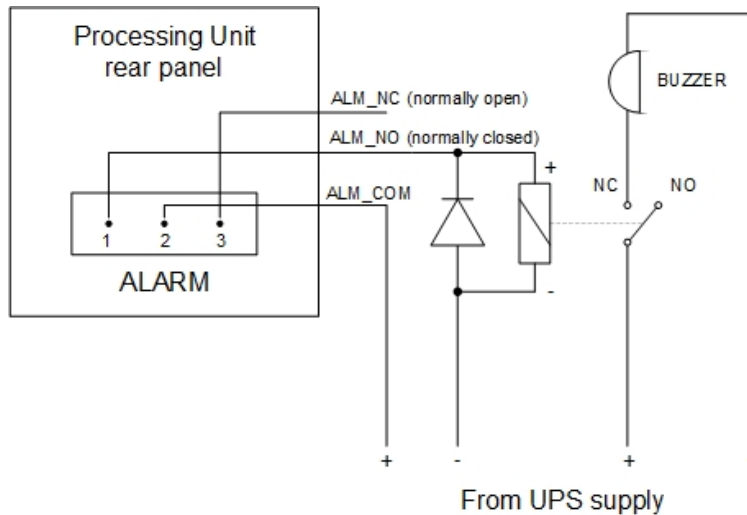
## Alarm signal

The Processing Unit has a built-in alarm functionality. It can be connected to an external alarm. An alarm will open the alarm relay. The alarm relay can be used to trigger an external alarm. The external alarm can be connected to the 3-pin ALARM terminal.

The table shows the pin layout of the ALARM terminal.

Pin no.	Signal
1	Alarm_NO
2	Alarm_Com
3	Alarm_NC

The illustration shows how an external alarm can be connected to the ALARM terminal at the rear of the Processing Unit.



### 1PPS signal

A 1 pulse-per-second (1PPS) signal synchronized with GNSS time is available from the PPS port at the rear of the Processing Unit. The port has galvanic separation. This 1PPS signal originates from the GNSS receiver within the Processing Unit. The 1PPS signal is buffered and fed to the terminal at 120 Ohm. The 1PPS signal is active high and has a pulse width of 10 ms. The 1PPS is generated exactly once every second with its rising edge synchronised to GPS time.

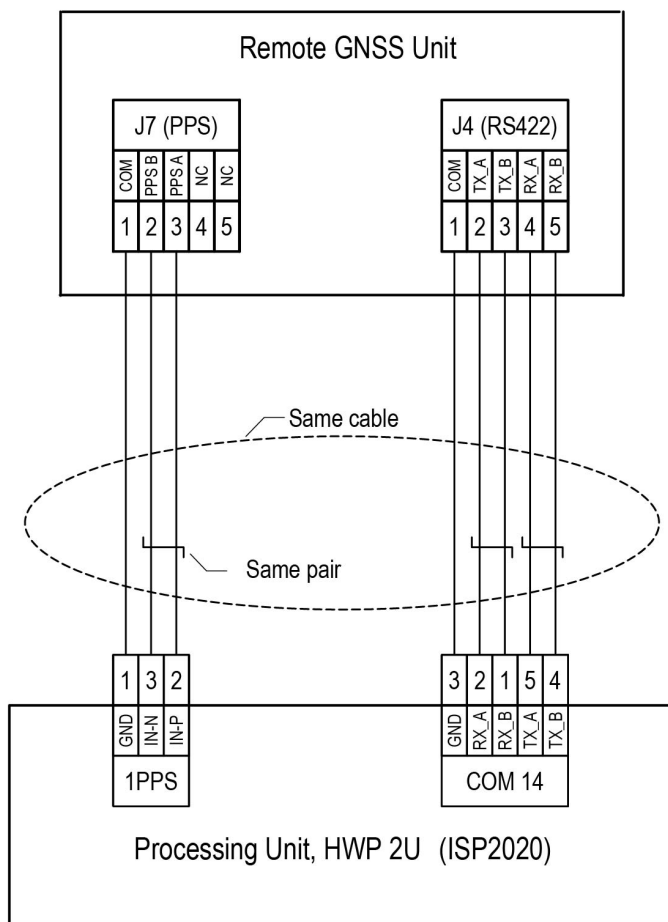
Both the positive P and the negative N signal shall be connected for long cables. For example cables outside the rack.

The table shows the pin layout on the 1PPS port.

Pin no.	Signal name	Direction (Port)	Edge	Compatibility (description on old HW, HWP2010)
1	1PPS P	1PPS Out	Rising	1PPS TX_A
2	1PPS N	1PPS Out	Falling	1PPS TX_B
3	GND isolated	1PPS Out		GND isolated
1	GND isolated	1PPS In		GND isolated

Pin no.	Signal name	Direction (Port)	Edge	Compatibility (description on old HW, HWP2010)
2	1PPS P	1PPS In *)	Rising	1PPS RX_A
3	1PPS N	1PPS In *)	Falling	1PPS RX_B

\*) When a Remote GNSS Unit is used, the 1PPS signal from the remote unit shall be connected to this input port.



### Serial lines

This system communicates with external equipment through the RS-232 or RS-422 configurable serial input and output lines.

The table shows the pin layout of the serial input and output lines.

Pin no.	Signal name	
	RS-422	RS-232
1	RX_B	CTS
2	RX_A	RX
3	GND	GND

Pin no.	Signal name	
4	TX_B	RTS
5	TX_A	TX

**Note**

*The A and B lines for RX and TX are reversed compared to the older HWP2010 Processing Unit.*

---

## Ethernet connection

The unit has the possibility to input and output data on individually configurable network ports. The format and update rate are configured for each port in the **NAV Engine Configuration** dialog box.

The unit has five Ethernet connections (LAN). LAN 1, LAN 2, LAN 3 and LAN 4 at the rear of the unit. LAN 5 at the front of the unit.

### LAN 1 to 5

These local area networks (LAN) are high capacity (10/100/1000 Mbps). They are of type auto crossover and auto-negotiation.

The table shows the pin layout for these LANs connected to different network capacities.

10/1000 or 100/1000 Mbps Ethernet			1000/1000 Mbps Ethernet		
Pin no.	Signal	Description	Pin no.	Signal	Description
1	TX_DA+	Transceive data +	1	BI_DA+	Bi-directional pair +A
2	TX_DA-	Transceive data –	2	BI_DA-	Bi-directional pair –A
3	RX_DB+	Receive data +	3	BI_DB+	Bi-directional pair +B
4			4	BI_DC+	Bi-directional pair +C
5			5	BI_DC-	Bi-directional pair –C
6	RX_DB-	Receive data –	6	BI_DB-	Bi-directional pair –B
7			7	BI_DD+	Bi-directional pair +D
8			8	BI_DD-	Bi-directional pair –D

## Cables

To connect the unit network, use twisted pair (TP) cable with RJ-45 connectors. To comply with the IEC 60945 standard, shielded (screened) cable has to be used. Recommended cable type is minimum CAT-5e. A Category 5e cable is an enhanced version of Category 5 that adheres to more stringent standards. It is capable of transmitting data at speeds of up to 1000 Mbps (1 Giga bit per second). The maximum length of the cable which can be used is 100 metres (328 ft).

## HMI Unit interfaces

### Topics

[Front interfaces HMI Unit, page 175](#)

[Rear interfaces HMI Unit, page 175](#)

### Front interfaces HMI Unit

The front panel of the unit contains a configurable USB port and the on/off button.



	Connector name	Connector type	Connected to
A	USB	USB	User configurable
B	USB	USBC	User configurable

### Rear interfaces HMI Unit

The rear panel of the unit contains a power inlet, a Display Port, four USB ports, one HDMI port and five Ethernet ports.

Connect the display to either the Display Port or the HDMI port.



	Connector name	Connector type	Connected to
A	Net_B	RJ45	Spare
B	Net_C	RJ45	Remote support
C	Port_3	RJ45	K-Master (DP)
D	LAN_1	RJ45	Processing Unit

	<b>Connector name</b>	<b>Connector type</b>	<b>Connected to</b>
E	Power	DC power inlet	Power supply. Input of 100 - 240 VAC.
F	DisplayPort	DisplayPort	Display (optional)
G	HDMI	HDMI	Display (optional)
H	4 x USB	USB	Keyboard/Mouse. User configurable
I	Net_A	RJ45	Spare

# Telegram specifications

## Topics

- [NMEA DDC, page 178](#)
- [NMEA DTM, page 179](#)
- [NMEA GBS, page 179](#)
- [NMEA GGA, page 180](#)
- [NMEA GLL, page 181](#)
- [NMEA GNS, page 182](#)
- [NMEA GRS, page 183](#)
- [NMEA GSA, page 183](#)
- [NMEA GST, page 184](#)
- [NMEA GSV, page 184](#)
- [NMEA HDT, page 185](#)
- [NMEA RMC, page 186](#)
- [NMEA ROT, page 187](#)
- [NMEA VBW, page 187](#)
- [NMEA THS, page 188](#)
- [NMEA VER, page 189](#)
- [NMEA VTG, page 189](#)
- [NMEA ZDA, page 190](#)
- [PSXN20, page 191](#)
- [PSXN21, page 192](#)
- [PSXN22, page 192](#)
- [PSXN23, page 193](#)
- [PSXN24, page 193](#)

[Seapath Binary 26, page 194](#)

[Simrad EM 3000, page 196](#)

[KM Binary datagram format, page 197](#)

[Calibration format 7, page 199](#)

[Echo sounder format 9, page 200](#)

[Echo sounder format 18, TSS1, page 201](#)

[RDI ADCP, page 201](#)

[1PPS, NMEA ZDA format 13, page 202](#)

[1PPS, Trimble format 14, page 203](#)

[PFreeHeave, page 203](#)

[RTCM format 80, page 204](#)

[Cyclic redundancy check \(CRC\) algorithm, page 205](#)

## NMEA DDC

The NMEA DDC sentence provides controls for equipment display dimming presets and a display brightness percentage.

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 4.0.

### Format

```
$--DDC,a,xx,a,a*hh
```

### Description

- 1 **a:** Display dimming preset
  - D = Day time setting
  - K = Dusk setting
  - N = Night time setting
  - O = Backlighting off setting
- 2 **xx:** Brightness percentage, 00 - 99
- 3 **a:** Colour palette
  - D = Day time setting
  - K = Dusk setting
  - N = Night time setting



- O = Backlighting off setting
- 4 a: Sentence status flag. This shall not be a null field.
- R = Status report
- C = Configuration or command to change a setting

## NMEA DTM

The DTM sentence contains local geodetic datum and datum offsets from a reference datum.

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 3.0.

### Format

```
$--DTM,ccc,a,x.x,a,x.x,a,x.x,ccc*hh
```

### Description

- 1 **ccc**: Local datum code. Null field.
- 2 **a**: Local datum subdivision code
- 3 **x.x**: Latitude offset, minutes, North/South
- 4 **a**: North/South
- 5 **x.x**: Longitude offset, minutes, East/West
- 6 **a**: East/West
- 7 **x.x**: Altitude offset, metres, (+/—)
- 8 **ccc**: Reference datum code (WGS84 = W84)
- 9 **\*hh**: Checksum

## NMEA GBS

The NMEA GBS sentence is used to support RAIM (Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring). It reports the integrity checks of the position quality of the position solution.

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 3.0.

### Format

```
$--GBS,hhmmss.ss,x.x,x.x,x.x,xx,x.x,x.x,x.x*hh
```

### Description

- 1 **hhmmss.ss**: UTC of the GGA or GNS fix associated with this sentence. Hours, minutes and seconds.
- 2 **x.x**: Expected error in latitude.
- 3 **x.x**: Expected error in longitude.
- 4 **x.x**: Expected error in altitude.
- 5 **xx**: ID number of most likely failed satellite. GPS: 1–32, WAAS: 33–64, GLONASS: 65–96.
- 6 **x.x**: Probability of missed detection for most likely failed satellite.
- 7 **x.x**: Estimate of bias in metres on lost likely failed satellite.
- 8 **x.x**: Standard deviation of bias estimate.
- 9 **\*hh**: Checksum

## NMEA GGA

The NMEA GGA sentence transfers the time, position and fix related data from a global positioning system (GPS).

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 3.0.

### Format

```
$--GGA, hhmmss.ss, llll.ll, a, yyyyy.yy, a, x, xx, x.x, x.x, M, x.x, M, x.x, xxxx*hh
```

### Description

- 1 **hhmmss.ss**: UTC of position (Hours, minutes and seconds)
- 2
- 3 **lll.ll**: Latitude (Degrees, minutes and fractions of minutes)
- 4 **a** : Latitude sector, North/South
- 5 **yyyyy.yy**: Longitude (Degrees, minutes and fractions of minutes)
- 6
- 7 **a** : Longitude sector,
- 8 **x**: GPS quality indicator. This shall not be a null field.
  - 0 = Fix not available or invalid
  - 1 = GPS/GLONASS, Fix valid
  - 2 = DGPS/DGLONASS, Fix valid
  - 5 = Float RTK fix

- 6 = Estimated (dead reckoning) Mode
- 9 **xx**: Number of satellites in use, 00 - 12
- 10 **x.x**: Horizontal dilution of precision (HDOP)
- 11 **x.x**: Altitude, ref: mean-sea level (geoid)
- 12 **M**: Altitude unit, M = Metres
- 13 **x.x**: Geoidal separation  
The difference between the WGS-84 earth ellipsoid surface and mean-sea-level (geoid) surface.
- 14 **M**: Geoidal separation unit, M = Metres
- 15 **x.x**: Age of differential GPS data  
Time i seconds. Null field if DGPS is not used.
- 16 **xxxx**: Differential reference station ID, 0000 - 1023
- 17 **\*hh**: Checksum

## NMEA GLL

The NMEA GLL sentence transfers the latitude and longitude of vessel position, the time of the position fix and the current status from a global positioning system (GPS).

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 3.0.

### Format

```
$--GLL,1111.11,a,yyyy.yy,a,hmmss.ss,A,a*hh
```

### Description

- 1 **III.II**: Latitude (Degrees, minutes and fractions of minutes)
- 2 **a** : Latitude sector,
- 3 **yyyy.yy**: Longitude (Degrees, minutes and fractions of minutes)
- 4 **a** : Longitude sector,
- 5 **hmmss.ss**: UTC of position (Hours, minutes and seconds)
- 6 **A**: Status  
A = The data are valid.  
V = The data are not valid.
- 7 **a**: Mode indicator  
A = Autonomous

D = Differential

N = The data are not valid.

8 \*hh: Checksum

## NMEA GNS

This sentence provides position fix data for GPS, GLONASS, possible future satellite systems and systems combining these.

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 3.0.

### Format

```
$--GNS,hhmmss.ss,llll.ll,a,yyyy.yy,a,c--c,xx,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x*hh
```

### Description

- 1 **hhmmss.ss**: UTC of position (Hours, minutes and seconds)
- 2 **llll.ll**: Latitude
- 3 **a**: North/South
- 4 **yyyy.yy**: Longitude
- 5 **a**: Longitude/West
- 6 **c--c**: Mode indicator. The first character indicates the use of GPS/GLONASS satellites.  
 N = No fix  
 A = Autonomous mode  
 D = Differential mode
- 7 **xx**: Number of satellites in use, 00 – 99
- 8 **x.x**: HDOP
- 9 **x.x**: Antenna altitude, Metres, Ref: mean-sea level (geoid)
- 10 **x.x**: Geoidal separation, Metres, Difference between the earth ellipsoid and mean-sea level
- 11 **x.x**: Age of differential data
- 12 **x.x**: Differential reference station ID
- 13 **\*hh**: Checksum

## NMEA GRS

This message is used to support Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring (RAIM). It reports the range residuals in the position solution.

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 3.0.

### Format

```
$--GRS,hhmmss.ss,x,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x*hh
```

### Description

- 1 **hhmmss.ss**: UTC time of the GGA or GNS fix associated with this sentence (Hours, minutes and seconds)
- 2 **x**: Mode indicator, 1 or 0
- 3 **x.x ..... x.x**: Range residuals in metres for satellites used in the navigation solution. Order must match order of the satellite ID numbers in GSA. When GRS is used, GSA and GSV are generally required.
- 4 **\*hh**: Checksum

## NMEA GSA

The NMEA GSA sentence transfers the satellites used in the navigation solution and the dilution of precision (DOP) values.

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 3.0.

### Format

```
$--GSA,a,x,xx,xx,xx,xx,xx,xx,xx,xx,xx,xx,xx,xx,x.x,x.x,x.x*hh
```

### Description

- 1 **a**: Mode  
M = Manual  
A = Automatic
- 2 **x**: Mode  
1 = Fix not available  
2 = 2D  
3 = 3D
- 3 **xx**: Identification numbers for satellites used in solution

Satellite numbers 1 - 32 for GPS satellites

Satellite numbers 33 - 64 for WAAS satellites

Satellite numbers 65 - 96 for GLONASS satellites

- 4 **x.x**: PDOP(Position dilution of precision)
- 5 **x.x**: HDOP(Horizontal dilution of precision)
- 6 **x.x**: VDOP(Vertical dilution of precision)
- 7 **\*hh**: Checksum

## NMEA GST

The NMEA GST sentence transfers pseudo-range error statistics.

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 3.0.

### Format

```
$--GST,hhmmss.ss,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x*hh
```

### Description

- 1 **hhmmss.ss**: UTC of position (Hours, minutes and seconds)
- 2 **x.x**: RMS value of the standard deviation of the range inputs to the navigation process
- 3 **x.x**: Standard deviation of semi-major axis of error ellipse (Metres)
- 4 **x.x**: Standard deviation of semi-minor axis of error ellipse (Metres)
- 5 **x.x**: Orientation of semi-major axis of error ellipse (Degrees from true north)
- 6 **x.x**: Standard deviation of latitude error (Metres)
- 7 **x.x**: Standard deviation of longitude error (Metres)
- 8 **x.x**: Standard deviation of altitude error (Metres)
- 9 **\*hh**: Checksum

## NMEA GSV

The NMEA GSV sentence transfers the number of satellites in view (SV), satellite identification numbers, elevation, azimuth and signal-noise ratio (SNR) value. Four satellites maximum per transmission. Additional satellite data sent in second or third message.

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 3.0.

**Format**

```
$--GSV,x,x,xx,xx,xx,xxx,xx,.....,xx,xx,xxx,xx*hh
```

**Description**

- 1 **x**: Total number of messages, 1 - 9
- 2 **x**: Message number, 1 - 9
- 3 **xx**: Total number of satellites in view
- 4 **xx**: Satellite identification number  
Satellite numbers 1 - 32 for GPS satellites  
Satellite numbers 33 - 64 for WAAS satellites  
Satellite numbers 65 - 96 for GLONASS satellites
- 5 **xx**: Elevation in degrees, 90° maximum
- 6 **xxx**: Azimuth in degrees, True, 000 - 359
- 7 **xx**: SNR, 00 - 99 dB-Hz, null when not tracking
- 8 **.....,xx,xx,xxx,xx**: A variable number of “Satellite identification number, Elevation, Azimuth, SNR” sets, maximum four sets per message.
- 9 **\*hh**: Checksum

**NMEA HDT**

The NMEA HDT sentence contains the actual vessel heading in degrees true produced by any device or system producing true heading.

**Note**

*This is a deprecated sentence which has been replaced by THS.*

**Format**

```
$--HDT,x.x,T*hh<CR><LF>
```

**Description**

- 1 **x.x**: Heading, degrees true.
- 2 **T**: Heading, degrees true.
- 3 **\*hh**: Checksum

## NMEA RMC

The NMEA RMC datagram transfers the time, date, position, course and speed data from a global navigation satellite system (GNSS) receiver.

### Format

```
$--RMC,hhmmss.ss,A,llll.ll,a,yyyy.yy,a,x.x,x.x,xxxxxx,x.x,a,*hh
```

### Description

- 1 **hhmmss.ss:**
- 2 Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) of the current position  
**A:** Status  
 A = The data are valid.  
 V = Navigation receiver warning.
- 3 **lll.ll,a:** Latitude North/South
- 4 **yyyy.yy,a:** Longitude East/West
- 5 **x.x:** Speed over ground (knots)
- 6 **x.x:** Course over ground (Degrees (True))
- 7 **xxxxxx:** Date: ddmmyy
- 8 **x.x,a:** Magnetic variation, East/West (Degrees)  
 E = Easterly variation, subtracts from True course  
 W = Westerly variation, adds to True course
- 9 **a:**  
 Mode indicator  
 A = Autonomous mode  
 D = Differential mode  
 E = Estimated (dead reckoning) mode  
 M = Manual input mode  
 S = Simulator mode  
 N = The data are not valid.
- 10 **\*hh:** Checksum



## NMEA ROT

The NMEA ROT sentence contains rate of turn and direction of turn information.

### Format

```
$--ROT,x.x,A*hh<CR><LF>
```

### Description

- 1 **x.x**: Rate of turn, °/min, "-" = bow turns to port.
- 2 **A**: Status.  
A = Data valid.  
V = Data invalid.
- 3 **\*hh**: Checksum

## NMEA VBW

The NMEA VBW datagram contains water- and ground-referenced vessel speed data.

### Format

```
$--VBW,x.x,x.x,A,x.x,x.x,A,x.x,A,x.x,A*hh<CR><LF>
```

### Description

- 1 **x.x**: Speed relative to water (knots)
- 2 **x.x**: Speed relative to water (knots)
- 3 **A**: Status, Speed relative to water,  
A = The data are valid.
- 4 **x.x**: Speed relative to ground, Longitudinal (knots)
- 5 **x.x**: Speed relative to ground, Transverse (knots)
- 6 **A**: Status, Speed relative to ground  
A = The data are valid.
- 7 **x.x**: Speed relative to water, Stern, Transverse (knots)
- 8 **A**: Status, Speed relative to water, Stern  
A = The data are valid.
- 9 **x.x**: Stern, Transverse (knots)

10 A: Status, Speed relative to ground, Stern

A = The data are valid.

V = The data are not valid.

11 \*hh: Checksum

Note

---

*Transverse speed: " - " = port. Longitudinal speed: " - " = astern.*

---

## NMEA THS

The NMEA THS sentence contains the actual vessel heading in degrees true produced by any device or system producing true heading.

This sentence includes a "mode indicator" field providing critical safety related information about the heading data.

Note

---

*This sentence replaces the HDT sentence.*

---

### Format

```
$--THS,x.x,a*hh<CR><LF>
```

### Description

- 1 **x.x**: Heading, degrees true.
- 2 **T**: Mode indicator. This field should not be null.
  - A = Autonomous
  - E = Estimated (dead reckoning)
  - M = Manual input
  - S = Simulator mode
  - V = Data not valid (including standby)
- 3 **\*hh**: Checksum

## NMEA VER

The NMEA VER sentence provides identification and version information about a device. This sentence is produced as a reply to a query sentence.

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 4.0.

### Format

```
$--VER,x,x,aa,c--c,c--c,c--c,c--c,c--c,c--c,x*hh
```

### Description

- 1 **x**: Total number of sentences needed, 1 - 9
- 2 **x**: Sentence number, 1 - 9
- 3 **aa**: Device type
- 4 **c--c**: Vendor identification
- 5 **c--c**: Unique identifier. Max 15 characters.
- 6 **c--c**: Manufacturer serial number. Max. 32 characters.
- 7 **c--c**: Model code (product code). Max. 32 characters.
- 8 **c--c**: Software revision. Max. 32 characters.
- 9 **c--c**: Hardware revision. Max. 32 characters.
- 10 **x**: Sequential message identifier. Message identification number from 0 - 9.
- 11 **\*hh**: Checksum

## NMEA VTG

The NMEA VTG sentence transfers the actual course and speed relative to the ground.

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 3.0.

### Format

```
$--VTG,x.x,T,x.x,M,x.x,N,x.x,K,a*hh
```

### Description

- 1 **x.x**: Course over ground, Degrees (True)
- 2 **T**: Course over ground, marker
- 3 **x.x**: Course over ground, Degrees (Magnetic)
- 4 **M**: Course over ground, marker

- 5 **x.x**: Speed over ground, knots
- 6 **N**: Speed over ground, knots
- 7 **x.x**: Speed over ground, km/h
- 8 **K**: Speed over ground, km/h
- 9 **a**: Mode indicator. This shall not be a null field.  
A = Autonomous  
D = Differential  
N = The data are not valid.
- 10 **\*hh**: Checksum

## NMEA ZDA

The NMEA ZDA sentence contains the universal time code (UTC), day, month, year and local time zone.

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 3.0.

### Format

```
$--ZDA, hhmmss.ss, xx, xx, xxxx, xx, xx*hh
```

### Description

- 1 **hhmmss.ss**: UTC of position (Hours, minutes and seconds)
- 2 **xx**: Day UTC, 01 - 31
- 3 **xx**: Month UTC, 01 - 12
- 4 **xxxx**: Year UTC
- 5 **xx**: Local time zone, 00 - ±13 hrs
- 6 **xx**: Local time zone, minutes, 00 - +59
- 7 **\*hh**: Checksum

## PSXN20

The proprietary PSXN20 NMEA sentence contains quality indicators for roll, pitch, heading and position.

The sentence destination is positioning reference systems.

The sentence is based on NMEA sentence format.

### Format

```
$PSXN,20,x,x,x,x*hh<CR><LF>
```

### Description

- 1 **\$**: Start character.
- 2 **PSXN**: Seatex ID.
- 3 **Message number**: 20.
- 4 **x**: horiz-qual - Horizontal position and velocity quality.
  - 0 = Normal
  - 1 = Reduced performance
  - 2 = Invalid data
- 5 **x**: hgt-qual - Height and vertical velocity quality.
  - 0 = Normal
  - 1 = Reduced performance
  - 2 = Invalid data
- 6 **x**: head-qual - Heading quality.
  - 0 = Normal
  - 1 = Reduced performance
  - 2 = Invalid data
- 7 **x**: rp-qual - Roll and pitch quality.
  - 0 = Normal
  - 1 = Reduced performance
  - 2 = Invalid data
- 8 **\*hh**: Checksum.
- 9 **<CR><LF>**: End of sentence.

## PSXN21

The proprietary PSXN21 NMEA sentence contains system restart status.

The sentence is based on NMEA sentence format.

### Format

```
$PSXN,21,x*hh<CR><LF>
```

### Description

- 1 **\$**: Start character.
- 2 **PSXN**: Seatex ID.
- 3 **Message number**: 21.
- 4 **x**: Event code.  
1 = System restart
- 5 **\*hh**: Checksum.
- 6 **<CR><LF>**: End of sentence.

## PSXN22

The proprietary PSXN22 NMEA sentence contains calibration values for input gyro compass.

The sentence destination is positioning reference systems.

The sentence is based on NMEA sentence format.

### Format

```
$PSXN,22,d.dd,d.dd*hh<CR><LF>
```

### Description

- 1 **\$**: Start character.
- 2 **PSXN**: Seatex ID.
- 3 **Message number**: 22.
- 4 **d.dd**: gyro-calib - Gyro calibration value since system start-up in degrees.
- 5 **d.dd**: gyro-offs - Short-term gyro offset in degrees.
- 6 **\*hh**: Checksum.
- 7 **<CR><LF>**: End of sentence.

## PSXN23

The proprietary PSXN23 NMEA sentence contains attitude and heave data calculated in the Seapath system.

The sentence destination is PRS monitoring systems.

The sentence is based on NMEA sentence format.

### Format

```
$PSXN,23,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x*hh<CR><LF>
```

### Description

- 1 **\$**: Start character.
- 2 **PSXN**: Seatex ID.
- 3 **Message number**: 23
- 4 **x.x**: Roll in degrees. Positive with port side up.
- 5 **x.x**: Pitch in degrees. Positive with bow up.
- 6 **x.x**: Heading, degrees true.
- 7 **x.x**: Heave [m]. Positive down.
- 8 **\*hh**: Checksum (delimiter and field).
- 9 **<CR><LF>**: End of sentence.

## PSXN24

The proprietary PSXN43 NMEA sentence contains angular and vertical velocities calculated in the Seapath system.

The sentence destination is PRS monitoring systems.

The sentence is based on NMEA sentence format.

### Format

```
$PSXN,24,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x*hh<CR><LF>
```

### Description

- 1 **\$**: Start character.
- 2 **PSXN**: Seatex ID.
- 3 **Message number**: 24

- 4 **x.x**: Roll rate in degrees per second. Positive with port side up.
- 5 **x.x**: Pitch rate in degrees per second. Positive with bow up.
- 6 **x.x**: Yaw rate in degrees per second. Positive clockwise.
- 7 **x.x**: Vertical velocity [m/s]. Positive down.
- 8 **\*hh**: Checksum (delimiter and field).
- 9 **<CR><LF>**: End of sentence.

## Seapath Binary 26

This binary format consists of a fixed-length message using 1, 2 and 4-byte signal and unsigned integers. The signed integers are represented as two-complement numbers. For the multi-byte elements, the most significant byte is transmitted first. The total number of bytes is 52.

### Format

Element	Scaling	Format	Bytes	Value
Header		Unsigned	1	AA Hex
Header		Unsigned	1	53 Hex
Time, seconds	seconds	Integer	4	
Time, fraction of second	0.0001 second	Unsigned	2	0 - 9999
Latitude	$2^{30} = 90$ degrees	Integer	4	$-2^{30} - 2^{30}$
Longitude	$2^{30} = 90$ degrees	Integer	4	$-2^{31} - 2^{31}$
Height	centimetres	Integer	4	
Heave real-time	centimetres	Integer	2	
North velocity	centimetres/second	Integer	2	
East velocity	centimetres/second	Integer	2	
Down velocity	centimetres/second	Integer	2	
Roll	$2^{14} = 90$ degrees	Integer	2	$-2^{15} - 2^{15}$
Pitch	$2^{14} = 90$ degrees	Integer	2	$-2^{15} - 2^{15}$
Heading	$2^{14} = 90$ degrees	Unsigned	2	0 - $2^{16}$
Roll rate	$2^{14} = 90$ degrees/second	Integer	2	$-2^{15} - 2^{15}$
Pitch rate	$2^{14} = 90$ degrees/second	Integer	2	$-2^{15} - 2^{15}$
Yaw rate	$2^{14} = 90$ degrees/second	Integer	2	$-2^{15} - 2^{15}$



Element	Scaling	Format	Bytes	Value
Delayed heave time, seconds	seconds	Integer	4	
Delayed heave time, fraction of second	0.0001 second	Unsigned	2	0 - 9999
Heave, delayed	centimetres	Integer	2	
Status word		Bit-fields	2	
Checksum		Unsigned	2	

### Description

Checksum is calculated as a 16-bit Block Cyclic Redundancy Check of all bytes between, but not including the Header and Checksum fields. The CRC algorithm is described in a separate section. Time is divided in an integer seconds part and a fractional second part. The integer seconds part of time is counted from 1970-01-01 UTC time, ignoring leap seconds.

Latitude is positive north of the Equator. Longitude is positive east of Greenwich. Height is above the ellipsoid. Heave is positive down. Roll is positive with port side up. Pitch is positive with bow up.

The status word consists of 16 single bit flags numbered from 0 to 15, where 0 is the least significant bit.

A 1 value (true) means:

Bit no.	Interpretation
0	Reduced horizontal position and velocity performance
1	Invalid horizontal position and velocity data
2	Reduced heave and vertical velocity performance
3	Invalid heave and vertical velocity data
4	Reduced roll and pitch performance
5	Invalid roll and pitch data
6	Reduced heading performance
7	Invalid heading data
8	Invalid delayed heave data

The remaining bits in the status word are reserved for future expansion.

## Simrad EM 3000

The Simrad EM 3000 is a proprietary datagram format created by Simrad for use with digital motion sensors. It holds roll, pitch, heave and heading information. The datagram contains a 10-byte message.

### Format

Data description	Example	Format	Valid range
Sync byte 1 / Sensor status [1]	90h to Afh = sensor status	1U	00h, 90h to Afh
Sync byte 2	Always 90h	1U	144
Roll LSB [2]		1U	
Roll MSB [2]		1U	
Pitch LSB [2]		1U	
Pitch MSB [2]		1U	
Heave LSB [2]		1U	
Heave MSB [2]		1U	
Heading LSB [2]		1U	
Heading MSB [2]		1U	

### Description

**LSB** = least significant byte

**MSB** = most significant byte.

#### 1 Sync byte 1 / Sensor status

- **00h**: This value is sync byte 1.
- **90h**: This value indicates valid measurements with full accuracy.
- Any value from **91h** to **99h** indicates valid data with reduced accuracy (decreasing accuracy with increasing number).
- Any value from **9Ah** to **9Fh** indicates non-valid data but normal operation (for example configuration or calibration mode).
- Any value from **A0h** to **AFh** indicates a sensor error status.

#### 2 All data are in 2's complement binary.

Resolution is 0.01 degrees for roll, pitch and heading, and 1 cm for heave.

- Roll is positive with port side up with valid range  $\pm 179.99$  degrees.
- Pitch is positive with bow up with valid range  $\pm 179.99$  degrees.
- Heave is positive up with valid range  $\pm 9.99$  m.
- Heading is positive clockwise with valid range 0 to 359.99 degrees.

If a value is outside the valid range, it is assumed to be non-valid, and rejected.

**Note**

*Heave is logged as positive downwards (the sign is changed) including roll and pitch induced lever arm translation to the transmit transducer.*

You can define how roll is assumed to be measured, either with respect to the horizontal plane (the *Hippy 120* or *TSS* convention), or to the plane tilted by the given pitch angle (i.e. as a rotation angle around the pitch tilted forward pointing x-axis).

The latter convention (called *Tate-Bryant* in the POS/MV documentation) is used inside the system in all data displays and in the logged data. A transformation is applied if the roll is given with respect to the horizontal.

**Note**

*This format was originally designed for use with the early multibeam echo sounders manufactured by Kongsberg Discovery. In the original version of the format (Simrad EM 1000), the first synchronisation byte was always assumed to be zero. The sensor manufacturers were then requested to include sensor status in the format using the first synchronisation byte for this purpose.*

## KM Binary datagram format

KM Binary is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Discovery for general use.

**Format**

Data description	Unit of measurement	Format	No. of bytes
Start ID	#KMB	char	4U
Datagram length		uint16	2U
Datagram version (=1)		uint16	2U
UTC seconds	s	uint32	4U
UTC nanoseconds	ns	uint32	4U
Status		uint32	4U
Latitude	deg	double	8F
Longitude	deg	double	8F
Ellipsoid height	m	float	4F
Roll	deg	float	4F
Pitch	deg	float	4F
Heading	deg	float	4F
Heave	m	float	4F
Roll rate	deg/s	float	4F

Data description	Unit of measurement	Format	No. of bytes
Pitch rate	deg/s	float	4F
Yaw rate	deg/s	float	4F
North velocity	m/s	float	4F
East velocity	m/s	float	4F
Down velocity	m/s	float	4F
Latitude error	m	float	4F
Longitude error	m	float	4F
Height error	m	float	4F
Roll error	deg	float	4F
Pitch error	deg	float	4F
Heading error	deg	float	4F
Heave error	m	float	4F
North acceleration	m/s <sup>2</sup>	float	4F
East acceleration	m/s <sup>2</sup>	float	4F
Down acceleration	m/s <sup>2</sup>	float	4F
<b>Delayed heave:</b>			
UTC seconds	s	uint32	4U
UTC nanosecond	ns	uint32	4U
Delayed heave	m	float	4F

## Description

Data format	Little endian (the least significant byte is transmitted first). Float is according to IEEE - 754.
Datagram length	The total number of bytes in the datagram
Datagram version	The version is incremented if the datagram format is changed.
Timestamp format	Epoch 1970-01-01 UTC time
Position and height	At user-defined sensor reference point. Position in decimal degrees. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Latitude: Negative on Southern hemisphere</li> <li>• Longitude: Negative on Western hemisphere</li> <li>• Height: Positive above ellipsoid</li> </ul>
Positive roll	Port side up
Positive pitch	Bow up
Positive heave	Downwards, at user-defined sensor reference point
	True north
Error fields	Sensor data quality: RMS -1= not implemented

## Status

One bit per status info, 1= active

Bit	
	<b>Invalid data:</b>
0	Horizontal position and velocity
1	Roll and pitch
2	
3	Heave and vertical velocity
4	Acceleration
5	Delayed heave
<b>Reduced performance:</b>	
16	Horizontal position and velocity
17	Roll and pitch
18	
19	Heave and vertical velocity
20	Acceleration
21	Delayed heave

## Calibration format 7

The Calibration format 7 is used when calibrating the GNSS antenna installation. The format is a columnar ASCII text format.

### Format

Element	Columns	Scaling	Decimals	Value
Time	1 - 7	seconds	1	0.0 - 86399.9
Heading	10 - 15	degrees	2	0.00 - 359.99
Gyro heading	18 - 23	degrees	2	0.00 - 359.99
Baseline	26 - 31	metres	3	
Height	34 - 38	metres	2	
Term	39 - 40			CR-LF

### Description

Each record consists of numbers on ASCII format separated by spaces and terminated by carriage return and linefeed (values 10 and 13). Leading spaces are used, so the numbers are separated by two or more spaces, and spaces may occur before the first number on the record.

Time is counted since last midnight UTC time. Heading is true heading from the GNSS phase measurement, which is not the same as the heading output on the other formats. Gyro heading is from an external gyro, 0.00 if no gyro is connected. Baseline is the slant range between the antenna centres from the GNSS phase measurement. Height is the height difference between the antennas from the GNSS phase measurement. Height is positive if antenna 1 is above antenna 2.

The data are intended for calibration of the antenna installation, so no data are output unless the GNSS phase measurements are valid.

## Echo sounder format 9

The Echo sounder 9 format is used when connecting Simrad EA500 and other echo sounders. The format is a proprietary ASCII text format with fixed-length records.

### Format

Element	Columns	Scaling	Format
Header	1 - 7		:000000
Heave	9 - 13	1 cm	sdddd
Warning	14		space or "?"
Roll	15 - 19	0.01 degree	sdddd
Pitch	21 - 25	0.01 degree	sdddd
Term	26 - 27		CR-LF

### Description

Heave is positive up. Roll is positive with the port side up.

Pitch is positive with the bow up. The zeroes in the header occupy the columns used for acceleration when this format is output from other systems. Seapath does not output acceleration.

"s" is the sign character, space if positive and "-" if negative. "dddd" is a decimal number with leading zeroes where appropriate.

The warning character is space if data are normal, "?" if data are invalid or they are of reduced quality.

Columns between elements are filled with spaces.

The definition of the attitude angles in this format is different from the Euler angles definition used elsewhere. The difference appears in the roll angle, where:

$$roll_{echo-sounder} = \arcsin[\sin(roll_{Euler}) * \cos(pitch_{Euler})]$$

## Echo sounder format 18, TSS1

The Echo sounder 18, TSS1, format is used when connecting Seapath to Seabeam and other echo sounders. The format is a proprietary ASCII text format with fixed-length records.

### Format

Element	Columns	Scaling	Format
Header	1 - 7		:000000
Heave	9 - 13	1 cm	sdddd
Warning	14		"F" or "f"
Roll	15 - 19	0.01 degree	sdddd
Pitch	21 - 25	0.01 degree	sdddd
Term	26 - 27		CR-LF

### Description

Heave is positive up. Roll is positive with the port side up. Pitch is positive with the bow up.

The zeroes in the header occupy the columns used for acceleration when this format is output from other systems. Seapath does not output acceleration.

"s" is the sign character, space if positive and "-" if negative. "dddd" is a decimal number with leading zeroes where appropriate.

The warning character is "F" if data are normal, "f" if data are invalid or they are of reduced quality.

Columns between elements are filled with spaces.

The definition of the attitude angles in this format is different from the Euler angles definition used elsewhere. The difference appears in the roll angle, where:

$$roll_{echo-sounder} = \arcsin[\sin(roll_{Euler}) * \cos(pitch_{Euler})]$$

## RDI ADCP

The RDI format is used when connecting RDI ADCP equipment. The format is a proprietary ASCII text format.

### Format

```
$PRDID, sddd.dd, sddd.dd, ddd, dd, <CR><LF>
```

### Description

- **sddd.dd**: pitch - Pitch, degrees. s is the sign character, "+" or "-". ddd.dd is a decimal number with leading zeroes where appropriate. Positive with the bow up.
- **sddd.dd**: roll - Roll, degrees. s is the sign character, "+" or "-". ddd.dd is a decimal number with leading zeroes where appropriate. Positive with the port side up.
- **ddd.dd**: head - Heading, degrees true, with leading zeroes where appropriate.
- **<CR><LF>**: term - End of sentence (2 bytes, values 13 and 10).

## 1PPS, NMEA ZDA format 13

This 1PPS time tag message is output once per second, approximately 0.5 seconds before the time pulse. The 1PPS, NMEA ZDA format 13 contains the UTC time when the message is output. The next time pulse appears at the first integer second after the time in the message. The format is ASCII text using the ZDA message.

### Format

```
$INZDA, hhmmss.ss, x, x, yyyy, , *hh<CR><LF>
```

### Description

- **hhmmss.ss**: UTC time. hh = hours (00 - 23), mm = minutes (00 - 59), ss.ss = seconds (00.00 - 59.99)
- **x**: Day of month (01 - 31)
- **x**: Month of year (01 - 12)
- **yyyy**: Year
- **hh**: Checksum
- **<CR><LF>**: End of sentence (2 bytes, values 13 and 10).

This format is recommended used together with 1PPS signal output on the 1PPS terminal at the rear of the Processing Unit. This since the message is output synchronised with the 1PPS signal and is easier/faster to decode than the standard NMEA output with a number of NMEA messages included.



## 1PPS, Trimble format 14

This 1PPS time tag message is output once per second, approximately 0.5 seconds before the time pulse. The message contains the UTC time of the next time pulse. The message format is fixed length ASCII text.

### Format

Element	Columns	Format
Header	1 -3	UTC
Date	5 - 12	yy.mo.da
Time	14 - 21	hh:mm:ss
Fix type	23	digit or "?"
No. of satellites	24	digit or "?"
Term	25 - 26	CR-LF

### Description

"yy.mo.da" is year (00 - 99), month of year (01 - 12) and day of month (01 - 31).  
 "hh:mm:ss" is hours (00 - 23), minutes (00 - 59) and seconds (00 - 59). Fix type is "5" for 3D fix with accurate time, "?" for no fix (time from receiver clock). No. of satellites is "1" - "8" for 1 - 8 satellites tracked, "9" for 9 or more satellites tracked, "?" for no fix (time from receiver clock).

Columns between elements are filled with spaces.

## PFreeHeave

The PfreeHeave<sup>®</sup> format is used to improve the accuracy on the real-time heave.

### Format

Element	Scaling	Format	Bytes	Value
Header		Unsigned	1	AA Hex
Header		Unsigned	1	52 Hex
Time, seconds	Seconds	Integer	4	
Time, fraction of second	0.0001 second		2	0 - 9999
Heave	Centimetres	Integer	2	
Status word		Bit-fields	1	
Checksum		Unsigned	2	

### **Description**

The PFreeHeave<sup>®</sup> format consists of a fixed-length message using 1-, 2- and 4-byte signed and unsigned integers. The signed integers are represented as two-complement numbers. For the multi-byte elements, the most significant byte is transmitted first. The total number of bytes is 13.

The PFreeHeave output is delayed by a few minutes due to processing. The time fields contain time of validity for the data.

Checksum is calculated as a 16-bit Block Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) of all bytes between, but not including the Header and Checksum fields. Time is divided in an integer seconds part and a fractional second part. The integer seconds part of time is counted from 1970-01-01 UTC time, ignoring leap seconds.

Heave is positive down. The status field is zero if heave is valid, non-zero if heave is invalid.

### **Related topics**

[Cyclic redundancy check \(CRC\) algorithm, page 205](#)

## **RTCM format 80**

This format is used to output raw GNSS data for post processing of the position. All data are output in the GNSS antenna only and applies for both antennas.

This protocol is based on the RTCM Standard 10403.2, *Differential GNSS services*, version 3 with Amendments 1 and 2. Refer to this standard for a description of the output properties.

## Cyclic redundancy check (CRC) algorithm

The 16-bit Block Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) algorithm is used to calculate the checksum in some formats. The algorithm is described in C and Fortran source code.

### C code

```
#define POLY 0x8408
unsigned short blkcrc(
    unsigned char *bufptr,      /* message buffer */
    unsigned long len          /* number of bytes */
)
{
    unsigned char i;
    unsigned short data;
    unsigned short crc = 0xffff;

    if (len == 0L) {
        return ~crc;
    }

    do {
        for (i=0, data = (unsigned short) (0xff & *bufptr++);
            i < 8;
            i++, data >>= 1) {
            if ((crc & 0x0001) ^ (data & 0x0001)) {
                crc = (crc >> 1) ^ POLY;
            } else {
                crc >>= 1;
            }
        }
    } while (--len);

    crc = ~crc;
    data = crc;
    crc = (crc << 8) | ((data >> 8) & 0xff);

    return crc;
}
```

### Fortran code

```
SUBROUTINE blkcrc(inbuffer, len, crc)

INTEGER*2 len, i , bit
INTEGER*4 crc, data, poly
CHARACTER inbuffer*(*)

poly = 16#8408
crc = 16#FFFF
data = 0

IF (len.EQ.0) THEN
    crc = 0
    RETURN
END IF

DO i = 1, len
    data = ICHAR(inbuffer(i:i))
    DO bit = 1, 8
        data = IAND(data,16#FF)
        IF (IAND(crc,16#01).EQ.(IAND(data,16#01))) THEN
            crc = ISHL(crc,-1)
        ELSE
            crc = ISHL(crc,-1)
            crc = IEOR(crc, poly)
        END IF
        data = ISHL(data,-1)
    END DO
END DO

data = IEOR(crc,16#FFFF)
crc = IOR(ISHL(data,8), IAND(ISHL(data,-8),16#FF))

END
```

### Related topics

[PFreeHeave, page 203](#)

# Functions and dialog boxes

## Topics

[NAV Engine Configuration, page 207](#)

[Operator software configuration, page 236](#)

## NAV Engine Configuration

### Topics

[Vessel Geometry page, page 208](#)

[Vessel Description page, page 209](#)

[Sensors GNSS Geometry page, page 210](#)

[Sensors MGC Geometry page, page 212](#)

[Sensors MGC Geometry - Mounting Wizard , page 213](#)

[Sensors MRU Geometry page, page 216](#)

[Sensors MRU Geometry - Mounting Wizard , page 217](#)

[Sensors MGC Heave config page, page 220](#)

[Sensors DGNSS SBAS page, page 221](#)

[Monitoring points Geometry page, page 223](#)

[Communication interface - Input/Output, page 224](#)

[Network page, page 235](#)

## Vessel Geometry page

Here you can set the vessel dimensions and reference points for the vessel on which the Seapath system is installed as well as defining the origin of the vessel coordinate system.

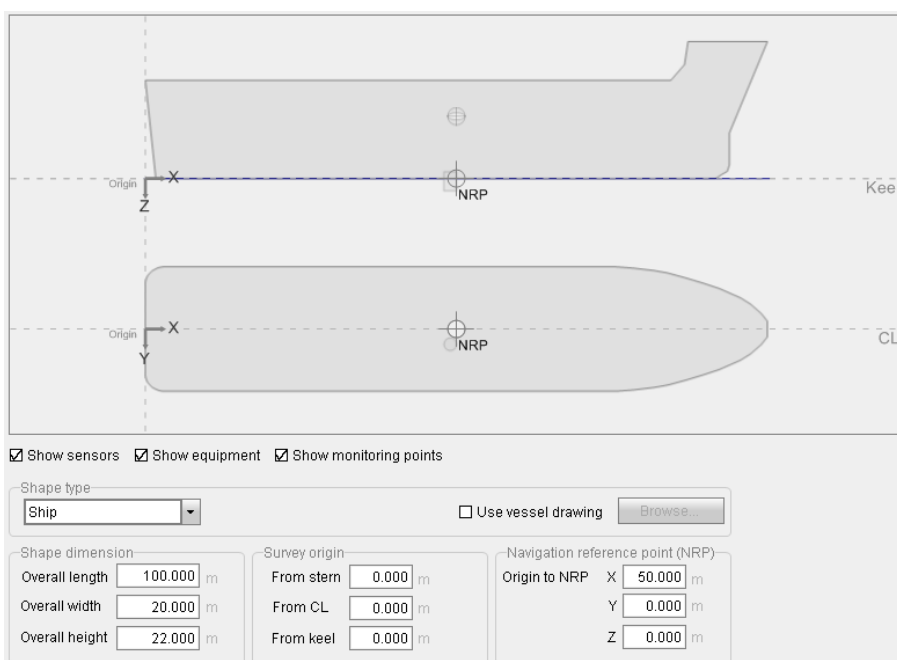
### Prerequisites

The navigation reference points you type here must be measured or defined before you start the configuration process.

### How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Vessel** > **Geometry**.

### Example



### Description

The pre-defined scalable vessel shape types rarely represent the actual outline of your vessel. In order to configure the accurate location of the various sensors, equipment and monitoring points on your vessel, you can load a separate vessel model from file. Select **Use vessel drawing** and browse for your specific vessel model file.

### Details

#### Show sensors, Show equipment, Show monitoring points

These items are displayed in the vessel illustration when you select the boxes.

**Shape type**

It defines the shape of the vessel which hosts the system. You can select between Ship, Rig, Jackup (3 leg) and Jackup (4 leg). These are all scaled according to the dimensions given in the **Shape dimension** section.

**Use vessel drawing**

The general shape outline can be overridden by an actual shape defined in a drawing file. Supported file extensions are **Vessel models (\*.svm)**, **Vessel vector images (\*.svi)** and **Old vessel images (\*.txt)**. This file can be created or edited in a text editor. When a valid drawing file has been loaded, the dimensions are defined by the loaded shape and the **Shape dimension** parameters are locked.

**Shape dimensions**

It holds parameters for the overall length of the vessel from stern to bow, the overall width of the vessel and the overall height, which is the distance from the highest point of the vessel to the keel.

**Survey origin**

All point locations in the configuration refer to the origin. The location of the origin is defined using the distance from stern, centre line (CL) and keel. The location of origin is often referred to as the common reference point (CRP) in survey reports. The distance from stern is the distance from the aft point of the ship to origin along the X axis. The distance from CL is the distance from the vessel's centre line, positive towards starboard. The distance from keel is the distance from the keel, positive downwards.

**Navigation reference point (NRP)**

The Navigation Reference Point location (NRP) is the reference point for all measurements in the system. The recommended NRP is near the centre of gravity (CG), but it can be freely chosen. It is always defined related to the origin.

**Related topics**

[Setting vessel dimensions and reference points, page 91](#)

[Importing vessel shape from file, page 117](#)

## Vessel Description page

The vessel **Description** parameters allow you to enter information about the vessel which is needed for identification purposes.

**How to open**

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **GNSS** > **Geometry**.

### Example

Vessel description			
Vessel name	Arne Viking		
Vessel owner	Seatex	Country of origin	Norway
Vessel ID			
MMSI	113113	IMO number	123456

### Details

#### Vessel name

This is the name of the vessel.

#### Vessel owner

This is the owner of the vessel.

#### Country of origin

This is the country in which the vessel is registered.

#### MMSI

This is the nine-digit Maritime Mobile Service Identity (MMSI) number which uniquely identifies your vessel.

#### IMO number

This is the International Maritime Organization (IMO) number which uniquely identifies your vessel.

### Related topics

[Entering vessel identification parameters, page 116](#)

## Sensors GNSS Geometry page

Here you can enter the coordinates for the antenna location(s) on-board your vessel.

### Prerequisites

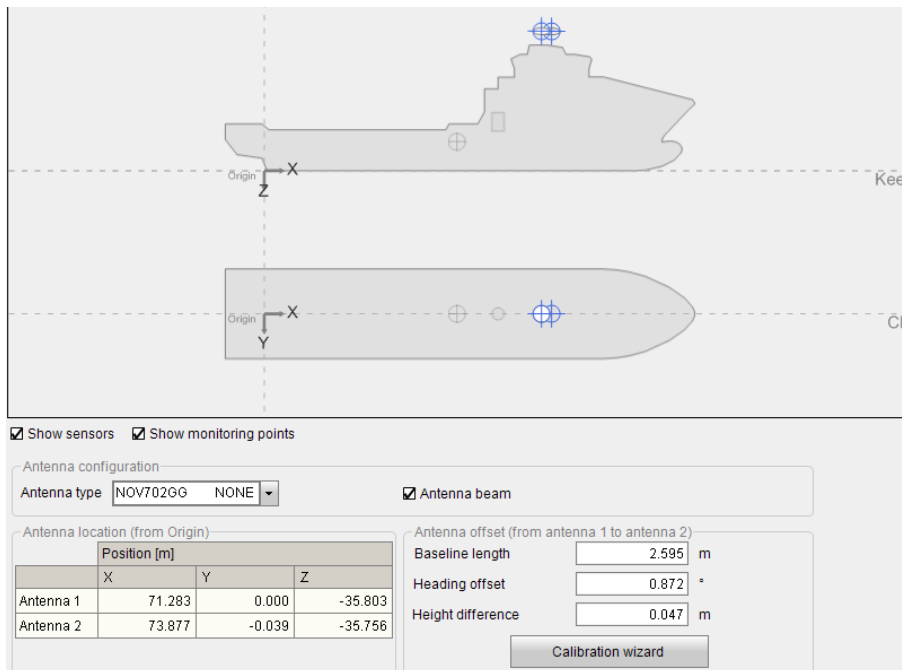
The distance vector from the origin to the GNSS antenna has to be measured before you can enter the parameters into the configuration.

### How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **GNSS** > **Geometry**.



## Example



## Details

### Show sensors, Show monitoring points

These items are displayed in the vessel illustration when you select the boxes.

### Antenna type

A correct selection of **Antenna type** is only important when raw GNSS data are output from the Seapath for post-processing of the position accuracy. The selection **GENERIC** as antenna type is used for all single-frequency antennas (L1) and for installations that shall not use RTCM output for post-processing. Other antenna types than the ones listed, are input in the configuration by using the **Advanced** option in the **NavEngine Configuration**.

**NONE** means that there is no antenna dome or choke ring included.

### Antenna location (from Survey origin)

Position: X, Y, Z. This is the surveyed antenna co-ordinates.

### Antenna beam

Select this box if the GNSS antennas are mounted on a beam and not independently.

### Calibration Wizard

The **Calibration wizard** will help you to calculate the offset (length, heading and height) from antenna 1 to antenna 2.

## Related topics

[Entering antenna location parameters, page 94](#)

## Sensors MGC Geometry page

Here you can enter the physical location, as well as the mounting angles, for the Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) on your vessel. The location is relative to origin. The IMU is either an MGC (Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass) or an MRU (Motion Reference Unit).

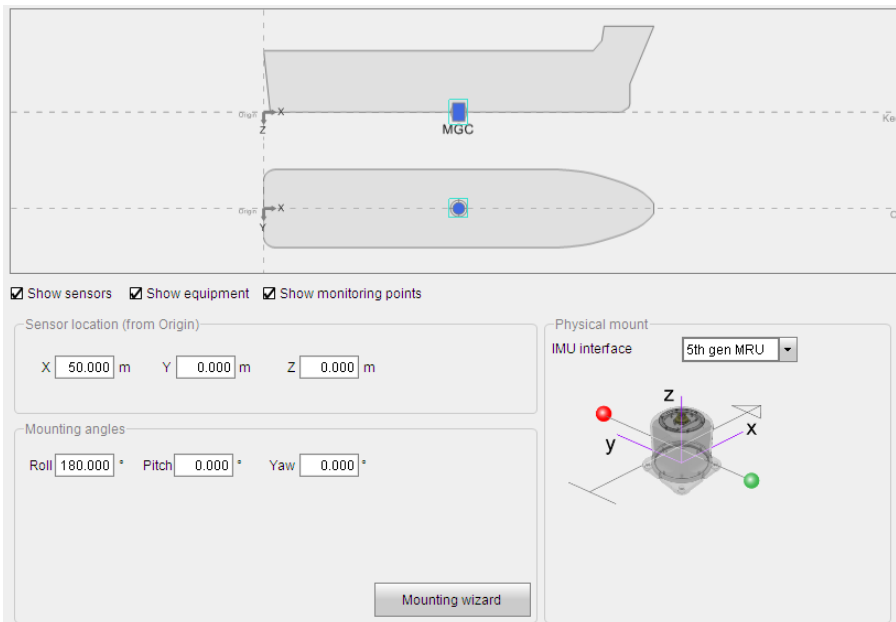
### Prerequisites

For accurate location of the MGC (Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass) a survey has to be carried out.

### How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **MGC** > **Geometry**.

### Example



### Details

#### Show sensors, Show equipment, Show monitoring points

These items are displayed in the vessel illustration when you select the boxes.

#### Sensor location (from origin)

This is the position of the MGC in X, Y, Z coordinates in metres from Origin. The sensor unit (IMU) location has to be measured. The default position of the IMU is in the vessel Origin.

#### IMU interface

Select the Inertial Measurement Unit connected to this product.

**Mounting angles**

This is the mounting angles of the Inertial Measurement Unit in degrees for roll, pitch and yaw. The Mounting Wizard is a helpful tool to obtain the correct roll and pitch compensation.

**Mounting wizard button**

Select this button and the Mounting wizard will assist you with the determination of the MGC mounting angles.

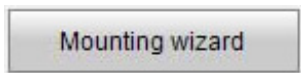
**Related topics**

[Setting MGC location and mounting angles, page 99](#)

[Using Mounting Wizard to determine MGC mounting angles, page 101](#)

## Sensors MGC Geometry - Mounting Wizard

Use the Mounting Wizard to determine the roll, pitch and yaw mounting angles in degrees for the sensor unit.

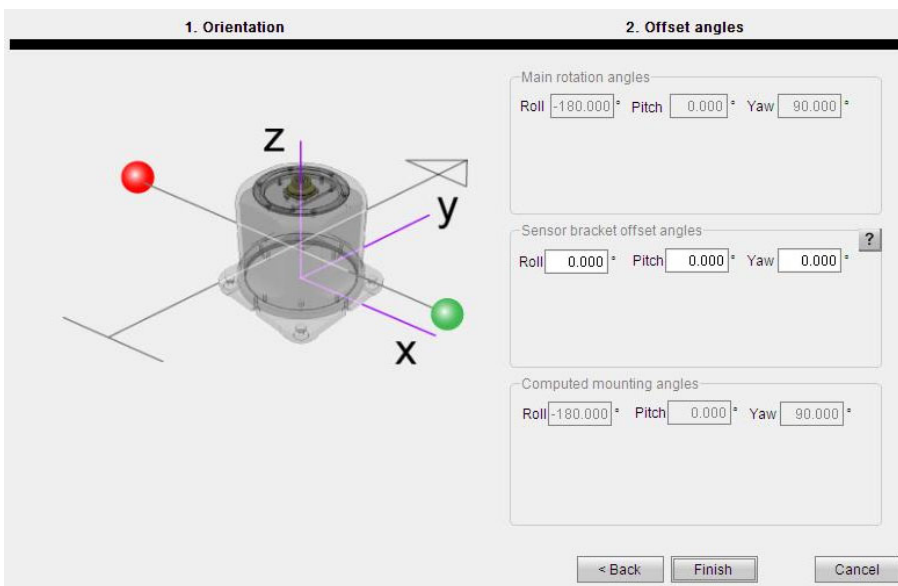
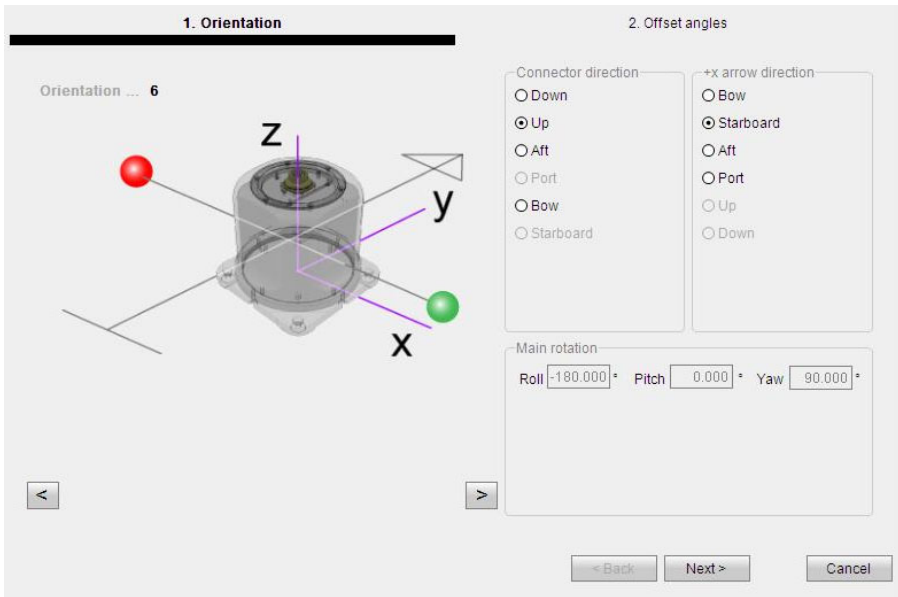
**Prerequisites**

The MGC offset angles have to be available from a survey report or through other methods with similar accuracy.

**How to open**

Select the **Mounting Wizard** button in the **Sensors MGC Geometry** page.

**Example**

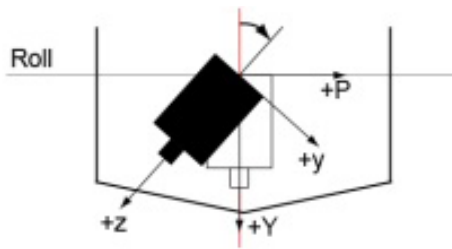


**Description**

The **Mounting Wizard** will help you to determine the offset angles of the sensor unit mounting bracket. The mounting bracket offset angles which have to be entered are roll, pitch and yaw.

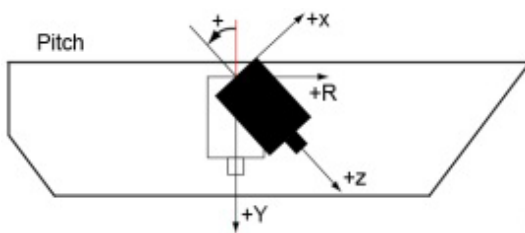
**Roll offset angle**

The angle between the ship's Y-axis and the projection of the sensor unit z-axis in the ship's PY-plane. Positive roll offset angle if the bracket tilts to starboard.



### Pitch offset angle

The angle between the ship's Y-axis and the projection of the sensor unit z-axis in the ship's RY-plane. Positive pitch offset angle if the bracket tilts to stern.



### Yaw offset angle

The angle between the ship's R-axis and the projection of the sensor unit x-axis in the ship's RP-plane. Positive yaw offset angle if the bracket is rotated clockwise.

## Details

### Connector direction

This is the direction in which the connector on the sensor unit points. The selections are Down, Up, Aft, Port, Bow or Starboard.

### +x arrow direction

This is the direction in which the +x arrow on the sensor unit points. The selections are Bow, Starboard, Aft, Port, Up or Down.

### Main rotation/Main rotation angles

This is the designated installation orientation of the MGC/MRU in the vessel, as indicated by **Connector direction** and **+ arrow direction**. These angles are multiples of 90 degrees.

### Sensor bracket offset angles

This is the surveyed offset angles from the designated installation orientation.

### Computed mounting angles

This is the actual installation orientation of the MGC/MRU in the vessel, computed from the main rotation and sensor bracket offset angles.

## Related topics

[Using Mounting Wizard to determine MGC mounting angles, page 101](#)

## Sensors MRU Geometry page

Here you can enter the physical location, as well as the mounting angles, for the Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) on your vessel. The location is relative to origin. The IMU is either an MGC (Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass) or an MRU (Motion Reference Unit).

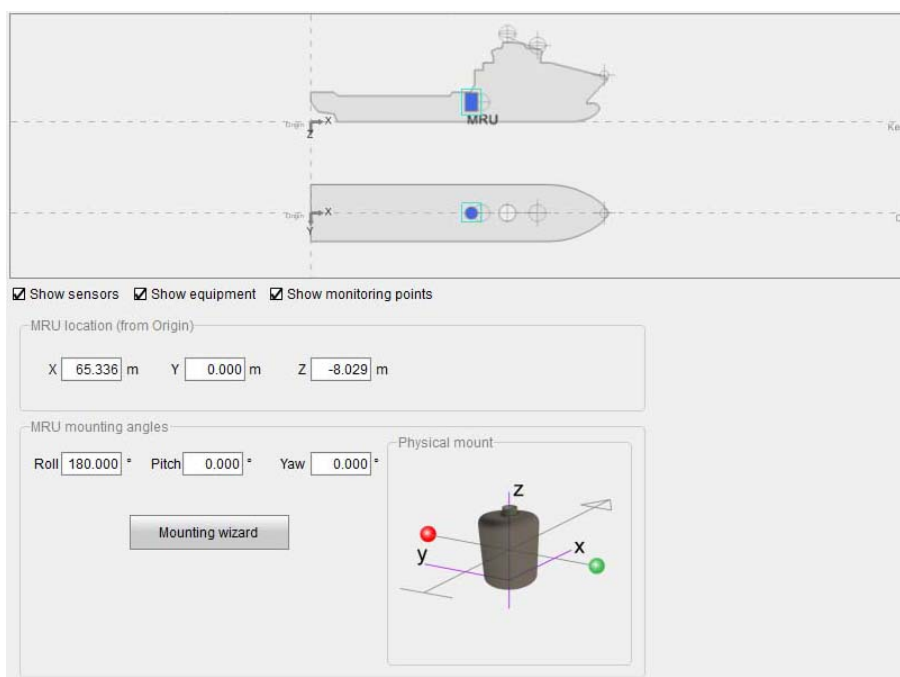
### Prerequisites

For accurate location of the MRU (Motion Reference Unit) a survey has to be carried out.

### How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **MRU** > **Geometry**.

### Example



### Details

#### Show sensors, Show equipment, Show monitoring points

These items are displayed in the vessel illustration when you select the boxes.

#### Sensor location (from origin)

This is the position of the MRU in X, Y, Z coordinates in metres from Origin. The sensor unit (IMU) location has to be measured. The default position of the IMU is in the vessel Origin.

#### IMU interface

Select the Inertial Measurement Unit connected to this product.

### **Mounting angles**

This is the mounting angles of the Inertial Measurement Unit in degrees for roll, pitch and yaw. The Mounting Wizard is a helpful tool to obtain the correct roll and pitch compensation.

### **Mounting wizard button**

Select this button and the Mounting wizard will assist you with the determination of the MGC mounting angles.

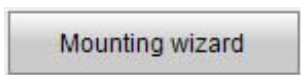
### **Related topics**

[Setting MRU location and mounting angles, page 103](#)

[Using Mounting Wizard to determine MRU mounting angles, page 105](#)

## **Sensors MRU Geometry - Mounting Wizard**

Use the Mounting Wizard to determine the roll, pitch and yaw mounting angles in degrees for the sensor unit.



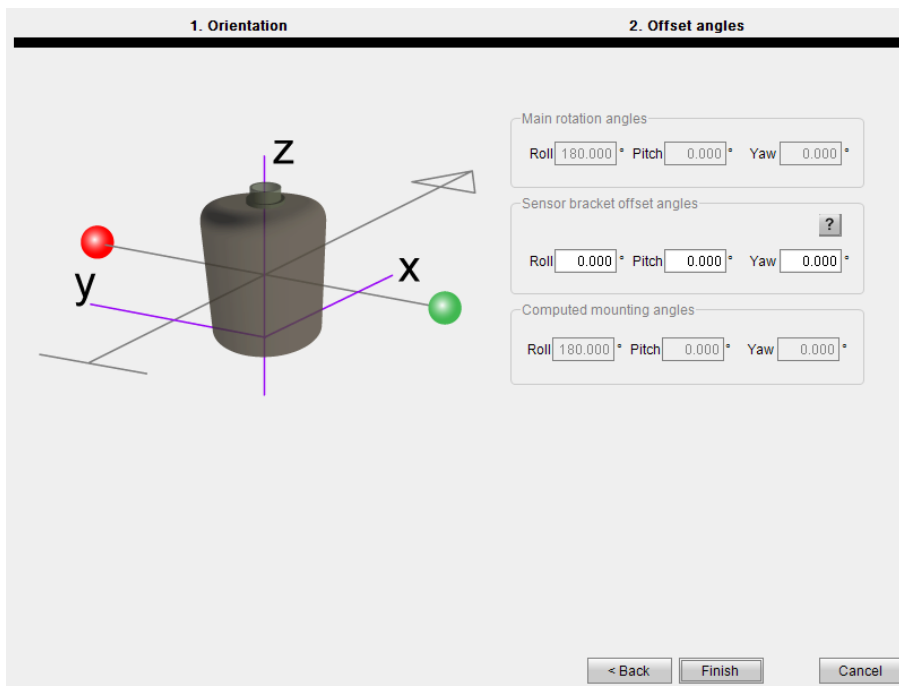
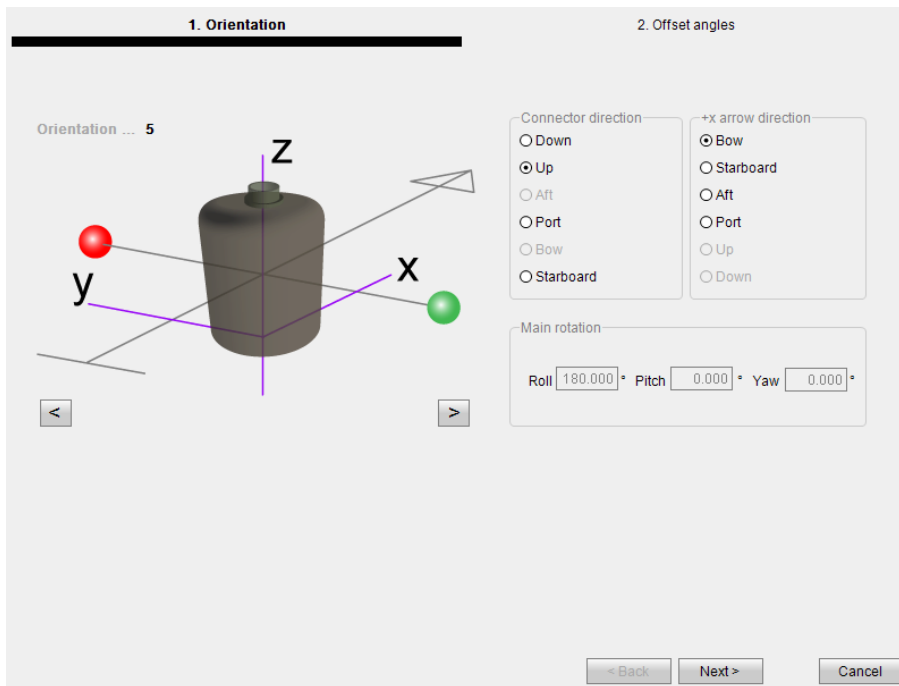
### **Prerequisites**

The MRU mounting bracket offset angles have to be available from a survey report or through other methods with similar accuracy.

### **How to open**

Select the **Mounting Wizard** button in the **Sensors MRU Geometry** page.

## Example



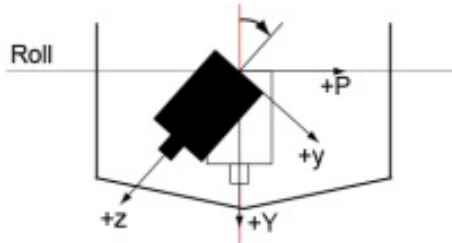
## Description

The **Mounting Wizard** will help you to determine the offset angles of the sensor unit mounting bracket. The mounting bracket offset angles which have to be entered are roll, pitch and yaw.

### Roll offset angle

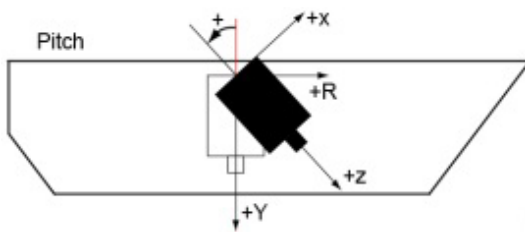


The angle between the ship's Y-axis and the projection of the sensor unit z-axis in the ship's PY-plane. Positive roll offset angle if the bracket tilts to starboard.



### Pitch offset angle

The angle between the ship's Y-axis and the projection of the sensor unit z-axis in the ship's RY-plane. Positive pitch offset angle if the bracket tilts to stern.



### Yaw offset angle

The angle between the ship's R-axis and the projection of the sensor unit x-axis in the ship's RP-plane. Positive yaw offset angle if the bracket is rotated clockwise.

## Details

### Connector direction

This is the direction in which the connector on the sensor unit points. The selections are Down, Up, Aft, Port, Bow or Starboard.

### +x arrow direction

This is the direction in which the +x arrow on the sensor unit points. The selections are Bow, Starboard, Aft, Port, Up or Down.

### Main rotation/Main rotation angles

This is the designated installation orientation of the MGC/MRU in the vessel, as indicated by **Connector direction** and **+ arrow direction**. These angles are multiples of 90 degrees.

### Sensor bracket offset angles

This is the surveyed offset angles from the designated installation orientation.

### Computed mounting angles

This is the actual installation orientation of the MGC/MRU in the vessel, computed from the main rotation and sensor bracket offset angles.

### Related topics

[Setting MRU location and mounting angles, page 103](#)

[Using Mounting Wizard to determine MRU mounting angles, page 105](#)

## Sensors MGC Heave config page

The **Heave config** parameters allow you to tune the heave parameters to the vessel motion characteristics for the actual weather conditions. This is important when using real-time heave measurements in order to achieve optimum heave performance.

### How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **MGC/MRU** > **Heave config**.

### Example

The screenshot shows the 'Heave config' interface. It is divided into two main sections: 'Real-time heave' and 'Delayed heave'.  
In the 'Real-time heave' section, there is a 'Heave filter' dropdown menu with 'Automatic' selected. To its right, under 'Heave mean level', there is a checked checkbox for 'Roll/Pitch dependent'.  
The 'Delayed heave' section is partially visible below, also featuring a 'Heave mean level' section with a checked checkbox for 'Roll/Pitch dependent'.

### Description

You can select the heave filter options from the **Options** list. In the list you can select between four different heave filter modes: *Hydrographic survey*, *Automatic*, *GNSS aided* and *General purpose*.

If you select other options than Automatic, you must enter an expected heave period.

### Details

#### Hydrographic survey

Select **Hydrographic survey** when the heave phase and amplitude have to be output correctly in real time. This mode is typically selected when the heave output signal from the system is to be used for heave compensation of echo sounders and offshore crane systems.

#### Automatic

Select **Automatic** when the vessel is operating in various sea states or when the average heave period is unknown. The *Automatic* filter mode estimates the average heave period and automatically sets the filter period in real time during operation. The Automatic filter mode uses the Hydrographic survey filter structure.

**GNSS aided**

Select **GNSS aided** when RTK DGNSS corrections are available or the GNSS velocity measurements are accurate. In this mode the heave and height measurements are determined by blending vertical acceleration and GNSS height measurements in a Kalman filter. This combination makes it possible to measure wave slopes and the tide in real time with high precision ideal for hydrographic work. The height measurements are provided with centimeter accuracy and independent of wave frequency. If RTK is not available, the algorithm will use the GNSS velocity measurements for aiding the heave. If GNSS velocities are not available, the Automatic algorithm is used.

**General purpose**

Select **General purpose** when the heave phase is of no importance. This mode is typically selected when the system is to be used for measuring the heave height and period on oceanographic buoys.

**Period**

An expected average heave period has to be set to the heave filter unless the automatic mode is chosen. The settling time for the heave measurements from power-on or after a turn will be about 10 times the selected period,  $T_0$ .

**Roll/Pitch dependent**

Select the **Roll/Pitch dependent** check box to enable whether the heave mean level should be dependent on the roll and pitch measurements or not. When enabled, the heave position in the monitoring points (MP) has now longer zero mean level, instead its value depends on the vessel tilt at any time. This option is useful especially in applications where the distance between the MP and the sea level is to be determined, like in echo sounder installations with depth changes due to changes in vessel trim and list. If not enabled, the heave will always have zero mean level. There are separate selections for the real-time heave and the delayed heave (PFreeHeave).

**Related topics**

[Selecting heave filter options, page 107](#)

**Sensors DGNSS SBAS page**

The SBAS parameters enable the system to track SBAS satellites.

**How to open**

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **DGNSS** > **SBAS**.

## Example

Enabled  
 Automatic  
 Manual

EGNOS  120  
 124  
 126

WAAS  133  
 135  
 138

MSAS  129  
 137

GAGAN  127  
 128

## Details

### Enable

Select this box if you want your system to track SBAS satellites.

### Automatic

If you select **Automatic**, the GNSS receiver will select which SBAS satellites to track. This option may be unavailable for some systems.

### Manual

Here you must select which SBAS satellites the system shall track. If two SBAS satellites are selected, the system will automatically use data from the best satellite. If only one SBAS satellite is selected, only correction data from this satellite will be used in the computations.

If no specific SBAS satellite is selected, the system will select and use data from the best of the available satellites.

If the selected satellite is not available, the system will not use the SBAS correction data in the computations.

Maximum two SBAS satellites can be tracked by the GNSS receiver.

## Related topics

[Selecting SBAS satellites, page 119](#)

## Monitoring points Geometry page

Here you can define the locations on the vessel for which you want the system to calculate the position.

### Prerequisites

To get exact coordinates from origin to each monitoring point, each monitoring point has to be measured or calculated based upon drawings or previously measured points.

### How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Monitoring points** > **Geometry**.



### Example

The screenshot shows a software interface for defining monitoring points on a vessel. At the top, there is a toolbar with two icons: a crosshair with a plus sign (for adding a point) and a crosshair with an 'X' (for deleting a point). Below the toolbar is a 3D diagram of a vessel hull. The diagram shows two coordinate systems: one for the upper hull (Origin, X, Z) and one for the lower hull (Origin, X, Y). Several monitoring points are marked with orange crosshairs and labeled: 'A-frame', 'Hipap', and 'EM710'. A horizontal dashed line represents the 'Keel' and another represents the 'CL' (Center Line). Below the diagram, there is a checkbox labeled 'Show sensors' which is checked. Underneath is a table with the following data:

ID	Name	Position [m]		
		X	Y	Z
1	A-frame	-13.365		0.000
2	EM710	89.787		0.533
3	Hipap	53.926	-5.287	3.624

At the bottom of the interface, a note states: "Monitoring points are entered relative to Origin".

### Description

The toolbar at the top contains two icons. One for adding a monitoring point, , and one for deleting a monitoring point, .

The monitoring points are entered relative to Origin.

### Details

#### Show sensors, Show equipment

These items are displayed in the vessel illustration when you select the boxes.

### **ID**

This is the ID number for the given monitoring point.

### **Name**

This is the name you give the monitoring point.

### **Position: X, Y, Z**

These are the surveyed co-ordinates in metres for the various monitoring points.

### **Related topics**

[Setting monitoring points, page 108](#)

## **Communication interface - Input/Output**

Here you can set the parameters for communication with external equipment.

### **How to open**

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.

## **Communication interface - Serial or Ethernet**

When you have selected an interface in the **Input/Output list**, you must select which type of communication you want for that interface. You can select between serial or Ethernet communication.

### **How to open**

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.

### **Example**

The screenshot shows a configuration window for a communication interface. It is divided into three sections: Configuration details, I/O properties, and Advanced. In the Configuration details section, the Interface is set to 'Gyro1', the Type is 'Serial', and the Description is 'Gyro #1'. The Cable ID field is empty. In the I/O properties section, the Port is 'COM11', the Baud rate is '9600', and the communication type is 'rs-232'. In the Advanced section, the Parity is 'None', the Data bits are '8', and the Stop bits are '1'.

Section	Parameter	Value
Configuration details	Interface	Gyro1
	Type	Serial
	Cable ID	
	Description	Gyro #1
I/O properties	Port	COM11
	Baud rate	9600
Advanced	Parity	None
	Data bits	8
	Stop bits	1

## Description

When you select a communication interface from the **Input/Output** list, various parameters will appear at the lower part of the page, depending on your choice of interface. Some of these parameters are common for all interfaces.

The Serial interface allows you to decide how the Processing Unit shall communicate with and interface to other equipment.

The Ethernet interface allows you to decide how the Processing Unit shall communicate via the internet protocol (IP) network.

## Configuration details

### Interface

This is the interface you have selected from the **Input/Output list**.

### Description

Here you can type an informative text about the interface you have selected.

### Type

Here you can select which type of communication you want for your interface. You can select between communication via **Serial** line or **Ethernet**.

The selection you make here, will affect the parameters which appear under **I/O properties**.

### Cable ID

Here you can type a short identification text for the cable connected to the Processing Unit. The **Cable ID** box is optional. It is intended for installation documentation.

## I/O properties - Serial interface

### Port

Select which port to use for the serial communication. The serial port number corresponds with the number on the Processing Unit.

### Baud rate

Select which baud rate to use for the serial communication.

### RS-232/RS-422

Select if you want to use RS-232 or RS-422 for the electrical interface. This selection depends on the **Port** you selected.

## Advanced

Under **Advanced** you are able to modify the parity, stop bits and data bits. These parameters should be left unchanged. If these parameters are to be modified, they should only be modified by skilled personnel.

### I/O properties - Ethernet interface - Broadcast

Broadcasting is a method of transferring a message to all recipients simultaneously.

#### Local interface

This is the LAN port on the Processing Unit.

#### Port

This is one of the LAN ports on the Processing Unit.

### I/O Properties - Ethernet interface - Unicast

Unicast transmission is the sending of messages to a single network destination identified by a unique address.

#### Local interface

Select which local interface you want to use from the list.

#### IP address

This is the target IP address, to which the unit is receiving or sending.

#### Local port

When receiving, this is the port on which the unit listens.

#### Remote port

When transmitting, this is the port to which the unit sends.

#### Note

---

*It is recommended to use the same port number for both Local and Remote ports.*

---

### I/O Properties - Ethernet interface - Multicast

Multicast (one-to-many or many-to-many distribution) is group communication where information is addressed to a group of destination computers simultaneously.



Broadcast  Unicast  Multicast

Local interface  IP address

Remote port

**Local interface**

This is the LAN port on the Processing Unit.

**IP address**

This is the multicast group address. Recommended range: 239.255.000.000 to 239.255.255.255.

**Remote port**

When transmitting, this is the port to which the unit sends.

**Related topics**

[Using the Serial interface, page 89](#)

[Using the Ethernet interface, page 90](#)

[Selecting heading input format from a gyro compass, page 121](#)

[Setting up the DGNSS correction link parameters, page 123](#)

**Communication interface - MGC interface page**

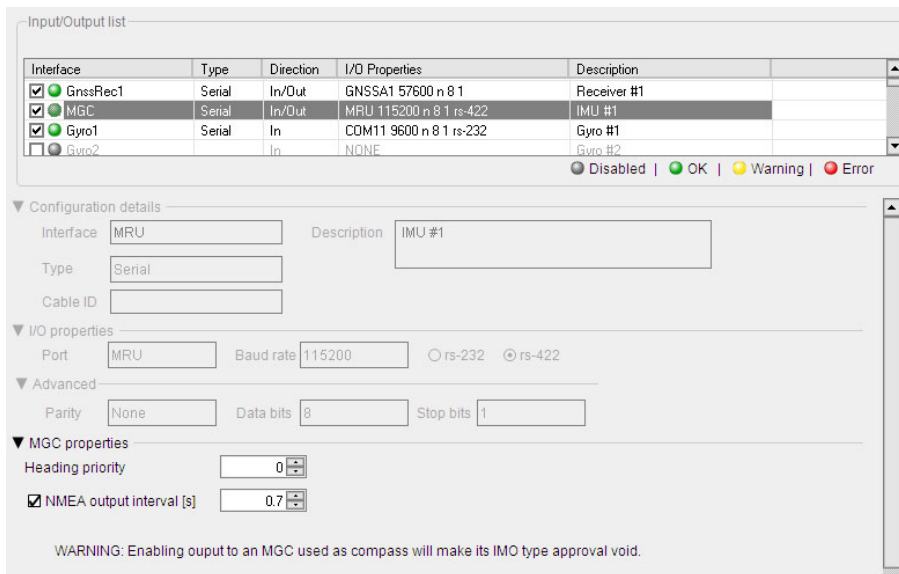
Here you can select which priority the MGC heading input shall have in the system if you have several heading sources in your system. You can also select interval for message output.

**How to open**

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.

Select the **MGC** interface in the **Input/Output** list.

## Example



## Description

### **WARNING**

***Enabling output to an MGC used as compass will void the IMO type approval.***

---

## Details

### Heading priority

Set priority for the heading input from the MGC in your system.

### NMEA output interval

Enable output of NMEA GGA, VTG and ZDA messages to the MGC and at which interval the message shall be output.

## Related topics

[Setting up input to and from the MGC, page 112](#)

## Communication interface - DgnssLink interface page

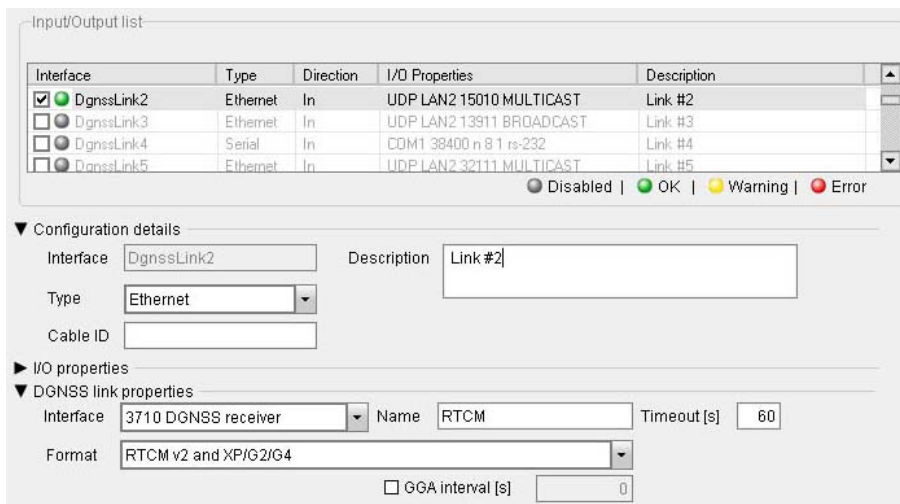
Here you can set up the system to receive various kinds of corrections which will improve the position accuracy.

## How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.

Select the **DgnssLink** interface in the **Input/Output list**.

## Example



## Details

### Interface

Select which external equipment you want to interface. Some configuration parameters are dependent on the interface selection.

### Name

Type the name you want to give the DGNSS correction link.

### Timeout

This is an age limit. If the age of the corrections exceeds this limit, the corrections are invalid.

### Format

This is the format types which are supported by the system.

### GGA interval

If this option is selected, the system sends GGA messages to the DGNSS receiver at specified intervals in seconds.

## Related topics

[Setting up the DGNSS correction link parameters, page 123](#)

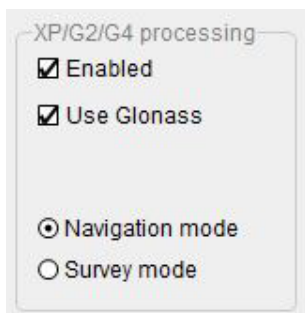
## Sensors DGNSS XP/G2/G4 page

The XP/G2/G4 parameter allows you to use high precision services to improve the accuracy of the GNSS signal. This will result in a more accurate position.

## How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **DGNSS** > **XP/G2/G4**.

## Example



## Details

### Enabled

Select **Enabled** if you want to enable the use of high precision services in the position solution.

### Use Glonass

Select **Use Glonass** if you want to enable the use of GLONASS corrections in the position solution.

### Navigation mode

Select **Navigation mode** if you want more reliability on the position solution during difficult GNSS conditions.

### Survey mode

Select **Survey mode** if you want continuous output of data even under difficult GNSS conditions and uncertainty on data quality.

## Related topics

[Enabling Fugro high precision services, page 120](#)

## Communication interface - TelegramOut interface page

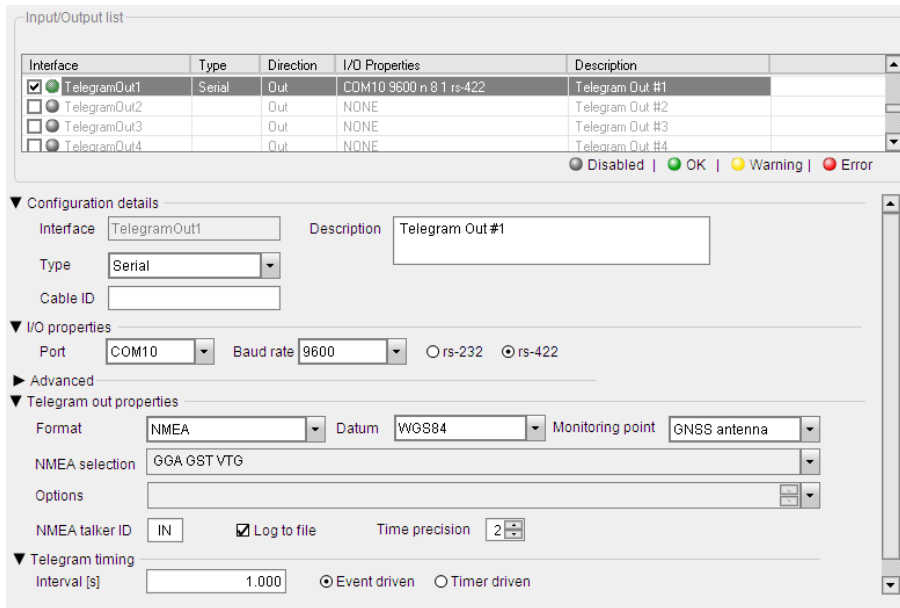
Here you can enable and set up data messages which are transmitted to external equipment.

### How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.

Select the **TelegramOut** interface in the **Input/Output** list.

## Example



## Telegram out properties

### Details

#### Format

This is the format of the output telegram.

#### Datum

The datum selection is only valid if the datum on the corrections input to the product are in WGS84 or no corrections are input. If the corrections input are in another datum than WGS84, you must select WGS84. The datum of the output will then be on the same datum as the datum on the corrections input to the product. The other choices can only be used when the system navigates in WGS84 datum.

#### Monitoring point

This is a point on the vessel for which you want the position measurements to be output.

#### NMEA selection

The NMEA selection option is activated if the **Format** is selected as NMEA. Select between a number of NMEA telegrams.

#### Note

*To output \$DPGGA sentence, enable GGA and select the Use DQI(0-9) as GGA quality indicator option.*

## Options

The contents of some of the available NMEA telegrams can be modified according to options listed in the **Options** list. This is for example useful when interfacing to older equipment.

### NMEA talker ID

The talker ID of NMEA messages sent from this output. The default value is IN for systems with an Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) connected. The default value is GP for systems without an IMU connected.

### Log to file

This option logs the measurements to file internally in the Seapath system.

### Time precision

This is the number of decimals in the time field in NMEA telegrams which contain time information.

## Telegram timing properties

### Details

#### Interval

This is the interval between each sample. It can be selected in the range 0.005 to 3000 seconds.

#### Event driven

The output of data is driven by receipt of IMU (Inertial Measurement Unit) data to the Processing Unit. **Event driven** data is valid for the point in time the sensors within the IMU are sampled. The option is recommended used when transmission in real time is not required.

#### Timer driven

When using timer driven output the data will be output in real time. (0 ms delay.) **Timer driven** output is recommended used when the data is preferred in real-time. For example when the system which receives the data time-stamp these data when receiving them.

## Related topics

[Setting up the Telegram out interface, page 113](#)

## Communication interface - Gyro interface page

Here you can set up the system to receive heading input from a gyro compass or similar.

### How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.

Select **Gyro** in the **Input/Output** list.

### Example

The screenshot shows the 'Input/Output list' dialog box. It contains a table with the following data:

Interface	Type	Direction	I/O Properties	Description
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> GnsRec1	Serial	In/Out	GNSSA1 57600 n 8 1	Receiver #1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> MGC	Serial	In/Out	MRU 115200 n 8 1 rs-422	IMU #1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Gyro1	Serial	In	COM11 9600 n 8 1 rs-232	Gyro #1
<input type="checkbox"/> Gyro2		In	NONE	Gyro #2

Below the table are configuration details for the selected 'Gyro #1' interface:

- Configuration details:** Interface: Gyro1, Description: Gyro #1, Type: Serial, Cable ID: (empty)
- I/O properties:** Port: COM11, Baud rate: 9600, rs-232 (selected), rs-422 (unselected)
- Advanced:** Parity: None, Data bits: 8, Stop bits: 1
- Telegram in properties:** Format: NMEA HDT, Timeout [s]: 5, Interval [s]: 0.10, Priority: 2, Checksum required:
- GGA/VTG:**  Interval [s]: 0

### Description

Gyro interface is for external heading input to the system. External heading may be received on either serial line or Ethernet.

### Details

#### Telegram in properties

#### Format

This is the format of the input telegram.

#### Timeout

This is an age limit. If the age of the heading message exceeds this limit, the heading message is invalid. [s].

#### Interval

This is the expected interval in seconds between incoming telegrams. This option can be configured.

### Priority

This is the priority of the gyro interface. If more than one gyro interface is defined and available, one is selected for use, based on the specified priority.

### Checksum required

This option enables or disables NMEA checksum requirement. The option is default set to **Enabled**. This is the recommended setting.

### GGA/VTG

If this option is selected the system sends GGA and VTG messages to the gyro at specific intervals.

### Related topics

[Selecting heading input format from a gyro compass, page 121](#)

## Communication interface - Serial port extender page

Here you can add more serial ports to the system than those available in the Processing Unit.

### Prerequisites

You must have installed a serial port extender device.

### How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAVEngine** > **Standard** > **Communication interface** > **Serial port extender**.

### Example



The screenshot shows a configuration window with two rows. The first row has a text box labeled 'Address' with the value '10.0.60.137' and a button labeled 'Open configuration' to its right. The second row has a dropdown menu labeled 'Type' with 'Moxa NPort' selected.

### Details

#### Address

This is the IP address for the MOXA extender unit. Consult the network administrator on the vessel for the IP address.

#### Type

This is the currently supported extender type.

#### Open configuration

Select this button to open a web browser for configuration of the serial port extender.



**Related topics**

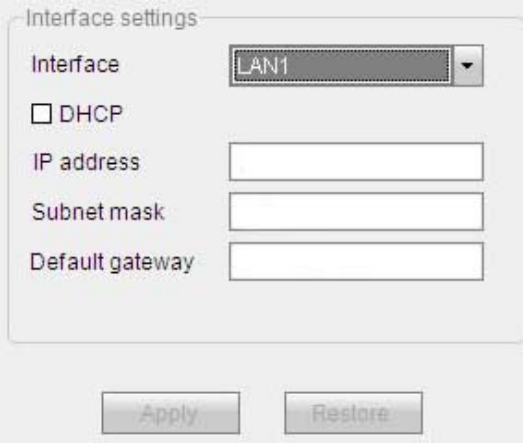
[Adding extra serial ports, page 125](#)

## Network page

Here you can change the IP address for the Processing Unit.

**How to open**

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Network**.

**Example**

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Interface settings". It contains the following elements:

- An "Interface" dropdown menu with "LAN1" selected.
- An unchecked checkbox labeled "DHCP".
- Three text input fields labeled "IP address", "Subnet mask", and "Default gateway", all of which are currently empty.
- Two buttons at the bottom: "Apply" and "Restore".

**Details****Interface**

This is the interface for which you want to change the IP address.

**DHCP**

Select this box if the IP address is given by a DHCP server. This selection will disable the rest of the parameters.

**IP Address**

This is the new IP address for the interface.

**Subnet mask**

This is the subnet mask for the interface.

**Default gateway**

This is the default gateway for the Processing Unit.

Note \_\_\_\_\_

*Only one default gateway can be set up.*

---

### **Apply button**

Select **Apply** to save the settings.

### **Restore button**

If you select **Restore**, you will return to the previous interface settings.

### **Related topics**

[Changing the Processing Unit IP address, page 127](#)

## Operator software configuration

### **Topics**

[Operator software configuration - View page, page 236](#)

[Operator software configuration - Sky view page, page 237](#)

[Operator software configuration - Position Integrity page, page 239](#)

[Operator software configuration - Compass page, page 240](#)

[Operator software configuration - UTM page, page 241](#)

[Operator software configuration - Data source page, page 242](#)

[Operator software configuration - Alarms page, page 243](#)

### **Operator software configuration - View page**

Here you can select which view you want to appear where in the display when the HMI (Human Machine Interface) application starts.

### **How to open**

Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **View**.

## Example



## Description

The **View** page has the same layout as the views in the display. You can select which information you want to appear in the various views.

Two views cannot have the same contents. When one view is selected as contents in View 1, other contents will automatically be selected for View 2.

## Related topics

[Selecting the position of views in the display, page 129](#)

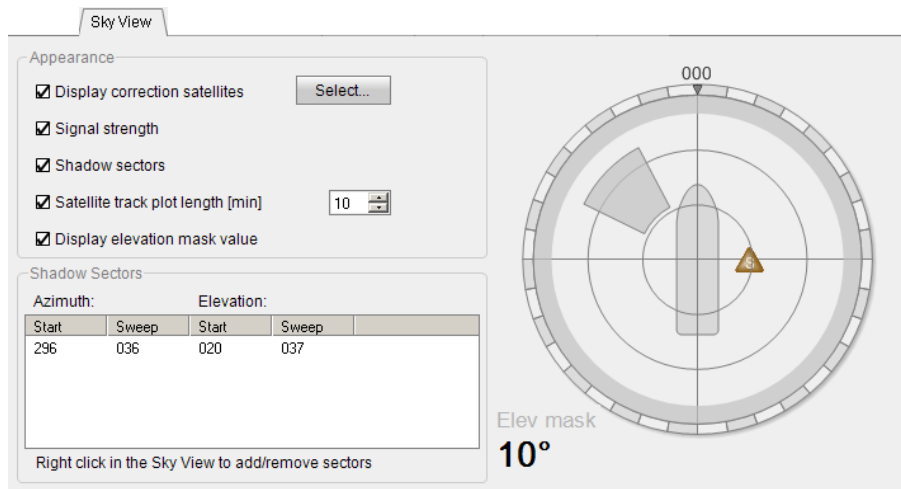
## Operator software configuration - Sky view page

Here you can define the appearance of the *Sky View*.

## How to open

Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **Sky View**.

## Example



## Details

### Display correction satellites

This option allows you to show correction satellites such as Inmarsat and Spotbeam in the Sky view. The satellite positions are predefined. You must enable the satellites which you want to appear in the Sky view where they are shown as brown triangles. Spotbeam satellites are marked with an S while Inmarsat satellites are marked with an I. When you hover the cursor over a correction satellite in the Sky view, a tooltip with satellite name, azimuth, elevation and position will appear.

### Signal strength

This option allows you to display a signal bar under the satellites in the Sky view. The signal bar indicates the signal-to-noise ratio for the satellite, and the longer the bar, the stronger the signal.

#### Note

---

*The **Signal strength (L2)** option is only available on dual frequency, single receiver systems.*

---

### Shadow sectors

This option allows you to show the shadow sectors in the Sky view. You must add a shadow sector before you can display it in the Sky view. A shadow sector is just an indicator and does not influence the position solution in any way. The shadow sector refers to the vessel centre and will follow the vessel heading. Azimuth start describes the starting angle of the sector in degrees (0 to 360) related to North. Azimuth sweep describes the size in degrees. Elevation start describes the starting angle of the sector in degrees (0 to 90) where 0 degrees is the horizon and 90 degrees is straight above the antenna.

### Satellite track plot length

This option assists in determining if a satellite is rising or falling in elevation. The **Satellite track plot length** option defines how long the length of the track plot should be. When you select this option, the track plot starts to increase. The maximum length of the track plot is 720 minutes.

### Display elevation mask value

When you select **Display elevation mask value**, the configured elevation mask is indicated in the lower left corner of the Sky view.

### Related topics

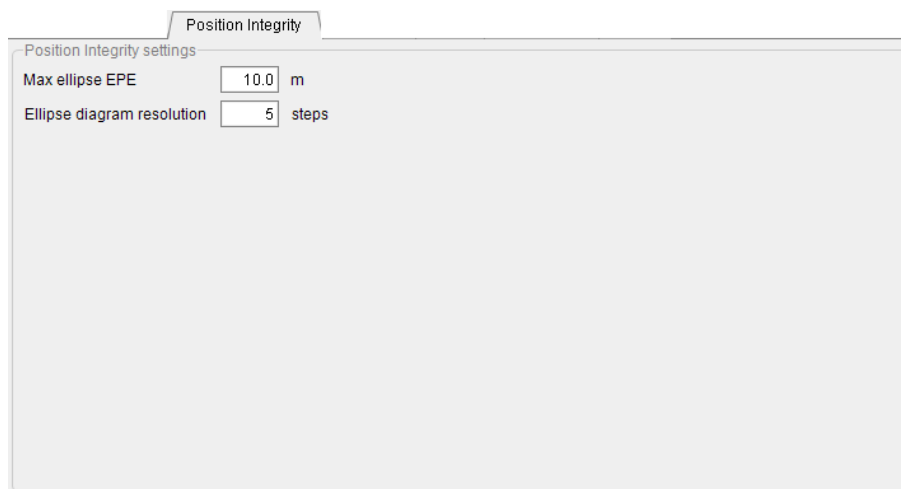
[Selecting the appearance of the Sky view, page 130](#)

## Operator software configuration - Position Integrity page

Under **Position Integrity** you can adjust the scaling of the Integrity view.

### How to open

Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **Position Integrity**.



### Description

This is the estimated position error in North/South direction. The value is metres.

The error ellipse indicates a statistical error in the position solution. The smaller the ellipse, the more accurate and reliable position.

### Details

#### Max ellipse EPE

**Max ellipse EPE** indicates the radius of the outer circle (grey area) in the Integrity view.

### Ellipse diagram resolution

The **Ellipse diagram resolution** indicates the number of steps from the centre to the outer circle.

### Related topics

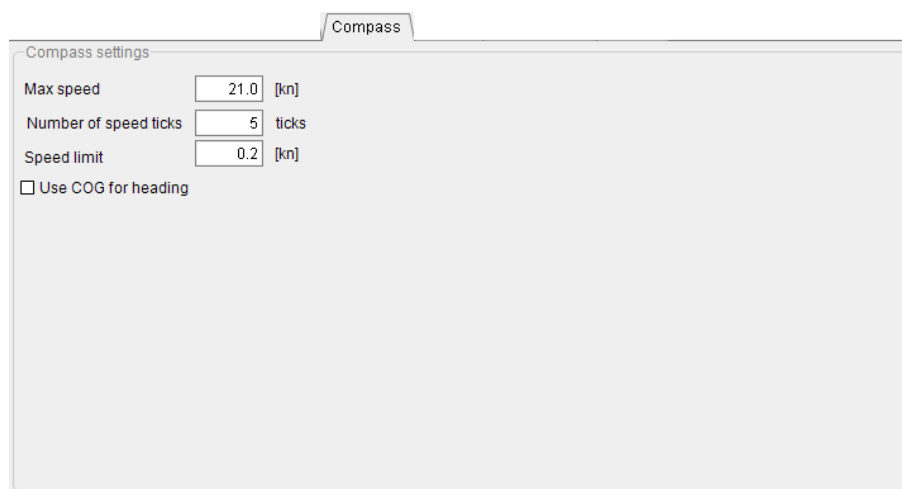
[Adjusting the Integrity view, page 132](#)

## Operator software configuration - Compass page

The **Compass** page allows you to adjust the speed scaling of the Compass view.

### How to open

Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **Compass**.



### Details

#### Max speed

This is the maximum vessel speed in knots.

#### Number of speed ticks

This is the resolution of the graphical presentation of the speed in the compass.

#### Speed limit

This is the lower speed limit in knots for when the COG (Course Over Ground) and SOG (Speed Over Ground) shall be displayed in the view.

#### Use COG for heading

Select this box if you do not have true heading.

### Related topics

[Adjusting the Compass view, page 133](#)

## Operator software configuration - UTM page

This page allows you to control how UTM positions are treated by the application. UTM is the Universal Transverse Mercator coordinate system.

### How to open

Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **UTM**.

### Example

### Details

#### False Northing,

When you select **False Northing**, positions south of the equator will always be presented as positive in the Position data area in the display. A fixed offset of 10 000 000 m is added to the northing value to avoid negative coordinates in the southern hemisphere.

#### False Easting

When you select **False Easting**, a fixed offset of 500 000 m is added to the true easting value to avoid negative coordinates.

The UTM standard uses false northing and false easting, that is the coordinates are never negative. In case negative northing or easting is wanted, clear the **False Northing** check box.

Note

---

*It is not possible to clear the **False Easting** check box.*

---

#### Zone options: Auto

When selecting **Auto** zone, the system zone is automatically calculated in accordance with the inserted coordinates.

**Zone options: Auto extended**

The UTM zone is automatically calculated by default. The **Auto extended zone** option is only applicable between 56 degrees to 64 degrees north and 3 degrees to 6 degrees east. The 32V zone is extended west to 3 degrees east, so when selecting the **Auto extended zone** in this area, zone 32V is used. When outside the current area and **Auto extended zone** is selected, the used zone is equal to the zone used when selecting **Auto** zone.

**Zone options: Manual**

Selecting **Manual** zone makes it possible to define which **Manual zone** and **Zone offset** to use. The **Zone offset** option allows a fixed offset to be applied to the longitudinal degrees. The UTM zone can be offset up to  $\pm 3$  degrees. The zone offset is typically used where the maps used have an offset. The zone range is from 1 to 60.

**Related topics**

[Adjusting UTM presentation, page 134](#)

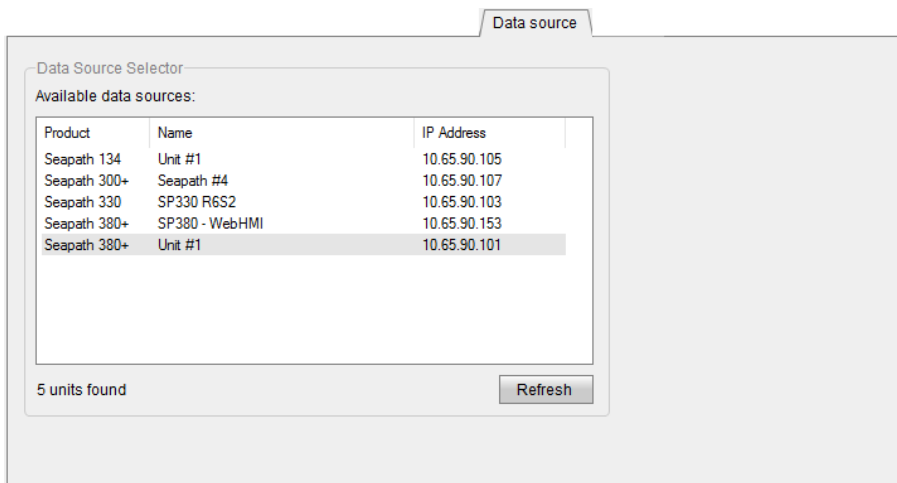
## Operator software configuration - Data source page

This page allows you to select the data source which the operator software (Seapath HMI) receives its data from.

**How to open**

Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **Data Source**.

**Example**





## Details

### Available data sources

This is a list of available Seapath sources in the system.

### Refresh

Select **Refresh** to updated the list of available units. If the wanted data source is not displayed in the list, you can check the network connections and that all equipment is switched on.

## Related topics

[Selecting the Seapath HMI software data source, page 134](#)

## Operator software configuration - Alarms page

Here you can define how to receive alarm messages.

### How to open

Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **Alarms**.

### Example



### Description

**UDP Broadcast** is the default (and recommended) setting. Defining a multicast address for alarm message distribution requires advanced network configuration skills.

## Details

### UDP Multicast

If the operator software configuration which is performed, is not in the same network as the Processing Unit, IP multicast is required. To enable multicast, select **UDP Multicast** and enter the multicast address to use for reception of alarms.

**UDP Broadcast**

Select this option if alarm messages are transmitted to all network units.

**Related topics**

[Selecting reception of alarm messages, page 135](#)

# Equipment handling

## Topics

[Taking delivery, page 245](#)

[Unpacking and handling, page 245](#)

[Storage, page 246](#)

[Disposal, page 246](#)

## Taking delivery

When the equipment arrives at its destination:

- Perform an inspection immediately to register any damage that may have occurred in transit.
- If you find any damage, both the insurance company and the shipping agent must be informed immediately.

## Unpacking and handling

Care should be taken when unpacking and handling the equipment. A visual inspection should be made to check that the equipment has not been damaged during shipment and that all components and parts are present according to the packing list.

The equipment contains delicate electronic components – handle with care and avoid shocks.

The equipment can be lifted by hand.

## Storage

After the equipment in the boxes has been inspected and it has been verified that no damage has occurred, the equipment must be stored in its original packaging until the time of installation. The storage premises must be dry and well protected.

The temperature at the storage location must be within the environmental specifications for the equipment.

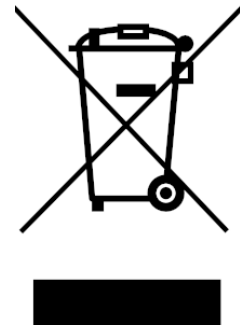
### Related topics

[Environmental specifications, page 160](#)

## Disposal

At the end of the product lifetime, all parts and products must be disposed of in an environmentally-friendly way.

All electrical and electronic parts and components must be disposed of separately from the municipal waste stream via designated collection facilities appointed by the government or local authorities. The correct disposal and separate collection of your old appliance will help prevent potential negative consequences for the environment and human health. This is a precondition for reuse and recycling of used electrical and electronic equipment. For more detailed information about disposal of your old appliance, please contact your local authorities or waste disposal service.



All disposal of mechanical, electromechanical, electronic and chemical waste - including all types of batteries - must take place according to national and international rules and regulations. Observe the relevant Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE) regulations.

The equipment can be returned to Kongsberg Discovery AS if there is no local WEEE collection. The equipment is marked with this waste pictogram.

# Free and open source software

## Topics

[General information, page 247](#)

[GNU general public license, version 2, page 248](#)

[GNU general public license, version 3, page 252](#)

[GNU lesser general public license, version 2.1, page 259](#)

[GNU lesser general public license, version 3, page 265](#)

[BSD license, page 267](#)

[GNU C library license, page 268](#)

[GCC license, page 270](#)

[ISC license, page 271](#)

[OpenSSL license, page 272](#)

[OpenSSH license, page 274](#)

[TinyLogin license, page 277](#)

[X11 license, page 278](#)

## General information

Some of the software components in this product are free and open source software. These components are released under the licenses given here.

The source code for the relevant software components may be available upon request.

- **Company name:** Kongsberg Discovery AS
- **Address:** Havnegata 9, N-7010 Trondheim, Norway
- **Telephone:** +47 33 03 41 00

- **Telephone, global 24h support:**  
Europe, the Middle East and Africa: +47 33 03 24 07  
Asia Pacific: +65 97 11 24 07  
Americas: +15 04 303 5244
- **E-mail address:** [support.seatex@kd.kongsberg.com](mailto:support.seatex@kd.kongsberg.com)
- **Website:** <http://www.kongsberg.com/discovery>

The application software is proprietary and no source code is available for it.

## GNU general public license, version 2

GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE, Version 2, June 1991

Copyright (C) 1989, 1991 Free Software Foundation, Inc., 51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301 USA

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

### Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public License is intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software--to make sure the software is free for all its users. This General Public License applies to most of the Free Software Foundation's software and to any other program whose authors commit to using it. (Some other Free Software Foundation software is covered by the GNU Lesser General Public License instead.) You can apply it to your programs, too. When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish), that you receive source code or can get it if you want it, that you can change the software or use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you know you can do these things. To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid anyone to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender the rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the software, or if you modify it. For example, if you distribute copies of such a program, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that you have. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights. We protect your rights with two steps: (1) copyright the software, and (2) offer you this license which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the software. Also, for each author's protection and ours, we want to make certain that everyone understands that there is no warranty for this free software. If the software is modified by someone else and passed on, we want its recipients to know that what they have is not the original, so that any problems introduced by others will not reflect on the original authors' reputations. Finally, any free program is threatened constantly by software patents. We wish to avoid the danger that redistributors of a free program will individually obtain patent licenses, in effect making the program proprietary. To prevent this, we have made it clear that any patent must be licensed for everyone's free use or not licensed at all. The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow.

GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND MODIFICATION

0. This License applies to any program or other work which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder saying it may be distributed under the terms of this General Public License. The "Program", below, refers to any such program or work, and a "work based on the Program" means either the Program or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Program or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".) Each licensee is addressed as "you". Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running the Program is not restricted, and the output from the Program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Program (independent of having been made by running the Program). Whether that is true depends on what the Program does.

1. You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Program's source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and give any other recipients of the Program a copy of this License along with the Program. You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

2. You may modify your copy or copies of the Program or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Program, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions: You must cause the modified files to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change. You must cause any work that you distribute or publish, that in whole or in part contains or is derived from the Program or any part thereof, to be licensed as a whole at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License. If the modified program normally reads commands interactively when run, you must cause it, when started running for such interactive use in the most ordinary way, to print or display an announcement including an appropriate copyright notice and a notice that there is no warranty (or else, saying that you provide a warranty) and that users may redistribute the program under these conditions, and telling the user how to view a copy of this License. (Exception: if the Program itself is interactive but does not normally print such an announcement, your work based on the Program is not required to print an announcement.) These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Program, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Program, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it. Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Program. In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Program with the Program (or with a work based on the Program) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

3. You may copy and distribute the Program (or a work based on it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you also do one of the following: Accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or, Accompany it with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give any third party, for a charge no more than your cost of physically performing source distribution, a complete machine-readable copy of the corresponding source code, to be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or, Accompany it with the information you received as to the offer to distribute corresponding source code. (This alternative is allowed only for noncommercial distribution and only if you received the program in object code or executable form with such an offer, in accord with Subsection b above.) The source code for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For an executable work, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any

associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the executable. However, as a special exception, the source code distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable. If distribution of executable or object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place counts as distribution of the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

4. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute the Program except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense or distribute the Program is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.

5. You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Program or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Program (or any work based on the Program), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Program or works based on it.

6. Each time you redistribute the Program (or any work based on the Program), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute or modify the Program subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties to this License.

7. If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Program at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Program by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Program. If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances. It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system, which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice. This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

8. If the distribution and/or use of the Program is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Program under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.

9. The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns. Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Program specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of



that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Program does not specify a version number of this License, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

10. If you wish to incorporate parts of the Program into other free programs whose distribution conditions are different, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

#### NO WARRANTY

11. BECAUSE THE PROGRAM IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.

12. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

#### END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

##### How to Apply These Terms to Your New Programs

If you develop a new program, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, the best way to achieve this is to make it free software which everyone can redistribute and change under these terms. To do so, attach the following notices to the program. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively convey the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer to where the full notice is found. <one line to give the program's name and an idea of what it does>

Copyright ©<year> <name of author>

This program is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2 of the License, or (at your option) any later version. This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU General Public License for more details. You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License along with this program; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301 USA. Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail. If the program is interactive, make it output a short notice like this when it starts in an interactive mode: Gnomovision version 69, Copyright (C) year name of author. Gnomovision comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY; for details type `show w'. This is free software, and you are welcome to redistribute it under certain conditions; type `show c' for details. The hypothetical commands `show w' and `show c' should show the appropriate parts of the General Public

License. Of course, the commands you use may be called something other than `show w` and `show c`; they could even be mouse-clicks or menu items--whatever suits your program. You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or your school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the program, if necessary. Here is a sample; alter the names: Yoyodyne, Inc., hereby disclaims all copyright interest in the program `Gnomovision' (which makes passes at compilers) written by James Hacker. <signature of TyCoon> 1 April 1989 Ty Coon, President of Vice This General Public License does not permit incorporating your program into proprietary programs. If your program is a subroutine library, you may consider it more useful to permit linking proprietary applications with the library. If this is what you want to do, use the GNU Lesser General Public License instead of this License.

## GNU general public license, version 3

GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE Version 3, 29 June 2007

Copyright (C) 2007 Free Software Foundation, Inc. <<http://fsf.org/>>

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

### Preamble

The GNU General Public License is a free, copyleft license for software and other kinds of works. The licenses for most software and other practical works are designed to take away your freedom to share and change the works. By contrast, the GNU General Public License is intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change all versions of a program to make sure it remains free software for all its users. We, the Free Software Foundation, use the GNU General Public License for most of our software; it applies also to any other work released this way by its authors. You can apply it to your programs, too. When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for them if you wish), that you receive source code or can get it if you want it, that you can change the software or use pieces of it in new free programs, and that you know you can do these things. To protect your rights, we need to prevent others from denying you these rights or asking you to surrender the rights. Therefore, you have certain responsibilities if you distribute copies of the software, or if you modify it: responsibilities to respect the freedom of others. For example, if you distribute copies of such a program, whether gratis or for a fee, you must pass on to the recipients the same freedoms that you received. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights. Developers that use the GNU GPL protect your rights with two steps: (1) assert copyright on the software, and (2) offer you this License giving you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify it. For the developers' and authors' protection, the GPL clearly explains that there is no warranty for this free software. For both users' and authors' sake, the GPL requires that modified versions be marked as changed, so that their problems will not be attributed erroneously to authors of previous versions. Some devices are designed to deny users access to install or run modified versions of the software inside them, although the manufacturer can do so. This is fundamentally incompatible with the aim of protecting users' freedom to change the software. The systematic pattern of such abuse occurs in the area of products for individuals to use, which is precisely where it is most unacceptable. Therefore, we have designed this version of the GPL to prohibit the practice for those products. If such problems arise substantially in other domains, we stand ready to extend this provision to those domains in future versions of the GPL, as needed to protect the freedom of users. Finally, every program is threatened constantly by software patents. States should not allow patents to restrict development and use of software on general-purpose computers, but in those that do, we wish to avoid the special danger that patents applied to a free program could make it effectively proprietary. To prevent this, the GPL assures that patents cannot be used to render the program non-free. The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow.

## TERMS AND CONDITIONS

0. Definitions. "This License" refers to version 3 of the GNU General Public License. "Copyright" also means copyright-like laws that apply to other kinds of works, such as semiconductor masks. "The Program" refers to any copyrightable work licensed under this License. Each licensee is addressed as "you". "Licensees" and "recipients" may be individuals or organizations. To "modify" a work means to copy from or adapt all or part of the work in a fashion requiring copyright permission, other than the making of an exact copy. The resulting work is called a "modified version" of the earlier work or a work "based on" the earlier work. A "covered work" means either the unmodified Program or a work based on the Program. To "propagate" a work means to do anything with it that, without permission, would make you directly or secondarily liable for infringement under applicable copyright law, except executing it on a computer or modifying a private copy. Propagation includes copying, distribution (with or without modification), making available to the public, and in some countries other activities as well. To "convey" a work means any kind of propagation that enables other parties to make or receive copies. Mere interaction with a user through a computer network, with no transfer of a copy, is not conveying. An interactive user interface displays "Appropriate Legal Notices" to the extent that it includes a convenient and prominently visible feature that (1) displays an appropriate copyright notice, and (2) tells the user that there is no warranty for the work (except to the extent that warranties are provided), that licensees may convey the work under this License, and how to view a copy of this License. If the interface presents a list of user commands or options, such as a menu, a prominent item in the list meets this criterion.

## 1. Source Code.

The "source code" for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. "Object code" means any non-source form of a work. A "Standard Interface" means an interface that either is an official standard defined by a recognized standards body, or, in the case of interfaces specified for a particular programming language, one that is widely used among developers working in that language. The "System Libraries" of an executable work include anything, other than the work as a whole, that (a) is included in the normal form of packaging a Major Component, but which is not part of that Major Component, and (b) serves only to enable use of the work with that Major Component, or to implement a Standard Interface for which an implementation is available to the public in source code form. A "Major Component", in this context, means a major essential component (kernel, window system, and so on) of the specific operating system (if any) on which the executable work runs, or a compiler used to produce the work, or an object code interpreter used to run it. The "Corresponding Source" for a work in object code form means all the source code needed to generate, install, and (for an executable work) run the object code and to modify the work, including scripts to control those activities. However, it does not include the work's System Libraries, or general-purpose tools or generally available free programs which are used unmodified in performing those activities but which are not part of the work. For example, Corresponding Source includes interface definition files associated with source files for the work, and the source code for shared libraries and dynamically linked subprograms that the work is specifically designed to require, such as by intimate data communication or control flow between those subprograms and other parts of the work. The Corresponding Source need not include anything that users can regenerate automatically from other parts of the Corresponding Source. The Corresponding Source for a work in source code form is that same work.

## 2. Basic Permissions.

All rights granted under this License are granted for the term of copyright on the Program, and are irrevocable provided the stated conditions are met. This License explicitly affirms your unlimited permission to run the unmodified Program. The output from running a covered work is covered by this License only if the output, given its content, constitutes a covered work. This License acknowledges your rights of fair use or other equivalent, as provided by copyright law. You may make, run and propagate covered works that you do not convey, without conditions so long as your license otherwise remains in force. You may convey covered works to others for the sole purpose of having them

make modifications exclusively for you, or provide you with facilities for running those works, provided that you comply with the terms of this License in conveying all material for which you do not control copyright. Those thus making or running the covered works for you must do so exclusively on your behalf, under your direction and control, on terms that prohibit them from making any copies of your copyrighted material outside their relationship with you. Conveying under any other circumstances is permitted solely under the conditions stated below. Sublicensing is not allowed; section 10 makes it unnecessary.

### 3. Protecting Users' Legal Rights From Anti-Circumvention Law.

No covered work shall be deemed part of an effective technological measure under any applicable law fulfilling obligations under article 11 of the WIPO copyright treaty adopted on 20 December 1996, or similar laws prohibiting or restricting circumvention of such measures. When you convey a covered work, you waive any legal power to forbid circumvention of technological measures to the extent such circumvention is effected by exercising rights under this License with respect to the covered work, and you disclaim any intention to limit operation or modification of the work as a means of enforcing, against the work's users, your or third parties' legal rights to forbid circumvention of technological measures.

### 4. Conveying Verbatim Copies.

You may convey verbatim copies of the Program's source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice; keep intact all notices stating that this License and any non-permissive terms added in accord with section 7 apply to the code; keep intact all notices of the absence of any warranty; and give all recipients a copy of this License along with the Program. You may charge any price or no price for each copy that you convey, and you may offer support or warranty protection for a fee.

### 5. Conveying Modified Source Versions.

You may convey a work based on the Program, or the modifications to produce it from the Program, in the form of source code under the terms of section 4, provided that you also meet all of these conditions: a) The work must carry prominent notices stating that you modified it, and giving a relevant date. b) The work must carry prominent notices stating that it is released under this License and any conditions added under section 7. This requirement modifies the requirement in section 4 to "keep intact all notices". c) You must license the entire work, as a whole, under this License to anyone who comes into possession of a copy. This License will therefore apply, along with any applicable section 7 additional terms, to the whole of the work, and all its parts, regardless of how they are packaged. This License gives no permission to license the work in any other way, but it does not invalidate such permission if you have separately received it. d) If the work has interactive user interfaces, each must display Appropriate Legal Notices; however, if the Program has interactive interfaces that do not display Appropriate Legal Notices, your work need not make them do so. A compilation of a covered work with other separate and independent works, which are not by their nature extensions of the covered work, and which are not combined with it such as to form a larger program, in or on a volume of a storage or distribution medium, is called an "aggregate" if the compilation and its resulting copyright are not used to limit the access or legal rights of the compilation's users beyond what the individual works permit. Inclusion of a covered work in an aggregate does not cause this License to apply to the other parts of the aggregate.

### 6. Conveying Non-Source Forms.

You may convey a covered work in object code form under the terms of sections 4 and 5, provided that you also convey the machine-readable Corresponding Source under the terms of this License, in one of these ways: a) Convey the object code in, or embodied in, a physical product (including a physical distribution medium), accompanied by the Corresponding Source fixed on a durable physical medium customarily used for software interchange. b) Convey the object code in, or embodied in, a physical product (including a physical distribution medium), accompanied by a written offer, valid for at least three years and valid for as long as you offer spare parts or customer support for

that product model, to give anyone who possesses the object code either (1) a copy of the Corresponding Source for all the software in the product that is covered by this License, on a durable physical medium customarily used for software interchange, for a price no more than your reasonable cost of physically performing this conveying of source, or (2) access to copy the Corresponding Source from a network server at no charge. c) Convey individual copies of the object code with a copy of the written offer to provide the Corresponding Source. This alternative is allowed only occasionally and noncommercially, and only if you received the object code with such an offer, in accord with subsection 6b. d) Convey the object code by offering access from a designated place (gratis or for a charge), and offer equivalent access to the Corresponding Source in the same way through the same place at no further charge. You need not require recipients to copy the Corresponding Source along with the object code. If the place to copy the object code is a network server, the Corresponding Source may be on a different server (operated by you or a third party) that supports equivalent copying facilities, provided you maintain clear directions next to the object code saying where to find the Corresponding Source. Regardless of what server hosts the Corresponding Source, you remain obligated to ensure that it is available for as long as needed to satisfy these requirements. e) Convey the object code using peer-to-peer transmission, provided you inform other peers where the object code and Corresponding Source of the work are being offered to the general public at no charge under subsection 6d. A separable portion of the object code, whose source code is excluded from the Corresponding Source as a System Library, need not be included in conveying the object code work. A "User Product" is either (1) a "consumer product", which means any tangible personal property which is normally used for personal, family, or household purposes, or (2) anything designed or sold for incorporation into a dwelling. In determining whether a product is a consumer product, doubtful cases shall be resolved in favor of coverage. For a particular product received by a particular user, "normally used" refers to a typical or common use of that class of product, regardless of the status of the particular user or of the way in which the particular user actually uses, or expects or is expected to use, the product. A product is a consumer product regardless of whether the product has substantial commercial, industrial or non-consumer uses, unless such uses represent the only significant mode of use of the product. "Installation Information" for a User Product means any methods, procedures, authorization keys, or other information required to install and execute modified versions of a covered work in that User Product from a modified version of its Corresponding Source. The information must suffice to ensure that the continued functioning of the modified object code is in no case prevented or interfered with solely because modification has been made. If you convey an object code work under this section in, or with, or specifically for use in, a User Product, and the conveying occurs as part of a transaction in which the right of possession and use of the User Product is transferred to the recipient in perpetuity or for a fixed term (regardless of how the transaction is characterized), the Corresponding Source conveyed under this section must be accompanied by the Installation Information. But this requirement does not apply if neither you nor any third party retains the ability to install modified object code on the User Product (for example, the work has been installed in ROM). The requirement to provide Installation Information does not include a requirement to continue to provide support service, warranty, or updates for a work that has been modified or installed by the recipient, or for the User Product in which it has been modified or installed. Access to a network may be denied when the modification itself materially and adversely affects the operation of the network or violates the rules and protocols for communication across the network. Corresponding Source conveyed, and Installation Information provided, in accord with this section must be in a format that is publicly documented (and with an implementation available to the public in source code form), and must require no special password or key for unpacking, reading or copying.

#### 7. Additional Terms.

"Additional permissions" are terms that supplement the terms of this License by making exceptions from one or more of its conditions. Additional permissions that are applicable to the entire Program shall be treated as though they were included in this License, to the extent that they are valid under applicable law. If additional permissions apply only to part of the Program, that part may be used separately under those permissions, but the entire Program

remains governed by this License without regard to the additional permissions. When you convey a copy of a covered work, you may at your option remove any additional permissions from that copy, or from any part of it. (Additional permissions may be written to require their own removal in certain cases when you modify the work.) You may place additional permissions on material, added by you to a covered work, for which you have or can give appropriate copyright permission. Notwithstanding any other provision of this License, for material you add to a covered work, you may (if authorized by the copyright holders of that material) supplement the terms of this License with terms:

- a) Disclaiming warranty or limiting liability differently from the terms of sections 15 and 16 of this License; or b) Requiring preservation of specified reasonable legal notices or author attributions in that material or in the Appropriate Legal Notices displayed by works containing it; or c) Prohibiting misrepresentation of the origin of that material, or requiring that modified versions of such material be marked in reasonable ways as different from the original version; or d) Limiting the use for publicity purposes of names of licensors or authors of the material; or e) Declining to grant rights under trademark law for use of some trade names, trademarks, or service marks; or f) Requiring indemnification of licensors and authors of that material by anyone who conveys the material (or modified versions of it) with contractual assumptions of liability to the recipient, for any liability that these contractual assumptions directly impose on those licensors and authors. All other non-permissive additional terms are considered "further restrictions" within the meaning of section 10. If the Program as you received it, or any part of it, contains a notice stating that it is governed by this License along with a term that is a further restriction, you may remove that term. If a license document contains a further restriction but permits relicensing or conveying under this License, you may add to a covered work material governed by the terms of that license document, provided that the further restriction does not survive such relicensing or conveying. If you add terms to a covered work in accord with this section, you must place, in the relevant source files, a statement of the additional terms that apply to those files, or a notice indicating where to find the applicable terms. Additional terms, permissive or non-permissive, may be stated in the form of a separately written license, or stated as exceptions; the above requirements apply either way.

### 8. Termination.

You may not propagate or modify a covered work except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to propagate or modify it is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License (including any patent licenses granted under the third paragraph of section 11). However, if you cease all violation of this License, then your license from a particular copyright holder is reinstated (a) provisionally, unless and until the copyright holder explicitly and finally terminates your license, and (b) permanently, if the copyright holder fails to notify you of the violation by some reasonable means prior to 60 days after the cessation. Moreover, your license from a particular copyright holder is reinstated permanently if the copyright holder notifies you of the violation by some reasonable means, this is the first time you have received notice of violation of this License (for any work) from that copyright holder, and you cure the violation prior to 30 days after your receipt of the notice. Termination of your rights under this section does not terminate the licenses of parties who have received copies or rights from you under this License. If your rights have been terminated and not permanently reinstated, you do not qualify to receive new licenses for the same material under section 10.

### 9. Acceptance Not Required for Having Copies.

You are not required to accept this License in order to receive or run a copy of the Program. Ancillary propagation of a covered work occurring solely as a consequence of using peer-to-peer transmission to receive a copy likewise does not require acceptance. However, nothing other than this License grants you permission to propagate or modify any covered work. These actions infringe copyright if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or propagating a covered work, you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so.

### 10. Automatic Licensing of Downstream Recipients.

Each time you convey a covered work, the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensors, to run, modify and propagate that work, subject to this License. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties with this License. An "entity transaction" is a transaction transferring control of an organization, or substantially all assets of one, or subdividing an organization, or merging organizations. If propagation of a covered work results from an entity transaction, each party to that transaction who receives a copy of the work also receives whatever licenses to the work the party's predecessor in interest had or could give under the previous paragraph, plus a right to possession of the Corresponding Source of the work from the predecessor in interest, if the predecessor has it or can get it with reasonable efforts. You may not impose any further restrictions on the exercise of the rights granted or affirmed under this License. For example, you may not impose a license fee, royalty, or other charge for exercise of rights granted under this License, and you may not initiate litigation (including a cross-claim or counterclaim in a lawsuit) alleging that any patent claim is infringed by making, using, selling, offering for sale, or importing the Program or any portion of it.

#### 11. Patents.

A "contributor" is a copyright holder who authorizes use under this License of the Program or a work on which the Program is based. The work thus licensed is called the contributor's "contributor version". A contributor's "essential patent claims" are all patent claims owned or controlled by the contributor, whether already acquired or hereafter acquired, that would be infringed by some manner, permitted by this License, of making, using, or selling its contributor version, but do not include claims that would be infringed only as a consequence of further modification of the contributor version. For purposes of this definition, "control" includes the right to grant patent sublicenses in a manner consistent with the requirements of this License. Each contributor grants you a non-exclusive, worldwide, royalty-free patent license under the contributor's essential patent claims, to make, use, sell, offer for sale, import and otherwise run, modify and propagate the contents of its contributor version. In the following three paragraphs, a "patent license" is any express agreement or commitment, however denominated, not to enforce a patent (such as an express permission to practice a patent or covenant not to sue for patent infringement). To "grant" such a patent license to a party means to make such an agreement or commitment not to enforce a patent against the party. If you convey a covered work, knowingly relying on a patent license, and the Corresponding Source of the work is not available for anyone to copy, free of charge and under the terms of this License, through a publicly available network server or other readily accessible means, then you must either (1) cause the Corresponding Source to be so available, or (2) arrange to deprive yourself of the benefit of the patent license for this particular work, or (3) arrange, in a manner consistent with the requirements of this License, to extend the patent license to downstream recipients. "Knowingly relying" means you have actual knowledge that, but for the patent license, your conveying the covered work in a country, or your recipient's use of the covered work in a country, would infringe one or more identifiable patents in that country that you have reason to believe are valid. If, pursuant to or in connection with a single transaction or arrangement, you convey, or propagate by procuring conveyance of, a covered work, and grant a patent license to some of the parties receiving the covered work authorizing them to use, propagate, modify or convey a specific copy of the covered work, then the patent license you grant is automatically extended to all recipients of the covered work and works based on it. A patent license is "discriminatory" if it does not include within the scope of its coverage, prohibits the exercise of, or is conditioned on the non-exercise of one or more of the rights that are specifically granted under this License. You may not convey a covered work if you are a party to an arrangement with a third party that is in the business of distributing software, under which you make payment to the third party based on the extent of your activity of conveying the work, and under which the third party grants, to any of the parties who would receive the covered work from you, a discriminatory patent license (a) in connection with copies of the covered work conveyed by you (or copies made from those copies), or (b) primarily for and in connection with specific products or compilations that contain the covered work, unless you entered into that arrangement, or that patent license was granted, prior to 28

March 2007. Nothing in this License shall be construed as excluding or limiting any implied license or other defenses to infringement that may otherwise be available to you under applicable patent law.

12. No Surrender of Others' Freedom. If conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot convey a covered work so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not convey it at all. For example, if you agree to terms that obligate you to collect a royalty for further conveying from those to whom you convey the Program, the only way you could satisfy both those terms and this License would be to refrain entirely from conveying the Program.

13. Use with the GNU Affero General Public License.

Notwithstanding any other provision of this License, you have permission to link or combine any covered work with a work licensed under version 3 of the GNU Affero General Public License into a single combined work, and to convey the resulting work. The terms of this License will continue to apply to the part which is the covered work, but the special requirements of the GNU Affero General Public License, section 13, concerning interaction through a network will apply to the combination as such.

14. Revised Versions of this License.

The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the GNU General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns. Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Program specifies that a certain numbered version of the GNU General Public License "or any later version" applies to it, you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that numbered version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Program does not specify a version number of the GNU General Public License, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Program specifies that a proxy can decide which future versions of the GNU General Public License can be used, that proxy's public statement of acceptance of a version permanently authorizes you to choose that version for the Program. Later license versions may give you additional or different permissions. However, no additional obligations are imposed on any author or copyright holder as a result of your choosing to follow a later version.

15. Disclaimer of Warranty.

THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.

16. Limitation of Liability.

IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MODIFIES AND/OR CONVEYS THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.



## 17. Interpretation of Sections 15 and 16.

If the disclaimer of warranty and limitation of liability provided above cannot be given local legal effect according to their terms, reviewing courts shall apply local law that most closely approximates an absolute waiver of all civil liability in connection with the Program, unless a warranty or assumption of liability accompanies a copy of the Program in return for a fee.

## END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

## How to Apply These Terms to Your New Programs

If you develop a new program, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, the best way to achieve this is to make it free software which everyone can redistribute and change under these terms. To do so, attach the following notices to the program. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively state the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer to where the full notice is found. <one line to give the program's name and a brief idea of what it does.> Copyright (C) <year> <name of author> This program is free software: you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation, either version 3 of the License, or (at your option) any later version. This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU General Public License for more details. You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License along with this program. If not, see <<http://www.gnu.org/licenses/>>. Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail. If the program does terminal interaction, make it output a short notice like this when it starts in an interactive mode: <program> Copyright (C) <year><name of author> This program comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY; for details type `show w'. This is free software, and you are welcome to redistribute it under certain conditions; type `show c' for details. The hypothetical commands `show w' and `show c' should show the appropriate parts of the General Public License. Of course, your program's commands might be different; for a GUI interface, you would use an "about box". You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the program, if necessary. For more information on this, and how to apply and follow the GNU GPL, see <<http://www.gnu.org/licenses/>>. The GNU General Public License does not permit incorporating your program into proprietary programs. If your program is a subroutine library, you may consider it more useful to permit linking proprietary applications with the library. If this is what you want to do, use the GNU Lesser General Public License instead of this License. But first, please read <<http://www.gnu.org/philosophy/why-not-lgpl.html>>.

## GNU lesser general public license, version 2.1

GNU LESSER GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE Version 2.1, February 1999

Copyright (C) 1991, 1999 Free Software Foundation, Inc. 51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301 USA

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed. [This is the first released version of the Lesser GPL. It also counts as the successor of the GNU Library Public License, version 2, hence the version number 2.1.]

Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public Licenses are intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software to make sure the software is free for all its users. This license, the Lesser General Public License, applies to some specially designated software packages - typically libraries - of the Free Software Foundation and other authors who decide to use it. You can use it too, but we suggest you first think carefully about whether this license or the ordinary General Public License is the better strategy to use in any particular case, based on the explanations below. When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom of use, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish); that you receive source code or can get it if you want it; that you can change the software and use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you are informed that you can do these things. To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid distributors to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender these rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the library or if you modify it. For example, if you distribute copies of the library, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that we gave you. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. If you link other code with the library, you must provide complete object files to the recipients, so that they can relink them with the library after making changes to the library and recompiling it. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights. We protect your rights with a two-step method: (1) we copyright the library, and (2) we offer you this license, which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the library. To protect each distributor, we want to make it very clear that there is no warranty for the free library. Also, if the library is modified by someone else and passed on, the recipients should know that what they have is not the original version, so that the original author's reputation will not be affected by problems that might be introduced by others. Finally, software patents pose a constant threat to the existence of any free program. We wish to make sure that a company cannot effectively restrict the users of a free program by obtaining a restrictive license from a patent holder. Therefore, we insist that any patent license obtained for a version of the library must be consistent with the full freedom of use specified in this license. Most GNU software, including some libraries, is covered by the ordinary GNU General Public License. This license, the GNU Lesser General Public License, applies to certain designated libraries, and is quite different from the ordinary General Public License. We use this license for certain libraries in order to permit linking those libraries into non-free programs. When a program is linked with a library, whether statically or using a shared library, the combination of the two is legally speaking a combined work, a derivative of the original library. The ordinary General Public License therefore permits such linking only if the entire combination fits its criteria of freedom. The Lesser General Public License permits more lax criteria for linking other code with the library. We call this license the "Lesser" General Public License because it does Less to protect the user's freedom than the ordinary General Public License. It also provides other free software developers Less of an advantage over competing non-free programs. These disadvantages are the reason we use the ordinary General Public License for many libraries. However, the Lesser license provides advantages in certain special circumstances. For example, on rare occasions, there may be a special need to encourage the widest possible use of a certain library, so that it becomes a de-facto standard. To achieve this, non-free programs must be allowed to use the library. A more frequent case is that a free library does the same job as widely used non-free libraries. In this case, there is little to gain by limiting the free library to free software only, so we use the Lesser General Public License. In other cases, permission to use a particular library in non-free programs enables a greater number of people to use a large body of free software. For example, permission to use the GNU C Library in non-free programs enables many more people to use the whole GNU operating system, as well as its variant, the GNU/Linux operating system. Although the Lesser General Public License is Less protective of the users' freedom, it does ensure that the user of a program that is linked with the Library has the freedom and the wherewithal to run that program using a modified version of the Library. The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow. Pay close attention to the difference between a "work based on the library" and a "work that uses the library". The former contains code derived from the library, whereas the latter must be combined with the library in order to run.

## GNU LESSER GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND MODIFICATION

0. This License Agreement applies to any software library or other program which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder or other authorized party saying it may be distributed under the terms of this Lesser General Public License (also called "this License"). Each licensee is addressed as "you". A "library" means a collection of software functions and/or data prepared so as to be conveniently linked with application programs (which use some of those functions and data) to form executables. The "Library", below, refers to any such software library or work which has been distributed under these terms. A "work based on the Library" means either the Library or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Library or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated straightforwardly into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".) "Source code" for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For a library, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the library. Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running a program using the Library is not restricted, and output from such a program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Library (independent of the use of the Library in a tool for writing it). Whether that is true depends on what the Library does and what the program that uses the Library does.

1. You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Library's complete source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and distribute a copy of this License along with the Library. You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

2. You may modify your copy or copies of the Library or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Library, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions: The modified work must itself be a software library. You must cause the files modified to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change. You must cause the whole of the work to be licensed at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License. If a facility in the modified Library refers to a function or a table of data to be supplied by an application program that uses the facility, other than as an argument passed when the facility is invoked, then you must make a good faith effort to ensure that, in the event an application does not supply such function or table, the facility still operates, and performs whatever part of its purpose remains meaningful. (For example, a function in a library to compute square roots has a purpose that is entirely well-defined independent of the application. Therefore, Subsection 2d requires that any application-supplied function or table used by this function must be optional: if the application does not supply it, the square root function must still compute square roots.) These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Library, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Library, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it. Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Library. In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Library with the Library (or with a work based on the Library) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

3. You may opt to apply the terms of the ordinary GNU General Public License instead of this License to a given copy of the Library. To do this, you must alter all the notices that refer to this License, so that they refer to the ordinary GNU General Public License, version 2, instead of to this License. (If a newer version than version 2 of the ordinary GNU General Public License has appeared, then you can specify that version instead if you wish.) Do not make any other change in these notices. Once this change is made in a given copy, it is irreversible for that copy, so the ordinary GNU General Public License applies to all subsequent copies and derivative works made from that copy. This option is useful when you wish to copy part of the code of the Library into a program that is not a library.

4. You may copy and distribute the Library (or a portion or derivative of it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange. If distribution of object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place satisfies the requirement to distribute the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

5. A program that contains no derivative of any portion of the Library, but is designed to work with the Library by being compiled or linked with it, is called a "work that uses the Library". Such a work, in isolation, is not a derivative work of the Library, and therefore falls outside the scope of this License. However, linking a "work that uses the Library" with the Library creates an executable that is a derivative of the Library (because it contains portions of the Library), rather than a "work that uses the library". The executable is therefore covered by this License. Section 6 states terms for distribution of such executables. When a "work that uses the Library" uses material from a header file that is part of the Library, the object code for the work may be a derivative work of the Library even though the source code is not. Whether this is true is especially significant if the work can be linked without the Library, or if the work is itself a library. The threshold for this to be true is not precisely defined by law. If such an object file uses only numerical parameters, data structure layouts and accessors, and small macros and small inline functions (ten lines or less in length), then the use of the object file is unrestricted, regardless of whether it is legally a derivative work. (Executables containing this object code plus portions of the Library will still fall under Section 6.) Otherwise, if the work is a derivative of the Library, you may distribute the object code for the work under the terms of Section 6. Any executables containing that work also fall under Section 6, whether or not they are linked directly with the Library itself.

6. As an exception to the Sections above, you may also combine or link a "work that uses the Library" with the Library to produce a work containing portions of the Library, and distribute that work under terms of your choice, provided that the terms permit modification of the work for the customer's own use and reverse engineering for debugging such modifications. You must give prominent notice with each copy of the work that the Library is used in it and that the Library and its use are covered by this License. You must supply a copy of this License. If the work during execution displays copyright notices, you must include the copyright notice for the Library among them, as well as a reference directing the user to the copy of this License. Also, you must do one of these things: Accompany the work with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code for the Library including whatever changes were used in the work (which must be distributed under Sections 1 and 2 above); and, if the work is an executable linked with the Library, with the complete machine-readable "work that uses the Library", as object code and/or source code, so that the user can modify the Library and then relink to produce a modified executable containing the modified Library. (It is understood that the user who changes the contents of definitions files in the Library will not necessarily be able to recompile the application to use the modified definitions.) Use a suitable shared library mechanism for linking with the Library. A suitable mechanism is one that (1) uses at run time a copy of the library already present on the user's computer system, rather than copying library functions into the executable, and (2) will operate properly with a modified version of the library, if the user installs one, as long as the modified version is interface-compatible with the version that the work was made with. Accompany the work with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give

the same user the materials specified in Subsection 6a, above, for a charge no more than the cost of performing this distribution. If distribution of the work is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, offer equivalent access to copy the above specified materials from the same place. Verify that the user has already received a copy of these materials or that you have already sent this user a copy. For an executable, the required form of the "work that uses the Library" must include any data and utility programs needed for reproducing the executable from it. However, as a special exception, the materials to be distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable. It may happen that this requirement contradicts the license restrictions of other proprietary libraries that do not normally accompany the operating system. Such a contradiction means you cannot use both them and the Library together in an executable that you distribute.

7. You may place library facilities that are a work based on the Library side-by-side in a single library together with other library facilities not covered by this License, and distribute such a combined library, provided that the separate distribution of the work based on the Library and of the other library facilities is otherwise permitted, and provided that you do these two things: a) Accompany the combined library with a copy of the same work based on the Library, uncombined with any other library facilities. This must be distributed under the terms of the Sections above. b) Give prominent notice with the combined library of the fact that part of it is a work based on the Library, and explaining where to find the accompanying uncombined form of the same work.

8. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, link with, or distribute the Library except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense, link with, or distribute the Library is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.

9. You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Library or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Library (or any work based on the Library), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Library or works based on it.

10. Each time you redistribute the Library (or any work based on the Library), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute, link with or modify the Library subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties with this License.

11. If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Library at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Library by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Library. If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply, and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances. It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing

to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice. This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

12. If the distribution and/or use of the Library is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Library under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.

13. The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the Lesser General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns. Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Library specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Library does not specify a license version number, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

14. If you wish to incorporate parts of the Library into other free programs whose distribution conditions are incompatible with these, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

### NO WARRANTY

15. BECAUSE THE LIBRARY IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE LIBRARY, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE LIBRARY "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE LIBRARY IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE LIBRARY PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. 16. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE LIBRARY AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE LIBRARY (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE LIBRARY TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER SOFTWARE), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

### END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

#### How to Apply These Terms to Your New Libraries

If you develop a new library, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, we recommend making it free software that everyone can redistribute and change. You can do so by permitting redistribution under these terms (or, alternatively, under the terms of the ordinary General Public License). To apply these terms, attach the following notices to the library. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively convey the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer to where the full notice is found. <one line to give the program's name and an idea of what it does>. Copyright ©<year> <name of author>. This library is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU Lesser General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2.1 of the License, or (at your option) any later

version. This library is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU Lesser General Public License for more details. You should have received a copy of the GNU Lesser General Public License along with this library; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301 USA. Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail. You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or your school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the library, if necessary. Here is a sample; alter the names: Yoyodyne, Inc., hereby disclaims all copyright interest in the library. `Frob' (a library for tweaking knobs) written by James Random Hacker. <signature of TyCoon> 1 April 1990 Ty Coon, President of Vice. That's all there is to it!

## GNU lesser general public license, version 3

GNU LESSER GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE Version 3, 29 June 2007

Copyright (C) 2007 Free Software Foundation, Inc. <<http://fsf.org/>>

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed. This version of the GNU Lesser General Public License incorporates the terms and conditions of version 3 of the GNU General Public License, supplemented by the additional permissions listed below.

### 0. Additional Definitions.

As used herein, "this License" refers to version 3 of the GNU Lesser General Public License, and the "GNU GPL" refers to version 3 of the GNU General Public License. "The Library" refers to a covered work governed by this License, other than an Application or a Combined Work as defined below. An "Application" is any work that makes use of an interface provided by the Library, but which is not otherwise based on the Library. Defining a subclass of a class defined by the Library is deemed a mode of using an interface provided by the Library. A "Combined Work" is a work produced by combining or linking an Application with the Library. The particular version of the Library with which the Combined Work was made is also called the "Linked Version". The "Minimal Corresponding Source" for a Combined Work means the Corresponding Source for the Combined Work, excluding any source code for portions of the Combined Work that, considered in isolation, are based on the Application, and not on the Linked Version. The "Corresponding Application Code" for a Combined Work means the object code and/or source code for the Application, including any data and utility programs needed for reproducing the Combined Work from the Application, but excluding the System Libraries of the Combined Work.

### 1. Exception to Section 3 of the GNU GPL.

You may convey a covered work under sections 3 and 4 of this License without being bound by section 3 of the GNU GPL.

### 2. Conveying Modified Versions.

If you modify a copy of the Library, and, in your modifications, a facility refers to a function or data to be supplied by an Application that uses the facility (other than as an argument passed when the facility is invoked), then you may convey a copy of the modified version: a) under this License, provided that you make a good faith effort to ensure that, in the event an Application does not supply the function or data, the facility still operates, and performs whatever part of its purpose remains meaningful, or b) under the GNU GPL, with none of the additional permissions of this License applicable to that copy.

### 3. Object Code Incorporating Material from Library Header Files.

The object code form of an Application may incorporate material from a header file that is part of the Library. You may convey such object code under terms of your choice, provided that, if the incorporated material is not limited to numerical parameters, data structure layouts and accessors, or small macros, inline functions and templates (ten or fewer lines in length), you do both of the following: a) Give prominent notice with each copy of the object code that the Library is used in it and that the Library and its use are covered by this License. b) Accompany the object code with a copy of the GNU GPL and this license document.

#### 4. Combined Works.

You may convey a Combined Work under terms of your choice that, taken together, effectively do not restrict modification of the portions of the Library contained in the Combined Work and reverse engineering for debugging such modifications, if you also do each of the following: a) Give prominent notice with each copy of the Combined Work that the Library is used in it and that the Library and its use are covered by this License. b) Accompany the Combined Work with a copy of the GNU GPL and this license document. c) For a Combined Work that displays copyright notices during execution, include the copyright notice for the Library among these notices, as well as a reference directing the user to the copies of the GNU GPL and this license document. d) Do one of the following: 0) Convey the Minimal Corresponding Source under the terms of this License, and the Corresponding Application Code in a form suitable for, and under terms that permit, the user to recombine or relink the Application with a modified version of the Linked Version to produce a modified Combined Work, in the manner specified by section 6 of the GNU GPL for conveying Corresponding Source. 1) Use a suitable shared library mechanism for linking with the Library. A suitable mechanism is one that (a) uses at run time a copy of the Library already present on the user's computer system, and (b) will operate properly with a modified version of the Library that is interface-compatible with the Linked Version. e) Provide Installation Information, but only if you would otherwise be required to provide such information under section 6 of the GNU GPL, and only to the extent that such information is necessary to install and execute a modified version of the Combined Work produced by recombining or relinking the Application with a modified version of the Linked Version. (If you use option 4d0, the Installation Information must accompany the Minimal Corresponding Source and Corresponding Application Code. If you use option 4d1, you must provide the Installation Information in the manner specified by section 6 of the GNU GPL for conveying Corresponding Source.)

#### 5. Combined Libraries.

You may place library facilities that are a work based on the Library side by side in a single library together with other library facilities that are not Applications and are not covered by this License, and convey such a combined library under terms of your choice, if you do both of the following: a) Accompany the combined library with a copy of the same work based on the Library, uncombined with any other library facilities, conveyed under the terms of this License. b) Give prominent notice with the combined library that part of it is a work based on the Library, and explaining where to find the accompanying uncombined form of the same work.

#### 6. Revised Versions of the GNU Lesser General Public License.

The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the GNU Lesser General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns. Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Library as you received it specifies that a certain numbered version of the GNU Lesser General Public License "or any later version" applies to it, you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that published version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Library as you received it does not specify a version number of the GNU Lesser General Public License, you may choose any version of the GNU Lesser General Public License ever published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Library as you received it specifies that a proxy can decide whether future versions of the GNU Lesser General Public License shall apply, that proxy's public statement of acceptance of any version is permanent authorization for you to choose that version for the Library.



## BSD license

Copyright (c) 1983, 1988, 1989, 1990, 1993 The Regents of the University of California.

Copyright (c) 1996, 1997, 1998, 1999, 2003 Theodore Ts'o.

Copyright (c) 1997, 1998, 2001 Kungliga Tekniska Högskolan.

Copyright (c) 1991, 1992 Paul Kranenburg <pk@cs.few.eur.nl>.

Copyright (c) 1993 Branko Lankester <branko@hacktic.nl>.

Copyright (c) 1993 Ulrich Pegelow <pegelow@moorea.uni-muenster.de>.

Copyright (c) 1995, 1996 Michael Elizabeth Chastain <mec@duracef.shout.net>.

Copyright (c) 1993, 1994, 1995, 1996 Rick Sladkey <jrs@world.std.com>.

Copyright (c) 1998-2001 Wichert Akkerman <wakkerma@deephackmode.org>.

Copyright (c) 1995 Nick Simicich (njs@scifi.emi.net).

Copyright (c) 2000-2001 Gunnar Ritter.

Copyright (c) 2004, Jan Kneschke, incremental.

Copyright (c) 1997-2010 University of Cambridge

Copyright (c) 2007-2010, Google Inc.

All Rights Reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. The name of the author may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## GNU C library license

The GNU C library is released under the licenses shown below in addition to GPL and LGPL.

This file contains the copying permission notices for various files in the GNU C Library distribution that have copyright owners other than the Free Software Foundation. These notices all require that a copy of the notice be included in the accompanying documentation and be distributed with binary distributions of the code, so be sure to include this file along with any binary distributions derived from the GNU C Library.

All code incorporated from 4.4 BSD is distributed under the following license:

Copyright (C) 1991 Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: 1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. 2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. 3. [This condition was removed.] 4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The DNS resolver code, taken from BIND 4.9.5, is copyrighted both by UC Berkeley and by Digital Equipment Corporation. The DEC portions are under the following license: Portions Copyright (C) 1993 by Digital Equipment Corporation. Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies, and that the name of Digital Equipment Corporation not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the document or software without specific, written prior permission.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED ``AS IS'' AND DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORP. DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORPORATION BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

The Sun RPC support (from rpsrc-4.0) is covered by the following license: Copyright (C) 1984, Sun Microsystems, Inc. Sun RPC is a product of Sun Microsystems, Inc. and is provided for unrestricted use provided that this legend is included on all tape media and as a part of the software program in whole or part. Users may copy or modify Sun RPC without charge, but are not authorized to license or distribute it to anyone else except as part of a product or program developed by the user.

SUN RPC IS PROVIDED AS IS WITH NO WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND INCLUDING THE WARRANTIES OF DESIGN, MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE OR TRADE PRACTICE.

Sun RPC is provided with no support and without any obligation on the part of Sun Microsystems, Inc. to assist in its use, correction, modification or enhancement.

SUN MICROSYSTEMS, INC. SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY WITH RESPECT TO THE INFRINGEMENT OF COPYRIGHTS, TRADE SECRETS OR ANY PATENTS BY SUN RPC OR ANY PART THEREOF.

In no event will Sun Microsystems, Inc. be liable for any lost revenue or profits or other special, indirect and consequential damages, even if Sun has been advised of the possibility of such damages. The following CMU license covers some of the support code for Mach, derived from Mach 3.0: Mach Operating System Copyright (C) 1991,1990,1989 Carnegie Mellon University All Rights Reserved. Permission to use, copy, modify and distribute this software and its documentation is hereby granted, provided that both the copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies of the software, derivative works or modified versions, and any portions thereof, and that both notices appear in supporting documentation.

CARNEGIE MELLON ALLOWS FREE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE IN ITS ``AS IS" CONDITION. CARNEGIE MELLON DISCLAIMS ANY LIABILITY OF ANY KIND FOR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

Carnegie Mellon requests users of this software to return to: Software Distribution Coordinator School of Computer Science Carnegie Mellon University Pittsburgh PA 15213-3890 or Software. Distribution@CS.CMU.EDU any improvements or extensions that they make and grant Carnegie Mellon the rights to redistribute these changes.

The file if\_ppp.h is under the following CMU license: Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: 1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. 2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. 3. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY CARNEGIE MELLON UNIVERSITY AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE UNIVERSITY OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The following license covers the files from Intel's "Highly Optimized Mathematical Functions for Itanium" collection: Intel License Agreement Copyright (c) 2000, Intel Corporation All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

\* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

\* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

\* The name of Intel Corporation may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL INTEL OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The files `inet/getnameinfo.c` and `sysdeps/posix/getaddrinfo.c` are copyright (C) by Craig Metz and are distributed under the following license:

/\* The Inner Net License, Version 2.00. The author(s) grant permission for redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, of the software and documentation provided that the following conditions are met: 0. If you receive a version of the software that is specifically labelled as not being for redistribution (check the version message and/or README), you are not permitted to redistribute that version of the software in any way or form. 1. All terms of the all other applicable copyrights and licenses must be followed. 2. Redistributions of source code must retain the authors' copyright notice(s), this list of conditions, and the following disclaimer. 3. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the authors' copyright notice(s), this list of conditions, and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. 4. [The copyright holder has authorized the removal of this clause.] 5. Neither the name(s) of the author(s) nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ITS AUTHORS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

If these license terms cause you a real problem, contact the author. \*/

## GCC license

GCC is released under the license shown below in addition to GPL and LGPL.

## GCC RUNTIME LIBRARY EXCEPTION

Version 3.1, 31 March 2009

Copyright (C) 2009 Free Software Foundation, Inc. <<http://fsf.org/>>

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed. This GCC Runtime Library Exception ("Exception") is an additional permission under section 7 of the GNU General Public License, version 3 ("GPLv3"). It applies to a given file (the "Runtime Library") that bears a notice placed by the copyright holder of the file stating that the file is governed by GPLv3 along with this Exception. When you use GCC to compile a program, GCC may combine portions of certain GCC header files and runtime libraries with the compiled program. The purpose of this Exception is to allow compilation of non-GPL (including proprietary) programs to use, in this way, the header files and runtime libraries covered by this Exception.

## 0. Definitions.

A file is an "Independent Module" if it either requires the Runtime Library for execution after a Compilation Process, or makes use of an interface provided by the Runtime Library, but is not otherwise based on the Runtime Library. "GCC" means a version of the GNU Compiler Collection, with or without modifications, governed by version 3 (or a specified later version) of the GNU General Public License (GPL) with the option of using any subsequent versions published by the FSF. "GPL-compatible Software" is software whose conditions of propagation, modification and use would permit combination with GCC in accord with the license of GCC. "Target Code" refers to output from any compiler for a real or virtual target processor architecture, in executable form or suitable for input to an assembler, loader, linker and/or execution phase. Notwithstanding that, Target Code does not include data in any format that is used as a compiler intermediate representation, or used for producing a compiler intermediate representation. The "Compilation Process" transforms code entirely represented in non-intermediate languages designed for human-written code, and/or in Java Virtual Machine byte code, into Target Code. Thus, for example, use of source code generators and preprocessors need not be considered part of the Compilation Process, since the Compilation Process can be understood as starting with the output of the generators or preprocessors. A Compilation Process is "Eligible" if it is done using GCC, alone or with other GPL-compatible software, or if it is done without using any work based on GCC. For example, using non-GPL-compatible Software to optimize any GCC intermediate representations would not qualify as an Eligible Compilation Process.

## 1. Grant of Additional Permission.

You have permission to propagate a work of Target Code formed by combining the Runtime Library with Independent Modules, even if such propagation would otherwise violate the terms of GPLv3, provided that all Target Code was generated by Eligible Compilation Processes. You may then convey such a combination under terms of your choice, consistent with the licensing of the Independent Modules.

## 2. No Weakening of GCC Copyleft.

The availability of this Exception does not imply any general presumption that third-party software is unaffected by the copyleft requirements of the license of GCC.

## ISC license

Copyright (c) 2004-2010 by Internet Systems Consortium, Inc. ("ISC")

Copyright (c) 1995-2003 by Internet Software Consortium

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ISC DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL ISC BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

## OpenSSL license

### LICENSE ISSUES

The OpenSSL toolkit stays under a dual license, i.e. both the conditions of the OpenSSL License and the original SSLeay license apply to the toolkit. See below for the actual license texts. Actually both licenses are BSD-style Open Source licenses. In case of any license issues related to OpenSSL please contact [openssl-core@openssl.org](mailto:openssl-core@openssl.org).

#### OpenSSL License

Copyright (c) 1998-2011 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgment:

"This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit.  
(<http://www.openssl.org/>)"

4. The names "OpenSSL Toolkit" and "OpenSSL Project" must not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without prior written permission. For written permission, please contact [openssl-core@openssl.org](mailto:openssl-core@openssl.org).
5. Products derived from this software may not be called "OpenSSL" nor may "OpenSSL" appear in their names without prior written permission of the OpenSSL Project.
6. Redistributions of any form whatsoever must retain the following acknowledgment:

"This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit  
(<http://www.openssl.org/>)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OpenSSL PROJECT OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR

PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com). This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

Original SSLeay License

Copyright (C) 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com). All rights reserved.

This package is an SSL implementation written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com).

The implementation was written so as to conform with Netscapes SSL.

This library is free for commercial and non-commercial use as long as the following conditions are aheared to. The following conditions apply to all code found in this distribution, be it the RC4, RSA, lhash, DES, etc., code; not just the SSL code. The SSL documentation included with this distribution is covered by the same copyright terms except that the holder is Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

Copyright remains Eric Young's, and as such any Copyright notices in the code are not to be removed. If this package is used in a product, Eric Young should be given attribution as the author of the parts of the library used. This can be in the form of a textual message at program startup or in documentation (online or textual) provided with the package. Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement:

"This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com)"

The word 'cryptographic' can be left out if the rouines from the library being used are not cryptographic related :-).

4. If you include any Windows specific code (or a derivative thereof) from the apps directory (application code) you must include an acknowledgement:

"This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ERIC YOUNG "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The licence and distribution terms for any publically available version or derivative of this code cannot be changed. i.e. this code cannot simply be copied and put under another distribution licence [including the GNU Public Licence.]

## OpenSSH license

This file is part of the OpenSSH software.

The licences which components of this software fall under are as follows. First, we will summarize and say that all components are under a BSD licence, or a licence more free than that.

OpenSSH contains no GPL code.

1) Copyright (c) 1995 Tatu Ylonen , <ylo@cs.hut.fi>, Espoo, Finland. All rights reserved.

As far as I am concerned, the code I have written for this software can be used freely for any purpose. Any derived versions of this software must be clearly marked as such, and if the derived work is incompatible with the protocol description in the RFC file, it must be called by a name other than "ssh" or "Secure Shell". [Tatu continues]. However, I am not implying to give any licenses to any patents or copyrights held by third parties, and the software includes parts that are not under my direct control. As far as I know, all included source code is used in accordance with the relevant license agreements and can be used freely for any purpose (the GNU license being the most restrictive); see below for details. [However, none of that term is relevant at this point in time. All of these restrictively licenced software components which he talks about have been removed from OpenSSH, i.e., - RSA is no longer included, found in the OpenSSL library - IDEA is no longer included, its use is deprecated - DES is now external, in the OpenSSL library - GMP is no longer used, and instead we call BN code from OpenSSL - Zlib is now external, in a library - The make-ssh-known-hosts script is no longer included - TSS has been removed - MD5 is now external, in the OpenSSL library - RC4 support has been replaced with ARC4 support from OpenSSL - Blowfish is now external, in the OpenSSL library [The licence continues]. Note that any information and cryptographic algorithms used in this software are publicly available on the Internet and at any major bookstore, scientific library, and patent office worldwide. More information can be found e.g. at "<http://www.cs.hut.fi/crypto>". The legal status of this program is some combination of all these permissions and restrictions. Use only at your own responsibility. You will be responsible for any legal consequences yourself; I am not making any claims whether possessing or using this is legal or not in your country, and I am not taking any responsibility on your behalf.

NO WARRANTY BECAUSE THE PROGRAM IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

2) The 32-bit CRC compensation attack detector in deattack.c was contributed by CORE SDI S.A. under a BSD-style license. Cryptographic attack detector for ssh - source code. Copyright (c) 1998 CORE SDI S.A., Buenos Aires,



Argentina. All rights reserved. Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that this copyright notice is retained.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL CORE SDI S.A. BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES RESULTING FROM THE USE OR MISUSE OF THIS SOFTWARE. Ariel Futoransky <futo@core-sdi.com> <<http://www.core-sdi.com>>

3) ssh-keyscan was contributed by David Mazieres under a BSD-style license. Copyright 1995, 1996 by David Mazieres <dm@lcs.mit.edu>. Modification and redistribution in source and binary forms is permitted provided that due credit is given to the author and the OpenBSD project by leaving this copyright notice intact.

4) The Rijndael implementation by Vincent Rijmen, Antoon Bosselaers and Paulo Barreto is in the public domain and distributed with the following license: @version 3.0 (December 2000). Optimised ANSI C code for the Rijndael cipher (now AES) @author Vincent Rijmen <vincent.rijmen@esat.kuleuven.ac.be> @author Antoon Bosselaers <antoon.bosselaers@esat.kuleuven.ac.be> @author Paulo Barreto <paulo.barreto@terra.com.br>. This code is hereby placed in the public domain.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

5) One component of the ssh source code is under a 3-clause BSD license, held by the University of California, since we pulled these parts from original Berkeley code. Copyright (c) 1983, 1990, 1992, 1993, 1995. The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved. Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: 1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. 2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. 3. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

6) Remaining components of the software are provided under a standard 2-term BSD licence with the following names as copyright holders: Markus Friedl, Theo de Raadt, Niels Provos, Dug Song, Aaron Campbell, Damien Miller, Kevin Steves, Daniel Kouril, Wesley Griffin, Per Allansson, Nils Nordman, Simon Wilkinson. Portable OpenSSH additionally includes code from the following copyright holders, also under the 2-term BSD license: Ben Lindstrom, Tim Rice, Andre Lucas, Chris Adams, Corinna Vinschen, Cray Inc., Denis Parker, Gert Doering, Jakob Schlyter, Jason Downs, Juha Yrjölä, Michael Stone, Networks Associates Technology, Inc., Solar Designer, Todd C. Miller, Wayne Schroeder, William Jones, Darren Tucker, Sun Microsystems, The SCO Group, Daniel Walsh. Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. 2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

8) Portable OpenSSH contains the following additional licenses: a) md5crypt.c, md5crypt.h, "THE BEER-WARE LICENSE" (Revision 42): <phk@login.dknet.dk> wrote this file. As long as you retain this notice you can do whatever you want with this stuff. If we meet some day, and you think this stuff is worth it, you can buy me a beer in return. Poul-Henning Kamp b) snprintf replacement. Copyright Patrick Powell 1995. This code is based on code written by Patrick Powell, (papowell@astart.com). It may be used for any purpose as long as this notice remains intact on all source code distributions c) Compatibility code (openbsd-compat). Apart from the previously mentioned licenses, various pieces of code in the openbsd-compat/ subdirectory are licensed as follows: Some code is licensed under a 3-term BSD license, to the following copyright holders: Todd C. Miller, Theo de Raadt, Damien Miller, Eric P. Allman, The Regents of the University of California, Constantin S. Svintsoff. Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: 1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. 2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. 3. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION). HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN

ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Some code is licensed under an ISC-style license, to the following copyright holders: Internet Software Consortium, Todd C. Miller, Reyk Floeter, Chad Mynhier. Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND TODD C. MILLER DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL TODD C. MILLER BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

Some code is licensed under a MIT-style license to the following copyright holders: Free Software Foundation, Inc. Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, distribute with modifications, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions: The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE ABOVE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name(s) of the above copyright holders shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization.

/ ----- \$OpenBSD: LICENCE,v 1.19 2004/08/30 09:18:08 markus Exp \$

## TinyLogin license

TinyLogin is released under the license shown below in addition to GPL.

The shadow utilities license:

This software is copyright 1988 - 1994, Julianne Frances Haugh. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: 1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. 2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. 3. Neither the name of Julianne F. Haugh nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY JULIE HAUGH AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL JULIE HAUGH OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This source code is currently archived on <ftp.uu.net> in the `comp.sources.misc` portion of the USENET archives. You may also contact the author, Julianne F. Haugh, at [jockgrll@austin.rr.com](mailto:jockgrll@austin.rr.com) if you have any questions regarding this package.

THIS SOFTWARE IS BEING DISTRIBUTED AS-IS. THE AUTHORS DISCLAIM ALL LIABILITY FOR ANY CONSEQUENCES OF USE. THE USER IS SOLELY RESPONSIBLE FOR THE MAINTENANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE PACKAGE. THE AUTHORS ARE UNDER NO OBLIGATION TO PROVIDE MODIFICATIONS OR IMPROVEMENTS. THE USER IS ENCOURAGED TO TAKE ANY AND ALL STEPS NEEDED TO PROTECT AGAINST ACCIDENTAL LOSS OF INFORMATION OR MACHINE RESOURCES.

Special thanks are due to Chip Rosenthal for his fine testing efforts; to Steve Simmons for his work in porting this code to BSD; and to Bill Kennedy for his contributions of LaserJet printer time and energies. Also, thanks for Dennis L. Mumaugh for the initial shadow password information and to Tony Walton ([olapw@olgb1.oliv.co.uk](mailto:olapw@olgb1.oliv.co.uk)) for the System V Release 4 changes. Effort in porting to SunOS has been contributed by Dr. Michael Newberry ([miken@cs.adfa.oz.au](mailto:miken@cs.adfa.oz.au)) and Micheal J. Miller, Jr. ([mke@kaber.drain.com](mailto:mke@kaber.drain.com)). Effort in porting to AT&T UNIX System V Release 4 has been provided by Andrew Herbert ([andrew@werple.pub.uu.oz.au](mailto:andrew@werple.pub.uu.oz.au)). Special thanks to Marek Michalkiewicz ([marekm@i17linuxb.ists.pwr.wroc.pl](mailto:marekm@i17linuxb.ists.pwr.wroc.pl)) for taking over the Linux port of this software.

Source files: `login_access.c`, `login_desrpc.c`, `login_krb.c` are derived from the `logdaemon-5.0` package, which is under the following license:

Copyright 1995 by Wietse Venema. All rights reserved. Individual files \* may be covered by other copyrights (as noted in the file itself.) \* \*

This material was originally written and compiled by Wietse Venema at \* Eindhoven University of Technology, The Netherlands, in 1990, 1991, \* 1992, 1993, 1994 and 1995. \* \*

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms are permitted \* provided that this entire copyright notice is duplicated in all such \* copies. \* \*

This software is provided "as is" and without any expressed or implied \* warranties, including, without limitation, the implied warranties of \* merchantability and fitness for any particular purpose.

This software is copyright 1988 - 1994, Julianne Frances Haugh. All rights reserved

## X11 license

Copyright (c) 1998-2004,2006 Free Software Foundation, Inc

Copyright (c) 1998 Red Hat Software

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, distribute with modifications, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE ABOVE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name(s) of the above copyright holders shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization.

## Index

1PPS, NMEA ZDA format 13	
datagram format.....	202
1PPS, Trimble format 14	
datagram format.....	203
<b>A</b>	
about	
coaxial cable termination.....	31
export license.....	9
maintenance.....	9
product license.....	9
registered trademarks.....	9
sensor survey.....	54
subscriptions.....	9
target audience.....	9
this publication.....	9
accuracy values	
survey.....	63
adding	
extra serial ports.....	125
additional optional items	
not provided with the delivery.....	14
additional required items	
not provided with the delivery.....	14
adjusting	
scaling of Integrity view.....	132
speed scaling of Compass view.....	133
UTM presentation.....	134
alarm message	
receiving.....	135
alarm signal.....	171
ALARM terminal	
pin layout.....	171
Alarms page	
description.....	243
alignment surface	
heading.....	57
roll and pitch.....	57
alignment surfaces	
MGC.....	57
antenna	
location.....	24
separation.....	24
antenna arrangement	
survey vessel.....	28
antenna cable	
specifications.....	163
antenna cables	
recommendations on installation.....	29
antenna location	
interference.....	26
masking.....	25
multipath.....	26
radiating sources.....	26
antenna location from origin.....	94
antenna location parameters	
entering.....	94
antenna phase centre.....	60
antenna reference point.....	60
antennas	
lightning protection.....	40
arctic areas	
antenna arrangement.....	28
<b>B</b>	
backup	
creating backup of Processing Unit image.....	142
preparing USB flash drive for HMI Unit	
backup.....	144
preparing USB flash drive for Processing Unit	
backup.....	141
basic items	
provided with the delivery.....	14
best location	
display.....	24
broadcast.....	90
BSD license	
copyright.....	267
<b>C</b>	
cable	
specifications.....	162
cables.....	65
lightning protection.....	40
cabling	
HMI Unit.....	65
Processing Unit.....	65
Calibration format 7	
datagram format.....	199
centre of gravity (CG).....	91
changing	
HMI Unit IP address.....	128
Processing Unit IP address.....	127
system mode.....	86
choosing best location	
display.....	24
coax cable	
specifications.....	163
terminating.....	32, 35
COM 1 and COM 2	
pin layout.....	170
communication interface	
description.....	87
how to set.....	88
Compass view	
adjusting speed scaling.....	133
configuration	
copy system configuration.....	136
configuration backup	
restoring.....	137
configuration management system	
how to enter.....	84
conformity declaration.....	164
coordinate system.....	55
copy	
system configuration.....	136

- copyright
  - BSD license ..... 267
  - GCC license ..... 270
  - GNU C library license ..... 268
  - GNU general public license, v 2 ..... 248
  - GNU general public license, v3 ..... 252
  - GNU lesser general public license, version 2.1 ..... 259
  - GNU lesser general public license, version 3 ..... 265
  - ISC license ..... 271
  - OpenSSH license ..... 274
  - OpenSSL license ..... 272
  - TinyLogin license ..... 277
  - X11 license ..... 278
- creating
  - backup of Processing Unit image ..... 142
  - external backup of HMI Unit ..... 145
  - internal backup of HMI Unit ..... 147
- CRP ..... 55
- cycling redundancy check (CRC) algorithm
  - description ..... 205
  
- D**
- data cable
  - specifications ..... 162
- data input specifications ..... 162
- data inputs
  - Processing Unit ..... 162
- data source HMI
  - selecting ..... 134
- Data source page
  - description ..... 242
- datagram format
  - 1PPS, NMEA ZDA format 13 ..... 202
  - 1PPS, Trimble format 14 ..... 203
  - Calibration format 7 ..... 199
  - Echo sounder 18, TSS1 format ..... 201
  - Echo sounder 9 format ..... 200
  - EM Attitude 3000 ..... 196
  - HDT (true heading) ..... 185
  - KM Binary ..... 197
  - Kongsberg EM Attitude 3000 ..... 196
  - Motion EM3000 ..... 196
  - PFreeHeave ..... 203
  - RDI ADCP format ..... 201
  - RTCM format 80 ..... 204
  - Seapath Binary 26 ..... 194
- datum specifications
  - Processing Unit ..... 162
- DDC
  - sentence format ..... 178
- deleting
  - monitoring points ..... 108
- description
  - Alarms page ..... 243
  - communication interface ..... 87
  - cycling redundancy check (CRC) algorithm ..... 205
  - Data source page ..... 242
  - DgnssLink parameters page ..... 228
  - GNSS antenna ..... 16
  - Gyro interface parameters page ..... 233
  - HMI Unit ..... 15
  - MGC interface parameters page ..... 227
  - MGC Mounting Wizard page ..... 213, 217
  - Monitoring points Geometry page ..... 223
  - Network page parameters ..... 235
  - operator software configuration ..... 85
  - Position Integrity page ..... 239–240
  - Processing Unit ..... 15
  - Sensors DGNSS SBAS page ..... 221
  - Sensors DGNSS XP/G2/G4 page ..... 229
  - Sensors GNSS Geometry page ..... 210
  - Sensors MGC Geometry page ..... 212–213
  - Sensors MGC Heave config page ..... 220
  - Sensors MRU Geometry page ..... 216–217
  - serial interface page ..... 224
  - Serial port extender ..... 234
  - Sky view page ..... 237
  - system ..... 10
  - TelegramOut parameters page ..... 230
  - UTM page ..... 241
  - Vessel description ..... 209
  - Vessel geometry page ..... 208
  - View page ..... 236
- descriptionEthernet interface page ..... 224
- determining
  - distance vectors ..... 63
  - MGC mounting angles ..... 101
  - MRU mounting angles ..... 105
- determining distance vectors ..... 62
- determining system coordinates ..... 62
- DGNSS antenna
  - location ..... 24
- DGNSS correction link
  - setting up ..... 123
- DgnssLink parameters page
  - description ..... 228
- diagram
  - system ..... 13
- dimensions
  - GNSS antenna ..... 154, 158
  - HMI Unit ..... 153, 158
  - HMI Unit outline dimensions drawing ..... 153
  - Processing Unit ..... 151, 158
  - Processing Unit outline dimensions
    - drawing ..... 151
    - technical specifications ..... 158
- disabling
  - GNSS link ..... 124
- display
  - choosing the best location ..... 24
- disposal
  - of equipment ..... 246
- distance vectors
  - determining ..... 63
  - what to determine ..... 62
- drawing
  - HMI Unit outline dimensions ..... 153
  - power connection ..... 79
  - Processing Unit outline dimensions ..... 151
  - wiring diagram ..... 77
- DTM
  - sentence format ..... 179
  
- E**
- Echo sounder 18, TSS1
  - datagram format ..... 201

Echo sounder 9	
datagram format	200
EM Attitude 3000	
datagram format	196
enabling	
Fugro high precision services	120
entering	
antenna location parameters	94
vessel identification parameters	116
entering configuration management system	84
environmental requirements	
HMI Unit	160
Processing Unit	160
environmental specifications	
GNSS antenna	160
equipment	
disposal	246
storage	246
taking delivery	245
unpacking	245
WEEE waste handling	246
equipment handling	245
Ethernet interface	
how to use	90
Ethernet interface page	
description	224
export	
license	17
restrictions	17
export license	9
external gyro compass	
sensor survey	62
external interface	
Processing Unit	158
external interface specifications	
HMI Unit	158
extra serial ports	
adding	125
<b>F</b>	
free and open source software	247
frequencies	
GNSS antenna	161
frequency specifications	
GNSS receiver	161
front interfaces	
HMI Unit	175
Processing Unit	168
<b>G</b>	
GBS	
sentence format	179
GCC license	
copyright	270
GGA	
sentence format	180
GNS	
sentence format	181–182
GNSS antenna	
description	16
environmental specifications	160
frequencies	161
installing	44, 47
location	22, 24
outline dimensions	154, 158
power requirements	159
sensor survey	60
weight	158
GNSS link	
disabling	124
GNSS receiver	
frequency specifications	161
GNU C library license	
copyright	268
GNU general public license, v 2	
copyright	248
GNU general public license, v3	
copyright	252
GNU lesser general public license, v 2.1	
copyright	259
GNU lesser general public license, version 3	
copyright	265
GRS	
sentence format	183
GSA	
sentence format	183
GST	
sentence format	184
GSV	
sentence format	184
guarantee	
restrictions	17
gyro compass	
sensor survey	62
Gyro interface parameters page	
description	233
<b>H</b>	
handling	
WEEE waste	246
HDT	
datagram format	185
heading	
alignment surface	57
health, safety, environment	18
heave filter options	
selecting	107
high precision services	
enabling	120
HMI Unit	
cabling	65
creating external backup	145
creating internal backup	147
description	15
environmental requirements	160
external interface specifications	158
front interfaces	175
installing	52
introduction	15
LED indicators	83
outline dimensions	153, 158
outline dimensions drawing	153
overview	15
power requirements	159
purpose	15
rear interfaces	175
restoring image from external device	148



- 
- restoring image from internal disk ..... 149
  - select location ..... 22
  - turning on ..... 81
  - weight ..... 158
  - how to
    - add extra serial ports ..... 125
    - adjust scaling of Integrity view ..... 132
    - adjust speed scaling of Compass view ..... 133
    - adjust UTM presentation ..... 134
    - change HMI Unit IP address ..... 128
    - change Processing Unit IP address ..... 127
    - change system mode ..... 86
    - choose the best location for the display ..... 24
    - copy system configuration ..... 136
    - create backup of Processing Unit image ..... 142
    - create external backup of HMI Unit ..... 145
    - create internal backup of HMI Unit ..... 147
    - delete a monitoring point ..... 108
    - disable GNSS link ..... 124
    - enable GNSS link ..... 124
    - enable high precision services ..... 120
    - enter antenna location parameters ..... 94
    - enter configuration management system ..... 84
    - enter vessel identification parameters ..... 116
    - import vessel shape from file ..... 117
    - install antenna cables ..... 29
    - install DPS with MGC ..... 73
    - install DPS with MGC COMPASS ..... 68
    - install DPS with MRU ..... 73
    - install HMI Unit ..... 52
    - install operator software on external
      - computer ..... 139
    - install Processing Unit ..... 52
    - install rack ..... 52
    - install the GNSS antenna ..... 44, 47
    - prepare USB flash drive for HMI Unit
      - backup ..... 144
    - prepare USB flash drive for Processing Unit
      - backup ..... 141
    - receive alarm messages ..... 135
    - remove operator software ..... 140
    - restore configuration backup ..... 137
    - restore image HMI Unit from external
      - device ..... 148
    - restore image HMI Unit from internal disk ..... 149
    - restore system image ..... 143
    - select appearance of Sky view ..... 130
    - select heading input from gyro ..... 121
    - select heave filter options ..... 107
    - select HMI software data source ..... 134
    - select position of view in display ..... 129
    - select SBAS satellites ..... 119
    - set MGC location ..... 100
    - set MGC mounting angles ..... 100
    - set monitoring points ..... 108
    - set MRU location ..... 103
    - set MRU mounting angles ..... 103
    - set up a communication interface ..... 88
    - set up DGNSS correction link ..... 123
    - set up input from MGC ..... 112
    - set up input from MRU ..... 113
    - set up input to MGC ..... 112
    - set up output from MRU ..... 113
    - set up TelegramOut interface ..... 113
    - set vessel dimensions ..... 91
    - set vessel reference points ..... 91
    - start operator software ..... 140
    - stop operator software ..... 140
    - terminate coax cable with stripping tool ..... 32
    - terminate coax cable without stripping tool ..... 35
    - turn on HMI Unit ..... 81
    - turn on Seapath system ..... 81
    - turn on the Processing Unit ..... 81
    - use Seapath as NTP server ..... 18
    - use the Ethernet interface ..... 90
    - use the serial interface ..... 89
    - use Wizard to determine MGC mounting
      - angles ..... 101
    - use Wizard to determine MRU mounting
      - angles ..... 105
  - I**
    - importing
      - vessel shape from file ..... 117
    - information
      - support ..... 20
    - input from gyro compass
      - selecting ..... 121
    - installation
      - antenna cables ..... 29
    - installing
      - GNSS antenna ..... 44, 47
      - HMI Unit ..... 52
      - operator software on external computer ..... 139
      - Processing Unit ..... 52
      - rack ..... 52
    - installing DPS with MGC ..... 73
    - installing DPS with MGC COMPASS ..... 68
    - installing DPS with MRU ..... 73
    - Integrity view
      - adjusting scaling ..... 132
    - interface options
      - TelegramOut interface ..... 165
    - interfaces
      - front of HMI Unit ..... 175
      - front of Processing Unit ..... 168
      - HMI Unit ..... 158
      - Processing Unit ..... 158
      - rear of HMI Unit ..... 175
      - rear of Processing Unit ..... 168
    - interference
      - antenna location ..... 26
    - internet
      - network security ..... 19
    - introduction
      - HMI Unit ..... 15
      - Processing Unit ..... 15
    - IP address HMI Unit
      - changing ..... 128
    - IP address Processing Unit
      - changing ..... 127
    - ISC license
      - copyright ..... 271
  - K**
    - KM Binary
      - datagram format ..... 197

KM Binary datagram format .....	197	MGC Mounting Wizard page	
Kongsberg Discovery AS		description .....	213, 217
support .....	20	mode	
Kongsberg EM Attitude 3000		changing system mode .....	86
datagram format .....	196	monitoring point	
Kongsberg EM Attitude 3000 datagram		how to delete .....	108
format .....	196	monitoring point (MP) .....	63
<b>L</b>		monitoring points	
LAN 1		how to set .....	108
pin layout .....	174	Monitoring points Geometry page	
LAN 2		description .....	223
pin layout .....	174	Motion EM3000	
LAN 3		datagram format .....	196
pin layout .....	174	mounting angles MGC	
LAN 4		how to determine with Wizard .....	101
pin layout .....	174	how to set .....	100
LED indicators		mounting angles MRU	
HMI Unit .....	83	how to determine with Wizard .....	105
Processing Unit .....	82	how to set .....	103
license		Mounting Wizard	
export .....	17	MGC mounting angles .....	101
export license .....	9	MRU mounting angles .....	105
product license .....	9	MRU	
lightning protection .....	40	how to install DPS with MRU .....	73
listener .....	169	sensor point .....	58
location		sensor survey .....	58
antenna .....	24	MRU input	
DGNSS antenna .....	24	setting up .....	113
GNSS antenna .....	22, 24	MRU location	
HMI Unit .....	22	how to set .....	103
Processing Unit .....	22	MRU mounting angles	
location MGC		how to determine with Wizard .....	105
how to set .....	100	how to set .....	103
location MRU		MRU output	
how to set .....	103	setting up .....	113
<b>M</b>		MRU terminal	
main items		pin layout .....	171
provided with the delivery .....	14	multicast .....	90
maintenance .....	9	multipath	
masking		antenna location .....	26
antenna location .....	25	<b>N</b>	
message formats		NAVEngine configuration	
Processing Unit .....	161	Standard .....	84
message types		navigation reference point (NRP) .....	63, 91
Processing Unit .....	161	Network page parameters	
MGC		description .....	235
alignment surfaces .....	57	network security .....	19
how to install DPS with MGC .....	73	NMEA datagram	
sensor point .....	56	HDT (true heading) .....	185
sensor survey .....	56	NMEA DDC	
MGC COMPASS		sentence format .....	178
how to install DPS with MGC COMPASS .....	68	NMEA DTM	
MGC input		sentence format .....	179
setting up .....	112	NMEA GBS	
MGC interface parameters page		sentence format .....	179
description .....	227	NMEA GGA	
MGC location		sentence format .....	180
how to set .....	100	NMEA GNS	
MGC mounting angles		sentence format .....	181–182
how to determine with Wizard .....	101	NMEA GRS	
how to set .....	100	sentence format .....	183
		NMEA GSA	
		sentence format .....	183

- NMEA GST
    - sentence format ..... 184
  - NMEA GSV
    - sentence format ..... 184
  - NMEA HDT
    - datagram format ..... 185
  - NMEA RMC
    - sentence format ..... 186
  - NMEA ROT
    - sentence format ..... 187
  - NMEA sentence
    - DDC (display dimming, control) ..... 178
    - DTM local geodetic datum) ..... 179
    - GBS (RAIM support) ..... 179
    - GGA (GPS fix data) ..... 180
    - GNS (position fix) ..... 181–182
    - GRS (RAIM support) ..... 183
    - GST (GNSS pseudorange error) ..... 184
    - GSV (GNSS satellites in view) ..... 184
    - RMC (time, date, position, course, speed) ..... 186
    - ROT (vessel heading) ..... 187
    - THS (vessel heading) ..... 188
    - VBW (water/ground speed) ..... 187
    - VER (version) ..... 189
    - VTG (COG, GS) ..... 189
    - ZDA (time, date) ..... 190
  - NMEA THS
    - sentence format ..... 188
  - NMEA VBW
    - sentence format ..... 187
  - NMEA VER
    - sentence format ..... 189
  - NMEA VTG
    - sentence format ..... 189
  - NMEA ZDA
    - sentence format ..... 190
  - NTP server
    - using Seapath as NTP server ..... 18
- O**
- offset angles ..... 63
  - open source software ..... 247
  - OpenSSH license
    - copyright ..... 274
  - OpenSSL license
    - copyright ..... 272
  - operating voltage
    - GNSS antenna ..... 159
    - HMI Unit ..... 159
    - Processing Unit ..... 159
  - operator software
    - installing on external computer ..... 139
    - remove operator software on external
      - computer ..... 140
      - start software on external computer ..... 140
      - stopping ..... 140
  - operator software configuration ..... 84
    - description ..... 85
  - optional items
    - not provided with the delivery ..... 14
  - options
    - TelegramOut interface ..... 165
  - origin ..... 55
  - origin location ..... 91
  - outline dimensions
    - GNSS antenna ..... 154, 158
    - HMI Unit ..... 153, 158
    - HMI Unit outline dimensions drawing ..... 153
    - Processing Unit ..... 151, 158
    - Processing Unit outline dimensions
      - drawing ..... 151
      - technical specifications ..... 158
  - output
    - Processing Unit ..... 161
  - overview
    - HMI Unit ..... 15
    - Processing Unit ..... 15
- P**
- page
    - Alarms ..... 243
    - Data source ..... 242
    - DgnssLink parameters ..... 228
    - Ethernet interface ..... 224
    - Gyro interface parameters ..... 233
    - MGC interface parameters ..... 227
    - MGC Mounting Wizard ..... 213, 217
    - Monitoring points Geometry ..... 223
    - Network parameters ..... 235
    - Position Integrity ..... 239–240
    - Sensors DGNSS SBAS ..... 221
    - Sensors DGNSS XP/G2/G4 ..... 229
    - Sensors GNSS Geometry ..... 210
    - Sensors MGC Geometry ..... 212–213
    - Sensors MGC Heave config ..... 220
    - Sensors MRU Geometry ..... 216–217
    - serial interface ..... 224
    - Serial port extender ..... 234
    - Sky view ..... 237
    - TelegramOut parameters page ..... 230
    - UTM ..... 241
    - Vessel description ..... 209
    - Vessel geometry ..... 208
    - View page ..... 236
  - password
    - system password ..... 86
  - performance
    - specifications ..... 155
  - PFreeHeave
    - datagram format ..... 203
  - phase centre
    - GNSS antenna ..... 60
  - pin layout
    - ALARM terminal ..... 171
    - COM 1 and COM 2 ..... 170
    - LAN 1 ..... 174
    - LAN 2 ..... 174
    - LAN 3 ..... 174
    - LAN 4 ..... 174
    - MRU terminal Processing Unit ..... 171
    - PPS port ..... 172
    - rear ports ..... 170
    - serial line ..... 173
  - ports rear
    - pin layout ..... 170
  - Position Integrity page
    - description ..... 239–240
  - position of view in display

selecting.....	129	setting MGC location .....	100
positioning services		setting MGC mounting angles .....	100
subscriptions.....	9	setting monitoring points .....	108
power connection		setting MRU location .....	103
drawing.....	79	setting MRU mounting angles .....	103
power requirements		setting up communication interfaces .....	88
GNSS antenna.....	159	setting up DGNS correction link .....	123
HMI Unit.....	159	setting up input from MGC.....	112
Processing Unit .....	159	setting up input from MRU.....	113
PPS port		setting up input to MGC .....	112
pin layout .....	172	setting up output from MRU .....	113
PPS signal description .....	172	setting up TelegramOut interface .....	113
pre-installed		setting vessel dimensions .....	91
rack units.....	51	setting vessel reference points .....	91
preparing		starting operator software.....	140
USB flash drive for HMI Unit backup .....	144	stopping operator software .....	140
USB flash drive for Processing Unit backup .....	141	terminating coax cable with stripping tool .....	32
procedure		terminating coax cable without stripping tool .....	35
adding extra serial ports.....	125	turning on HMI Unit .....	81
adjusting scaling of Integrity view .....	132	turning on Processing Unit .....	81
adjusting speed scaling of Compass view .....	133	turning on Seapath system.....	81
adjusting UTM presentation.....	134	using Ethernet interface.....	90
changing HMI Unit IP address.....	128	using serial interface.....	89
changing Processing Unit IP address.....	127	Processing Unit	
changing system mode .....	86	ALARM terminal.....	171
choosing the best location for the display .....	24	cabling.....	65
copy system configuration.....	136	COM 1 and COM 2 pin layout.....	170
creating backup of Processing Unit image .....	142	data inputs .....	162
creating external backup of HMI Unit .....	145	data output .....	161
creating internal backup of HMI Unit.....	147	datum specifications.....	162
deleting monitoring points.....	108	description .....	15
determining MGC mounting angles with		environmental requirements.....	160
Wizard .....	101	external interface specifications.....	158
determining MRU mounting angle with		front interfaces .....	168
Wizard .....	105	installing .....	52
disabling GNSS link.....	124	introduction .....	15
enabling GNSS link .....	124	LED indicators .....	82
enabling high precision services.....	120	message formats .....	161
enter vessel identification parameters.....	116	message types .....	161
entering antenna location parameters .....	94	MRU terminal pin layout .....	171
import vessel shape from file.....	117	outline dimensions.....	151, 158
installing GNSS antenna .....	44, 47	outline dimensions drawing .....	151
installing HMI Unit.....	52	overview .....	15
installing operator software on external		power requirements.....	159
computer.....	139	purpose .....	15
installing Processing Unit .....	52	rear interfaces .....	168
installing rack .....	52	select location .....	22
preparing USB flash drive for HMI Unit		turning on .....	81
backup .....	144	weight .....	158
preparing USB flash drive for Processing Unit		product	
backup .....	141	conformity declaration .....	164
receiving alarm messages.....	135	restrictions .....	17–18
removing operator software .....	140	product license .....	9
restoring configuration backup.....	137	product safety .....	18
restoring image HMI Unit from external		PSXN20 .....	191
device .....	148	PSXN21 .....	192
restoring image HMI Unit from internal		PSXN22 .....	192
disk .....	149	PSXN23 .....	193
restoring system image.....	143	PSXN24 .....	193
selecting appearance of Sky view .....	130	purpose	
selecting heading input from gyro.....	121	HMI Unit.....	15
selecting heave filter options .....	107	Processing Unit .....	15
selecting HMI software data source.....	134	this publication .....	9
selecting position of view in display .....	129		
selecting SBAS satellites .....	119		

<b>R</b>	
rack	
19-inch .....	41
installing .....	52
rack requirements .....	41
rack units	
pre-installed .....	51
radiating sources	
antenna location .....	26
RDI ADCP	
datagram format .....	201
rear interfaces	
HMI Unit .....	175
Processing Unit .....	168
receive	
RX .....	169
receiving	
alarm messages .....	135
recommendations	
how to install antenna cables .....	29
reference plane .....	55
reference point	
GNSS antenna .....	60
registered trademarks .....	9
relay	
alarm signal .....	171
removing	
operator software on external computer .....	140
required items	
not provided with the delivery .....	14
requirements	
rack .....	41
restoring	
configuration backup .....	137
image HMI Unit from external device .....	148
image HMI Unit from internal disk .....	149
system image .....	143
restrictions	
export .....	17
guarantee .....	17
use of product .....	17–18
RMC	
sentence format .....	186
roll and pitch	
alignment surface .....	57
ROT	
sentence format .....	187
RS-422	
A and B signal definition .....	169
serial line .....	173
RTCM format 80	
datagram format .....	204
<b>S</b>	
safety	
product safety .....	18
SBAS satellites	
selecting .....	119
scope of supply	
basic items .....	14
optional items not provided with the delivery .....	14
required items not provided with the delivery .....	14
Seapath 385	
system diagram .....	13
Seapath Binary 26	
datagram format .....	194
security	
network .....	19
selecting	
appearance of Sky view .....	130
heading input from gyro .....	121
heave filter options .....	107
HMI software data source .....	134
position of view in display .....	129
SBAS satellites .....	119
sensor point	
MGC .....	56
MRU .....	58
sensor survey	
external gyro compass .....	62
GNSS antenna .....	60
gyro compass .....	62
MGC .....	56
MRU .....	58
sensor survey on vessels .....	54
Sensors DGNSS SBAS page	
description .....	221
Sensors DGNSS XP/G2/G4 page	
description .....	229
Sensors GNSS Geometry page	
description .....	210
Sensors MGC Geometry page	
description .....	212–213
Sensors MGC Heave config page	
description .....	220
Sensors MRU Geometry page	
description .....	216–217
sentence format	
DDC (display dimming, control) .....	178
DTM (local geodetic datum) .....	179
GBS (RAIM support) .....	179
GGA (GPS fix data) .....	180
GNS (position fix) .....	181–182
GRS (RAIM support) .....	183
GSA (GNSS DOP, active satellites) .....	183
GST (GNSS pseudorange error) .....	184
GSV (GNSS satellites in view) .....	184
RMC (time, date, position, course, speed) .....	186
ROT (vessel heading) .....	187
THS (vessel heading) .....	188
VBW (water/ground speed) .....	187
VER (version) .....	189
VTG (COG, GS) .....	189
ZDA (time, date) .....	190
separation	
antenna separation .....	24
serial interface	
how to use .....	89
serial interface page	
description .....	224
serial line	
input .....	173
output .....	173
pin layout .....	173
Serial port extender page	
description .....	234
serial ports	
adding extra serial ports .....	125

server	
Seapath used as NTP server .....	18
setting	
MGC location .....	100
MGC mounting angles .....	100
monitoring points .....	108
MRU location .....	103
MRU mounting angles .....	103
vessel dimensions .....	91
vessel reference points .....	91
setting to work	
summary .....	80
Setting to work summary .....	80
setting up	
communication interface .....	88
DGNSS correction link .....	123
input from MGC .....	112
input from MRU .....	113
input to MGC .....	112
output from MRU .....	113
setting upT	
TelegramOut interface .....	113
shape dimensions .....	91
shape type .....	91
signal definition	
RS-422 A and B .....	169
size	
GNSS antenna .....	154, 158
HMI Unit .....	153, 158
HMI Unit outline dimensions drawing .....	153
Processing Unit .....	151, 158
Processing Unit outline dimensions	
drawing .....	151
technical specifications .....	158
Sky view appearance	
selecting .....	130
Sky view page	
description .....	237
software	
source code .....	247
software update .....	141
source code	
software .....	247
specification	
antenna cable .....	163
coax cable .....	163
external interfaces HMI Unit .....	158
external interfaces Processing Unit .....	158
specifications	
cable .....	162
data cable .....	162
frequencies GNSS antenna .....	161
frequency GNSS receiver .....	161
outline dimensions .....	158
performance .....	155
specifications	
weight .....	158
standard configuration .....	84
standard items	
provided with the delivery .....	14
standard tools	
installation of system units .....	21
starting	
operator software on external computer .....	140
stopping	
operator software .....	140
storage	
of equipment .....	246
subscriptions	
high performance positioning services .....	9
summary	
setting to work .....	80
supply voltage	
GNSS antenna .....	159
HMI Unit .....	159
Processing Unit .....	159
support	
Kongsberg Discovery AS .....	20
support information .....	20
survey	
accuracy values .....	63
survey of sensors on vessels .....	54
survey vessel	
antenna arrangement .....	28
system	
description .....	10
diagram .....	13
how to turn on .....	81
system configuration	
Advanced .....	84
copying .....	136
Standard .....	84
system coordinates	
what to determine .....	62
system image	
restoring .....	143
system mode	
how to change .....	86
system password .....	86
system units	
pre-installed .....	51
<b>T</b>	
taking delivery	
of equipment .....	245
talker .....	169
target audience	
this publication .....	9
technical specifications	
performance .....	155
technical specifications	
outline dimensions .....	158
weight .....	158
TelegramOut	
interface options .....	165
TelegramOut interface	
setting up .....	113
TelegramOut parameters page	
description .....	230
terminating	
coax cable with stripping tool .....	32
coax cable without stripping tool .....	35
coaxial cable .....	31
this publication	
about .....	9
purpose .....	9
target audience .....	9
this user manual	
about .....	9

purpose .....	9	weight	
target audience .....	9	technical specifications .....	158
THS		wiring diagram	
sentence format .....	188	drawing .....	77
TinyLogin license		<b>X</b>	
copyright .....	277	X-axis .....	55
tools		X11 license	
installation of system units .....	21	copyright .....	278
transmit		<b>Y</b>	
TX .....	169	Y-axis .....	55
turning on		<b>Z</b>	
HMI Unit .....	81	Z-axis .....	55
Processing Unit .....	81	ZDA	
Seapath system .....	81	sentence format .....	190
<b>U</b>			
unicast .....	90		
unpacking			
equipment .....	245		
use of product			
restrictions .....	17–18		
using			
Ethernet interface .....	90		
Seapath used as NTP server .....	18		
serial interface .....	89		
UTM page			
description .....	241		
UTM presentation			
adjusting .....	134		
<b>V</b>			
VBW			
sentence format .....	187		
VER			
sentence format .....	189		
vessel coordinate system .....	55		
vessel description			
entering identification parameters .....	116		
Vessel description page			
description .....	209		
vessel dimensions			
setting .....	91		
Vessel geometry page			
description .....	208		
vessel reference points			
setting .....	91		
vessel shape			
import shape from file .....	117		
View page			
description .....	236		
VTG			
sentence format .....	189		
<b>W</b>			
waste			
handling .....	246		
WEEE (Waste Electrical and Electronic			
Equipment) .....	246		
weight			
GNSS antenna .....	158		
HMI Unit .....	158		
Processing Unit .....	158		

©2024 Kongsberg Discovery AS